



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Workshop Manual

Audi A6 2019 ➤

Audi A6 Avant 2019 ➤

Audi A6 China 2019 ➤

General body repairs, interior

Edition 10.2019



List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

- 00 - Technical data
- 68 - Interior equipment
- 69 - Passenger protection
- 70 - Trim, insulation

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.



Contents

00 - Technical data	1
1 Safety precautions	1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system	2
1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components	3
1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)	4
1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags	4
1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags	5
1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)	6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version	6
1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version	7
1.9 Additional safety regulations for active head restraints	7
1.10 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident	8
1.11 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident	9
1.12 Accident in which no airbag was triggered	10
1.13 Checking seat belts	10
1.14 Checking belt	10
1.15 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)	11
1.16 Visual inspection of belt buckle	11
1.17 Functional check of belt buckle	12
1.18 Checking guide fittings and latch plate	12
1.19 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident	12
1.20 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)	13
1.21 Checking child seat anchors following an accident	13
1.22 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror	13
2 Repair notes	14
2.1 Contact corrosion	14
2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring	14
68 - Interior equipment	15
1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels	15
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels	15
1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)	17
1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim	18
1.4 Exploded view - glove box	19
1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)	19
1.6 Removing and installing footwell cover (driver side)	20
1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)	21
1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)	22
1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism	23
1.10 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism	24
1.11 Removing and installing glove box	25
2 Equipment	28
2.1 Exploded view - load guard	28
2.2 Exploded view - sun visors	30
2.3 Exploded view - sun blind	31
2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover	32
2.5 Removing and installing retainer for load guard	33
2.6 Removing and installing mounting for load guard	33
2.7 Removing and installing bracket for load guard	34



2.8	Removing and installing sun visor	34
2.9	Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor	35
2.10	Removing and installing sun blind	36
2.11	Removing and installing grab handle	40
2.12	Removing and installing luggage compartment cover	41
3	Centre console	43
3.1	Exploded view - centre console	43
3.2	Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)	47
3.3	Removing and installing centre console trim (side)	49
3.4	Removing and installing centre console cover	49
3.5	Removing and installing centre console insert	51
3.6	Removing and installing storage compartment in centre console (front)	52
3.7	Removing and installing centre console trim	52
3.8	Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)	53
3.9	Removing and installing centre console	53
3.10	Removing and installing cup holders	56
3.11	Removing and installing vent (rear) in centre console	57
3.12	Removing and installing trim	57
4	Centre armrest (front)	59
4.1	Exploded view - centre armrest (front)	59
4.2	Removing and installing centre armrest (front)	59
4.3	Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)	60
5	Interior mirror	62
5.1	Exploded view - interior mirror	62
5.2	Removing and installing interior mirror	63
5.3	Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off	65
5.4	Switching compass display on and off	65
5.5	Setting magnetic deflection zone	65
5.6	Calibrating digital compass	66
5.7	Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles	66
5.8	Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map	67
5.9	Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror	72
69	- Passenger protection	74
1	Seat belts	74
1.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points	74
1.2	Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)	77
1.3	Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)	80
1.4	Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)	82
1.5	Exploded view - belt buckle (front)	83
1.6	Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)	84
1.7	Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)	85
1.8	Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)	88
1.9	Removing and installing belt guide (front)	94
1.10	Removing and installing belt guide (rear)	95
1.11	Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)	99
1.12	Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)	100
1.13	Removing and installing belt height adjuster	101
1.14	Removing and installing belt buckle (front)	102
1.15	Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)	102
2	Child seat anchors	104
2.1	Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)	104
2.2	Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)	105
2.3	Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)	105



2.4	Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)	107
3	Airbag system	109
3.1	Overview of fitting locations - airbag system	109
4	Airbag control unit	111
4.1	Exploded view - airbag control unit	111
4.2	Removing and installing airbag control unit J234	111
5	Battery isolation igniter	115
5.1	Exploded view - battery isolation igniter	115
5.2	Removing and installing battery isolation igniter	116
5.3	Removing and installing battery isolation igniter, 48 V N751	117
6	Airbag (driver side)	118
6.1	Exploded view - airbag (driver side)	118
6.2	Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters	118
6.3	Removing and installing connector at airbag	122
7	Airbag (front passenger side)	123
7.1	Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)	123
7.2	Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters	123
7.3	Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side	125
8	Side airbags	128
8.1	Exploded view - side airbag (front)	128
8.2	Exploded view - side airbag (rear)	129
8.3	Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter	129
8.4	Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter	131
8.5	Removing and installing wire for side airbag (front)	134
9	Curtain airbags	137
9.1	Exploded view - curtain airbag	137
9.2	Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter	137
10	Knee airbags	141
10.1	Exploded view - knee airbag	141
10.2	Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter	142
11	Crash sensors for airbags	147
11.1	Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags	147
11.2	Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283	148
11.3	Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180	152
11.4	Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256 / G257	154
12	Seat position sensor	156
12.1	Exploded view - seat position sensor	156
12.2	Removing and installing seat position sensor	156
13	Belt-fastened recognition system	159
13.1	Exploded view - seat occupied sensor	159
13.2	Removing and installing seat occupied sensor on front passenger side G128	159
13.3	Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (rear) G177 / G178 / G1010	160
14	Seat occupied recognition system	161
14.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system	161
14.2	Removing and installing seat occupied sensor	162
15	Pedestrian protection	165
15.1	Overview - pedestrian protection	165
15.2	Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection G570 / G571	167
15.3	Removing and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection G579	168
15.4	Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693	169
15.5	Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered	170
15.6	Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599	170



70 - Trim, insulation	172
1 Trim, insulation	172
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim/insulation	172
2 Door trim (front)	173
2.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)	173
2.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim	174
2.3 Removing and installing trim panel	175
2.4 Removing and installing door trim (front)	176
2.5 Removing and installing door puller (front)	178
2.6 Removing and installing interior door handle	179
2.7 Removing and installing window frame trim	179
3 Door trim (rear)	182
3.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)	182
3.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window	184
3.3 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim	184
3.4 Removing and installing trim panel	185
3.5 Removing and installing door trim (rear)	186
3.6 Removing and installing door puller (rear)	187
3.7 Removing and installing interior door handle	189
3.8 Removing and installing window frame trim	189
3.9 Removing and installing sun blind for door window	190
3.10 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind	191
4 Dash panel	192
4.1 Exploded view - dash panel	192
4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)	196
4.3 Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert	197
4.4 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim	197
4.5 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel	199
4.6 Removing and installing carrier for trim panel for dash panel	204
4.7 Removing and installing dash panel	205
4.8 Removing and installing cover for dash panel/head-up display	209
4.9 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting	209
4.10 Removing and installing outer dash panel vent	210
4.11 Removing and installing centre vent	211
4.12 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)	211
5 Dash panel cross member	213
5.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member	213
5.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member	215
5.3 Removing and installing support for knee bolster	219
6 Passenger compartment trim panels	220
6.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels	220
6.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim	223
6.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim	224
6.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim	225
6.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim	226
6.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim	227
6.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering	228
6.8 Exploded view - rear shelf	229
6.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim	229
6.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim	230
6.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim	234
6.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim	237
6.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim	240
6.14 Removing and installing foot rest	244



6.15	Removing and installing floor covering	244
6.16	Removing and installing rear shelf	245
6.17	Removing and installing loudspeaker trim	248
7	Luggage compartment trim panels	249
7.1	Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels	249
7.2	Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim	252
7.3	Exploded view - luggage compartment floor	258
7.4	Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)	261
7.5	Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)	264
7.6	Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)	268
7.7	Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim	269
7.8	Removing and installing luggage compartment floor	273
7.9	Removing and installing back panel trim (in luggage compartment)	273
7.10	Removing and installing lock carrier trim	274
7.11	Removing and installing fastening ring	275
7.12	Removing and installing frame for loading aid	275
7.13	Removing and installing bag hook	276
7.14	Removing and installing tail light cover	276
7.15	Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)	276
7.16	Removing and installing retaining rail	278
7.17	Removing and installing mounting for vehicle tool kit	278
7.18	Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well	279
8	Roof trim panels	280
8.1	Exploded view - moulded headliner	280
8.2	Removing and installing roof end trim	282
8.3	Removing and installing moulded headliner	283
8.4	Lowering moulded headliner	285
8.5	Attaching roof reinforcement to body	293

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL006539; Edition 10.2019)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



⇒ ["1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system", page 2](#)

⇒ ["1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components", page 3](#)

⇒ ["1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units \(pyrotechnic components\)", page 4](#)

⇒ ["1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags", page 4](#)

⇒ ["1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags", page 5](#)

⇒ ["1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors \(pressure sensors\) for side airbag \(front\)", page 6](#)

⇒ ["1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version", page 6](#)

⇒ ["1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version", page 7](#)

⇒ ["1.9 Additional safety regulations for active head restraints", page 7](#)

⇒ ["1.10 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident", page 8](#)

⇒ ["1.11 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident", page 9](#)

⇒ ["1.12 Accident in which no airbag was triggered", page 10](#)

⇒ ["1.13 Checking seat belts", page 10](#)

⇒ ["1.14 Checking belt", page 10](#)

⇒ ["1.15 Checking automatic belt retractor \(locking action\)", page 11](#)

⇒ ["1.16 Visual inspection of belt buckle", page 11](#)

⇒ ["1.17 Functional check of belt buckle", page 12](#)

⇒ ["1.18 Checking guide fittings and latch plate", page 12](#)

⇒ ["1.19 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident", page 12](#)

⇒ ["1.20 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats \(not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version\)", page 13](#)

⇒ ["1.21 Checking child seat anchors following an accident", page 13](#)

⇒ ["1.22 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 13](#)

1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

The engine can start unexpectedly if the vehicle's start/stop system is activated. A message in the instrument cluster indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

- To deactivate the start/stop system, switch off the ignition.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components

Pyrotechnic components are:

- ◆ Airbag units
- ◆ Belt tensioners
- ◆ Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- ◆ Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

General notes

- ◆ Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- ◆ There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- ◆ Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- ◆ Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- ◆ Observe the warnings in the instructions when working on components of the airbag system.
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.
- ◆ Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- ◆ If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- ◆ The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- ◆ When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- ◆ Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and passenger's airbags

- ◆ Following removal, driver's and passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:



- 1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.
- 4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- ◆ When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- ◆ Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- ◆ Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- ◆ When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- ◆ Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- ◆ Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- ◆ Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.
- ◆ Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- ◆ Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.
- ◆ This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).
- ◆ Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).

1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- ◆ We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).



- ◆ It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- ◆ The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- ◆ When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- ◆ All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- ◆ We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- ◆ When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- ◆ For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- ◆ Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- ◆ Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- ◆ All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- ◆ If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- ◆ Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- ◆ Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- ◆ Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- ◆ When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- ◆ When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- ◆ When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- ◆ After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- ◆ After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- ◆ It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- ◆ Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag units.
- ◆ Folding may be possible, provided you are careful not to cause damage (in particular to protective cover).



1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- ◆ Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- ◆ Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- ◆ The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- ◆ Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- ◆ Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than -40°C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- ◆ The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- ◆ Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- ◆ The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling de- activation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- ◆ Following any repair work on the passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed $\Rightarrow$ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- ◆ The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- ◆ Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- ◆ Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.



- ◆ Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.

Protected by copyright. This document, in part or in whole, is not permitted to be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or accepted any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- ◆ Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- ◆ The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- ◆ The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be renewed using the "seat occupied recognition service kit". The "basic setting" for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.9 Additional safety regulations for active head restraints

- ◆ Always switch off the ignition when working on the active head restraint system.
- ◆ On being triggered, the active head restraints spring forwards by roughly 55 mm and slightly upwards. Never attempt to prevent triggering of the active head restraints and keep away from the operating range of the active head restraints.
- ◆ Both active head restraints are always triggered simultaneously. Exception: On vehicles equipped with a reclining rear seat there is no active head restraint on the front passenger seat.
- ◆ When switching on the ignition, keep away from the operating range of the active head restraints. There must not be anyone else in the vehicle.
- ◆ Only perform the final control diagnosis after you have completed all repairs.
- ◆ The active head restraints are not to be dismantled or repaired. Always use new parts.
- ◆ If both active head restraints are renewed at the same time, the active head restraint actuation counter must be reset in "Guided Fault Finding" or in "Guided Functions" ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ If only one active head restraint is renewed, the active head restraint actuation counter must not be reset.
- ◆ Active head restraints must be renewed after they have been triggered 25 times (based on active head restraint actuation counter).
- ◆ The number of times the head restraints have been triggered is stored in the active head restraint actuation counter and can



be read out and reset in the "Guided Fault Finding" or "Guided Functions" ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

- ◆ The active head restraint actuation counter should only be reset when it indicates 25 and the head restraints have been renewed. The counter is located in the airbag control unit.

1.10 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- ◆ If message "Control unit defective" appears after event memory is interrogated
- ◆ If housing is damaged
- ◆ In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- ◆ All triggered airbag units
- ◆ Battery isolation igniter - N253-

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Dash panel
- ◆ Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Return ring with slip ring
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- ◆ Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- ◆ Cover
- ◆ Padding
- ◆ Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered



- ◆ Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- ◆ Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .
- In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.
- Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.

Note:

- ◆ The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.
- ◆ Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 4](#) .
- ◆ Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ [page 10](#) .
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components
- After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

1.11 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Central tube for dash panel; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag supports and front passenger's airbag unit so that they are free of stress. Otherwise central tube should also be renewed.
- ◆ Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- ◆ Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.



1.12 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- ◆ Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.13 Checking seat belts

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

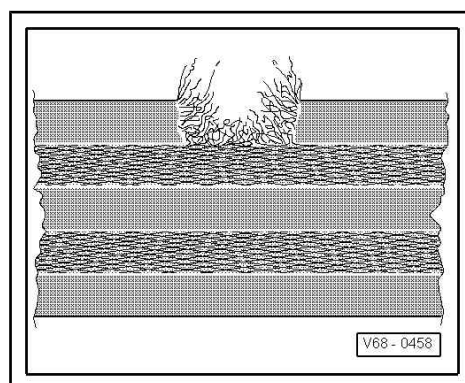
Points to check:

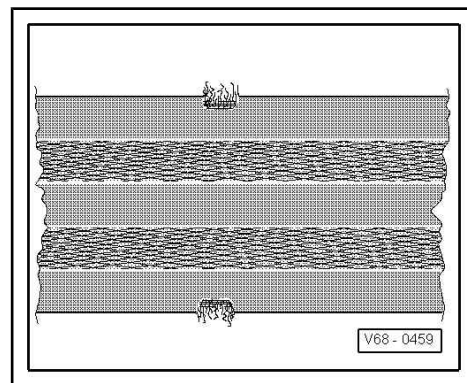
- ◆ Check belt ⇒ [page 10](#) .
- ◆ Check automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ [page 11](#) .
- ◆ Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ [page 11](#) .
- ◆ Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check securing components and anchorage points ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ [page 13](#) .
- If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

1.14 Checking belt

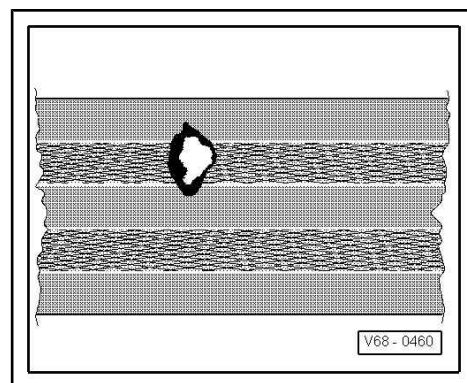
Procedure

- Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.
- Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .





- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar



1.15 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

- ◆ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

First check

- Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.
- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Second check

- For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.
- Fasten seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).
- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.16 Visual inspection of belt buckle

- Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.
- If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.



1.17 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

- Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function

- Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.



CAUTION

Risk of injury due to seat belt malfunction.

- **Never apply lubricant to belt buckles to eliminate noise or to stop buttons sticking.**

1.18 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

- Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.
- If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.19 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

- ◆ Latch plate deformed (strained)
- ◆ Height adjustment not functioning
- ◆ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged
- If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- Renew anchorage points.
- In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.



1.20 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- ◆ Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function

- ◆ The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- ◆ Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- ◆ Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- ◆ The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

1.21 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

Points to check:

- ◆ After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- ◆ Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- ◆ Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

1.22 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

Risk of injury due to liquid electrolyte.

Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.

- Put on safety goggles.
- Put on protective gloves.

Risk of damage to plastic parts due to liquid electrolyte.

- Clean any surfaces which have come into contact with liquid electrolyte immediately with water and a cloth.



2 Repair notes

⇒ [“2.1 Contact corrosion”, page 14](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring”, page 14](#)

2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners are used (e.g. bolts, nuts, washers, etc.).

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Please note:

- ◆ We recommend using only genuine replacement parts: these have been fully tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- ◆ We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- ◆ Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



68 – Interior equipment

1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels

⇒ [“1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels”, page 15](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover \(driver side\)”, page 17](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 18](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 19](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover \(driver side\)”, page 19](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Removing and installing footwell cover \(driver side\)”, page 20](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim \(top\)”, page 21](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim \(bottom\)”, page 22](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism”, page 23](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism”, page 24](#)

⇒ [“1.11 Removing and installing glove box”, page 25](#)

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Sun blind for rear window

- ☐ Saloon only
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 31](#)

2 - Sun blind for side window

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 184](#)

3 - Grab handle

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 30](#)

4 - Steering column trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 18](#)

5 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 17](#)

6 - Footwell cover (driver side)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 17](#)

7 - Interior mirror

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 62](#)

8 - Sun visor

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 30](#)

9 - Glove box

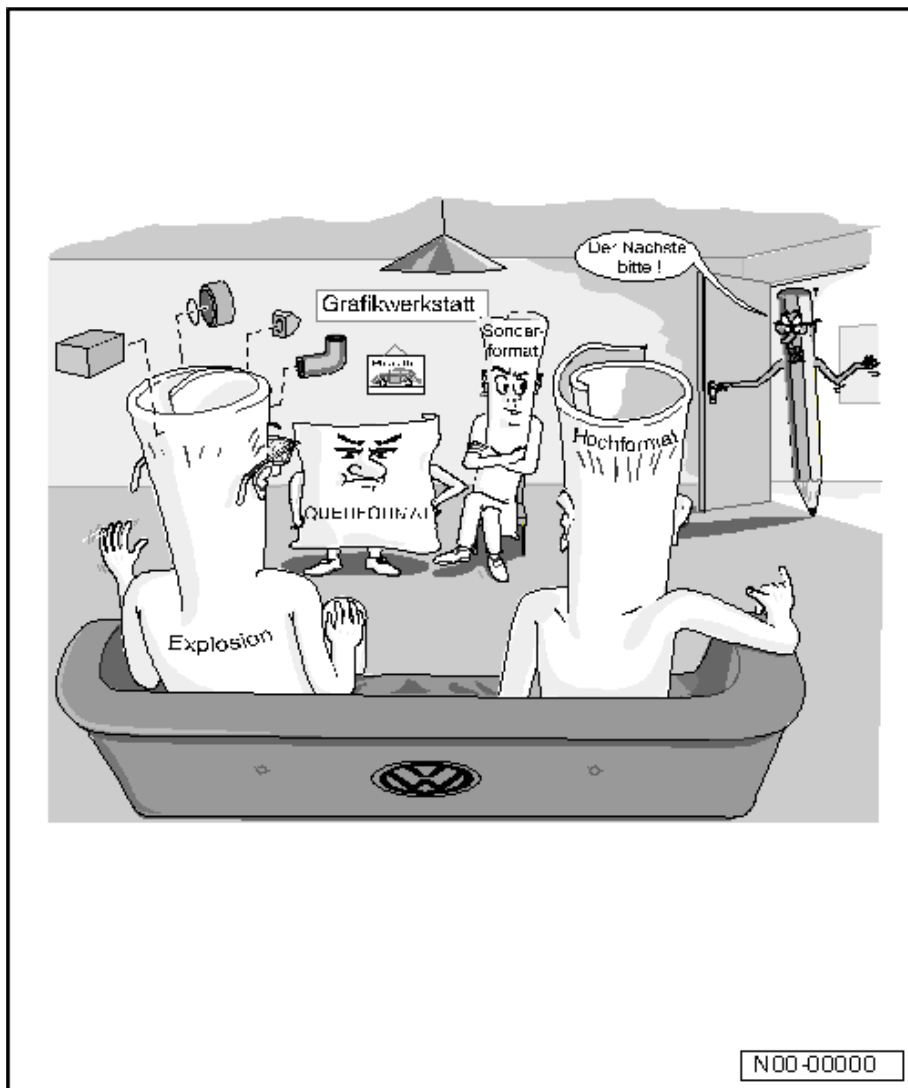
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 19](#)

10 - Centre console

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 43](#)

11 - Centre armrest (front)

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 59](#)





1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)

1 - Footwell cover (driver side)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 20](#)

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

4 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 20](#)

5 - Cover (side)

- ☐ For dash panel
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 196](#)

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

7 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 19](#)

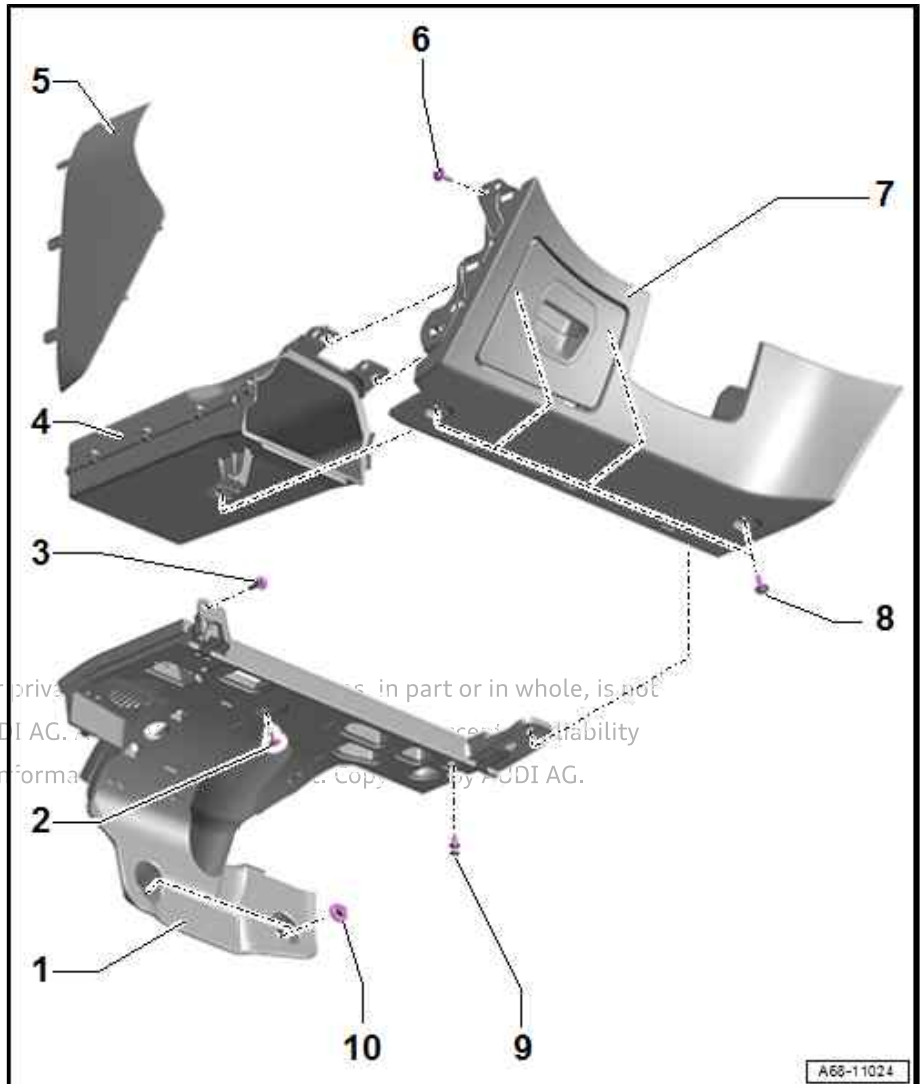
8 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 3 Nm

9 - Fastener

10 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2 Nm





1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim

1 - Bolt

- 1.5 Nm

2 - Steering column trim (top)

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 21](#)
- Press on until it engages
audibly

3 - Steering column switch module

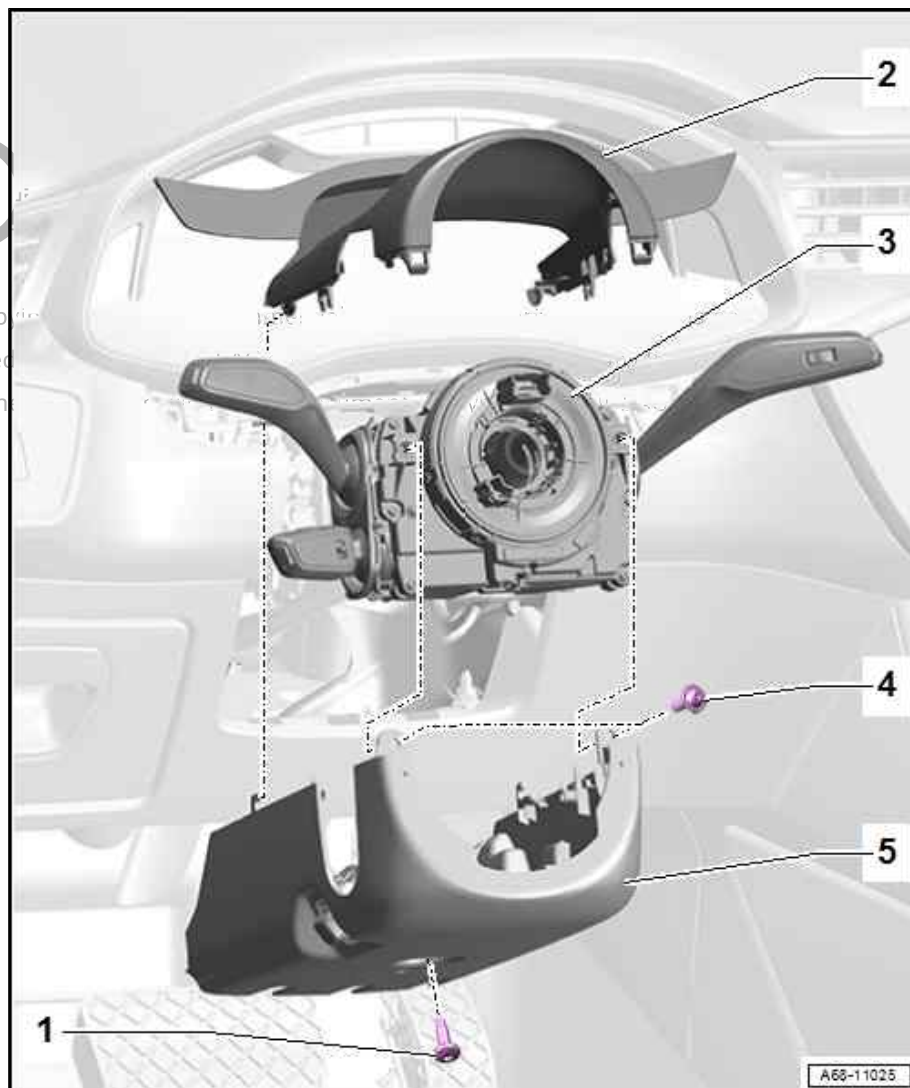
- Exploded view ⇒ Elec-
trical system; Rep. gr.
94 ; Steering column
switch module; Exploted view - steering
column switch module

4 - Bolt

- 2x
- 2.5 Nm

5 - Steering column trim (bot- tom)

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts
catalogue
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 22](#)





1.4 Exploded view - glove box

1 - Insert

- ☐ For glove box
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 3 Nm

3 - Glove box

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 25](#)

4 - Dummy cover/vent

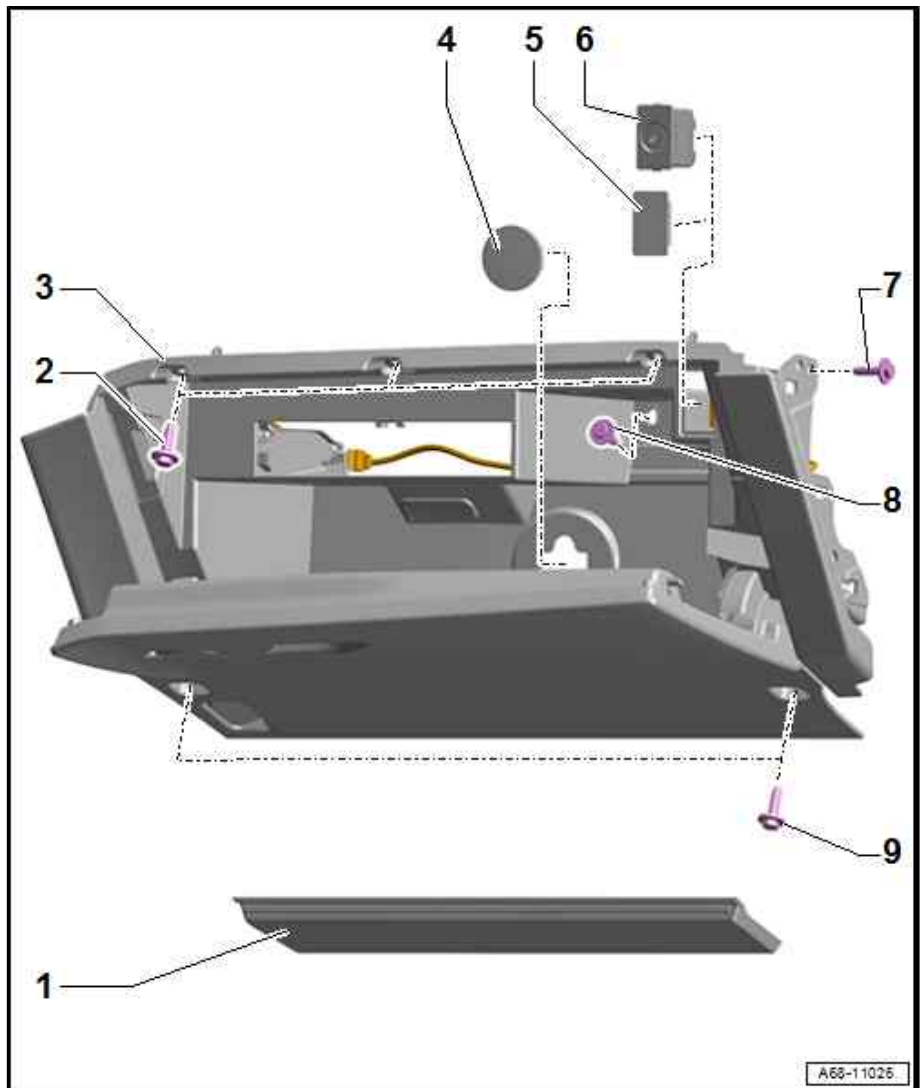
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Dummy cover

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- ☐ Rest-of-world vehicles/equipment version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 125](#)
- ☐ Press into opening until it engages audibly



7 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 3 Nm



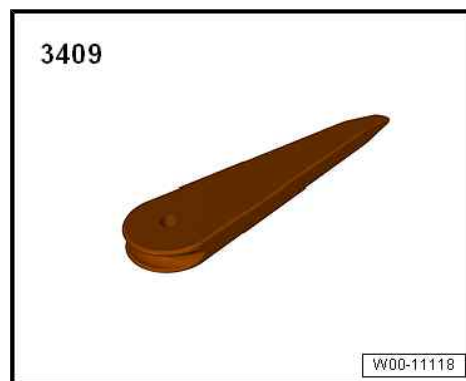
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required



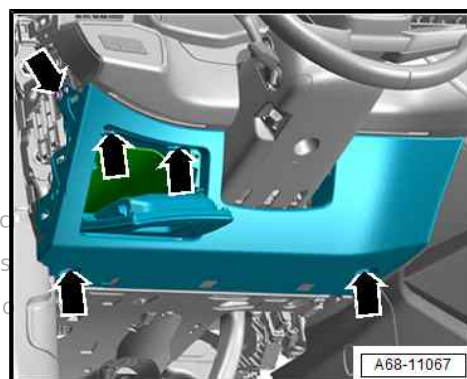
◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Open storage compartment cover.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



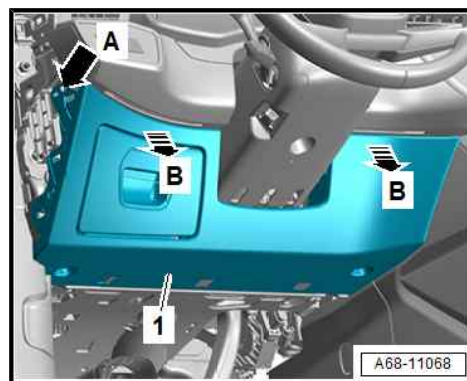
- Disengage dash panel cover at lug on side -arrow A-.
- Unclip dash panel cover (driver side) -1- from dash panel by hand or using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows B-.
- Detach dash panel cover (driver side).

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

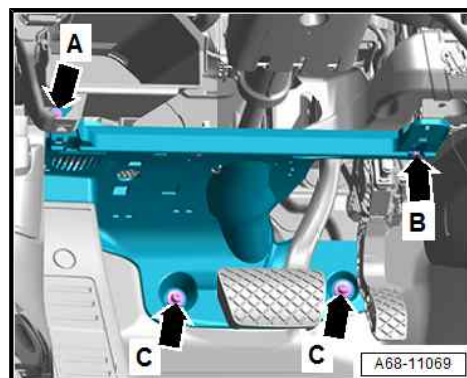
⇒ ["1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover \(driver side\)", page 17](#)



1.6 Removing and installing footwell cover (driver side)

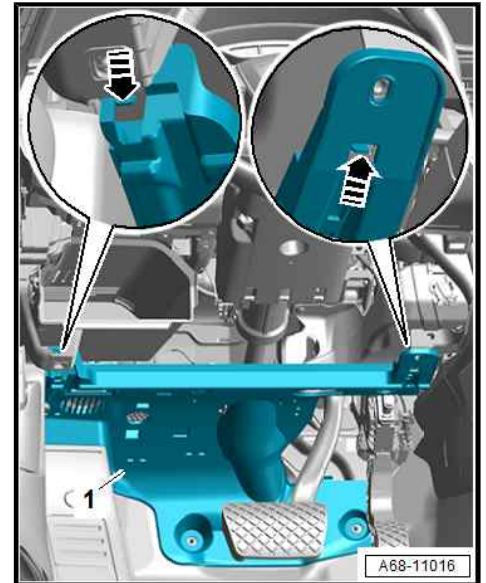
Removing

- Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 19](#) .
- Unscrew nuts -arrows C-.
- If fitted, remove fastener -arrow B-.
- Unscrew bolt -arrow A-.





- Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, release fasteners -arrows- and pull footwell cover (driver side) -1- off downwards.
- Disengage diagnostic connection from footwell cover.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors for footwell light, parking aid warning buzzer and emergency call loudspeaker.
- Detach footwell cover (driver side) towards rear.



Removing storage compartment

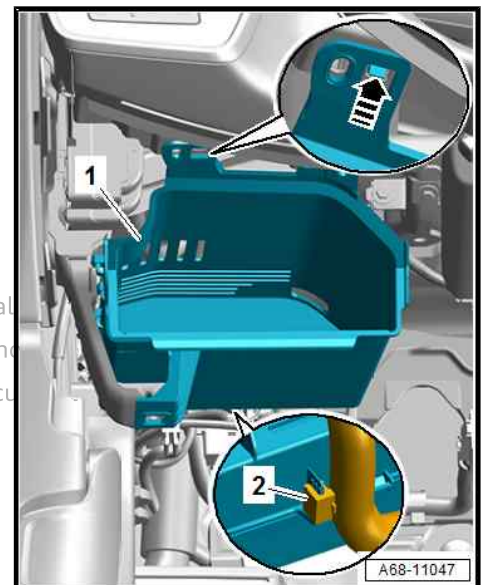
- Release fastener -arrow- using a flat-bladed screwdriver and disengage storage compartment -1- downwards.
- Unclip retainer -2- for wiring harness on rear of storage compartment and take out storage compartment towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

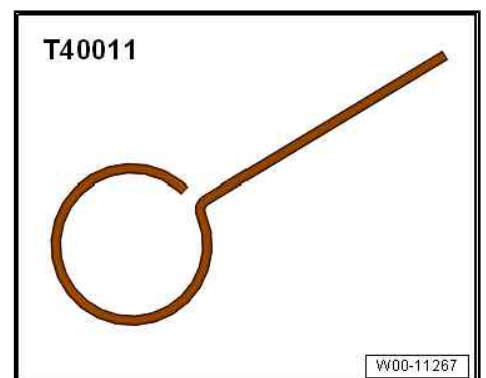
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)", page 17



1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

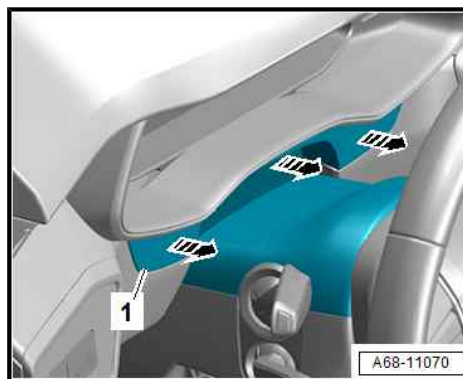
- ◆ Locking pin - T40011-



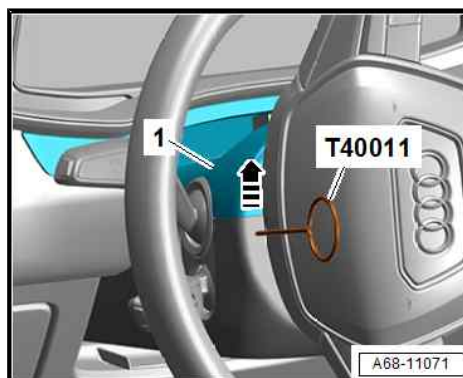


Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Unclip trim cover -1- for steering column trim by hand from dash panel at side and top -arrows-.



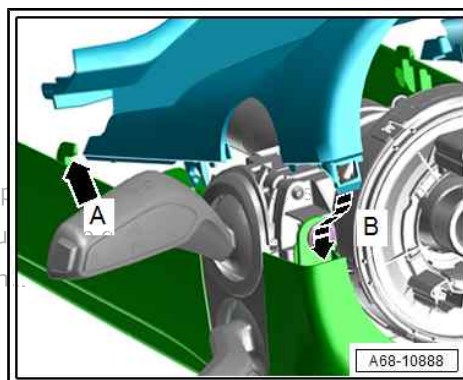
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Unclip steering column trim (top) -1- from steering column trim (bottom) -arrow-.
- To do so, insert locking pin - T40011- in opening and use it to press retaining hook for steering column trim (top) forwards, then immediately remove locking pin - T40011- again.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).
- Disengage steering column trim (top) from steering column trim (bottom) and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

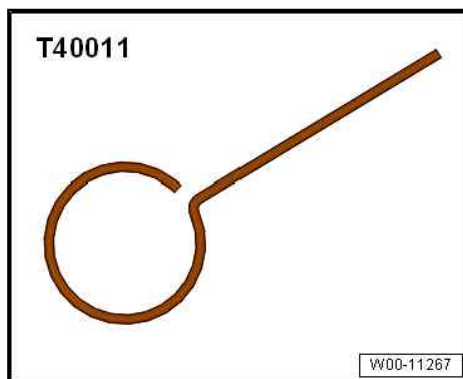
- First engage front of steering column trim (top) in lugs -arrow A- on steering column trim (bottom).
- Clip retaining tabs on steering column trim (top) into steering column trim (bottom) -arrow B-.
- Make sure steering column trim sections engage correctly with each other.



1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

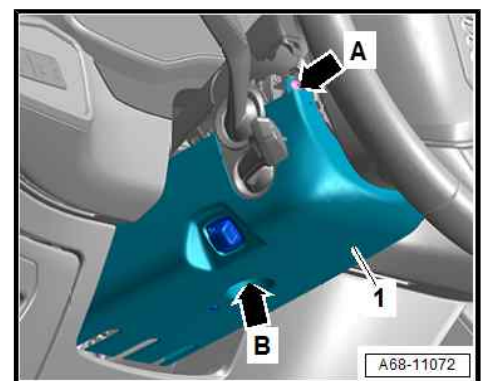
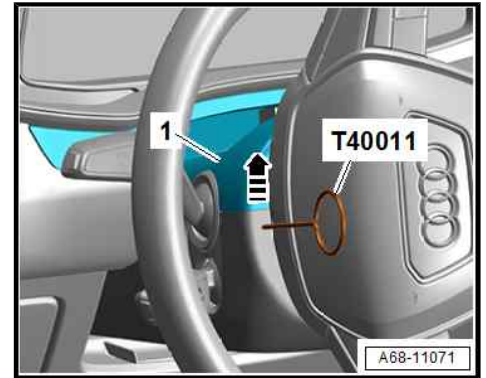
- ◆ Locking pin - T40011-





Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Unclip steering column trim (top) -1- from steering column trim (bottom) -arrow-.
- To do so, insert locking pin - T40011- in opening and use it to press retaining hook for steering column trim (top) forwards, then immediately remove locking pin - T40011- again.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Disengage steering column trim (top) from steering column trim (bottom) and move it upwards and to one side.
- Remove accessible bolt -arrow A- for steering column trim (bottom).
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and unscrew bolt on opposite side.
- Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).
- Remove bolt -arrow B- and take off steering column trim (bottom) -1-.
- Disengage cable retainer from steering column trim and move clear.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors.

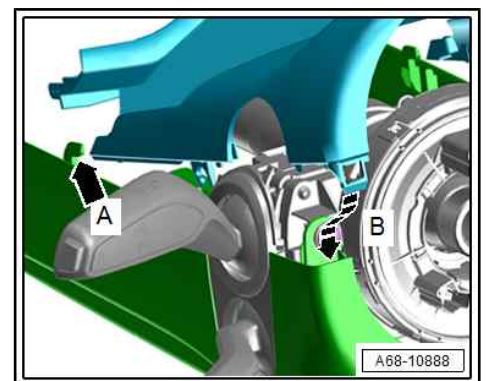


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- First engage front of steering column trim (top) in lugs -arrow A- on steering column trim (bottom).
- Clip retaining tabs on steering column trim (top) into steering column trim (bottom) -arrow B-.
- Make sure steering column trim sections engage correctly with each other.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 18



1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism

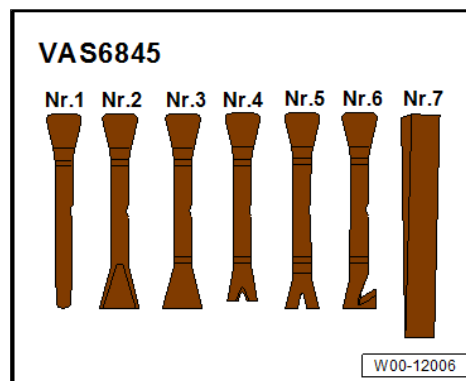
Special tools and workshop equipment required



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

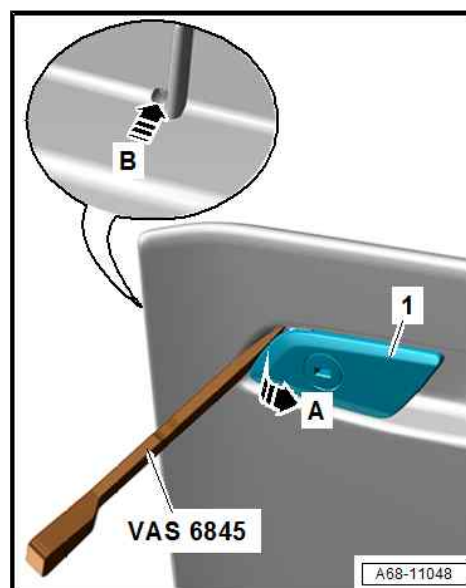


Removing

- Press glove box opening mechanism -1- out of glove box lid with scraper from -VAS 6845- -arrow A- and apply tension.
- To do so, insert appropriate round tool in side opening -arrow B- and release retaining hook for opening mechanism on glove box lid.

Installing

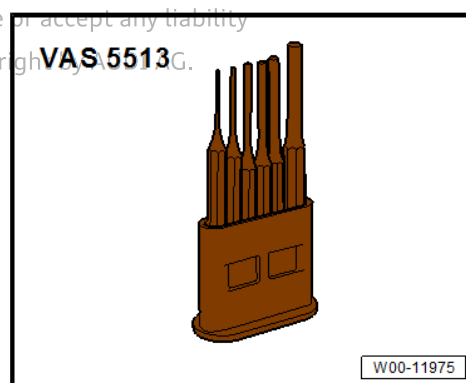
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



1.10 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Roll-pin drift - VAS 5513-

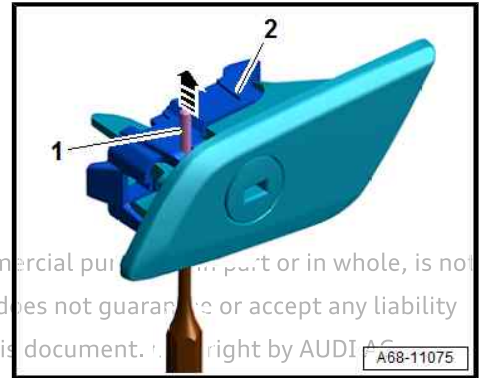




Removing

- Remove glove box opening mechanism ➔ [page 23](#) .
- Drive shaft -1- out of mounting hole in direction of -arrow- using a roll-pin drift.
- Detach cover -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

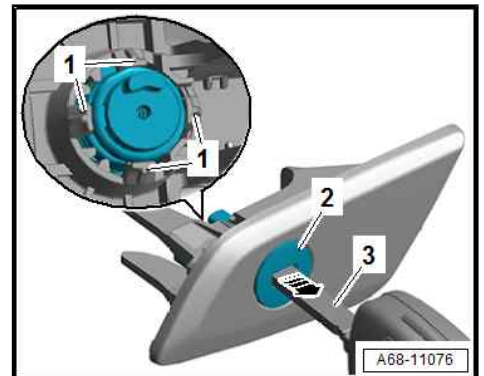


NOTICE

Risk of irreparable damage to lock cylinder if handled incorrectly.

Tumblers and springs may fall out.

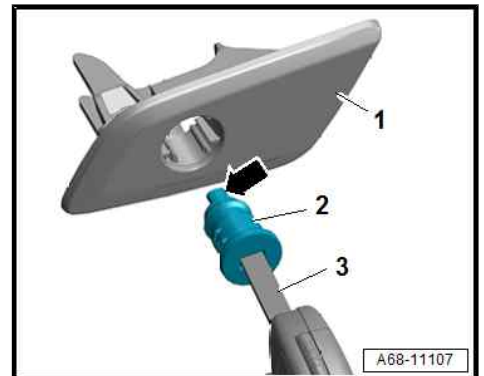
- Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted.
- Insert key -3- into lock cylinder.
- Carefully release fasteners -1- one after another using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, and at the same time press out lock cylinder -2- -arrow-.



Installing

- Insert key -3- into new lock cylinder -2-.
- Pull protective cap off new lock cylinder.
- Insert lock cylinder into glove box opening mechanism -1- until it engages (pay attention to correct installation position of lug).
- Lug -arrow- on lock cylinder should face upwards.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



1.11 Removing and installing glove box

NAR vehicles:

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 1](#) .



WARNING

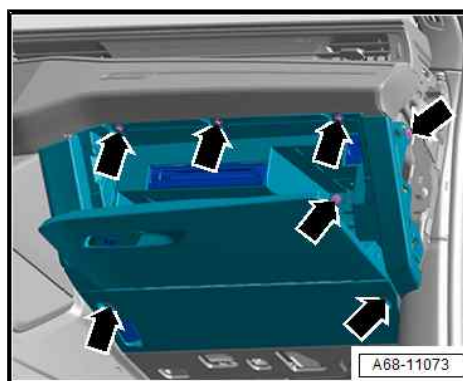
Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

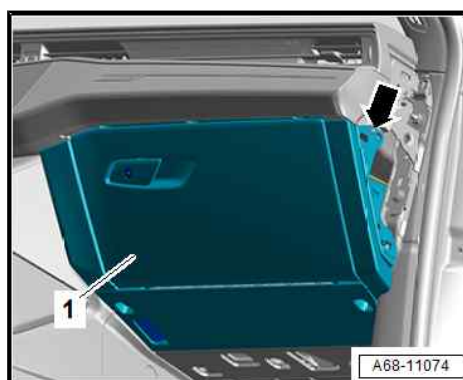
- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

Removing

- Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side)
⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove footwell light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel .
- Open glove box lid.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.



- Disengage glove box -1- at lug on side -arrow-.
- Detach glove box and carefully pull it out slightly.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors for DVD changer - R161- .
- Unplug and detach electrical connector for glove box.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



NAR vehicles:

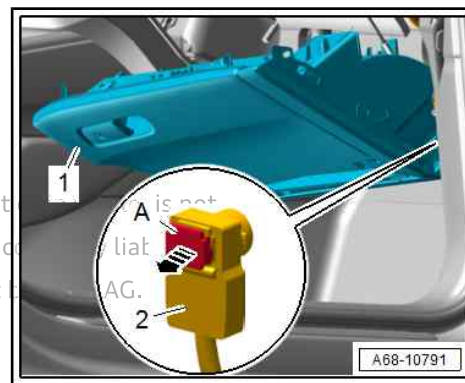
- Detach glove box -1- and carefully pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector -2-.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- **Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.**
- To do so, release connector locking element -A- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Take care not to trap any wires.

NAR vehicles:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

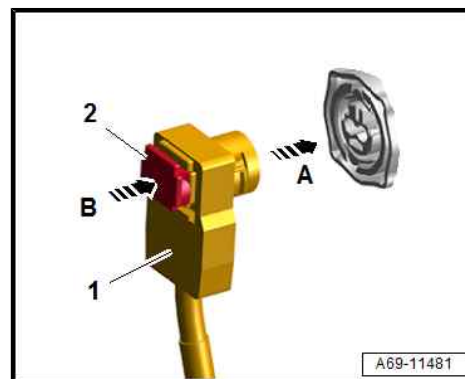
- **Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.**
- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- **After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.**
- Depending on country/equipment version: If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 19



2 Equipment

⇒ [“2.1 Exploded view - load guard”, page 28](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 30](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Exploded view - sun blind”, page 31](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover”, page 32](#)

⇒ [“2.5 Removing and installing retainer for load guard”,
page 33](#)

⇒ [“2.6 Removing and installing mounting for load guard”,
page 33](#)

⇒ [“2.7 Removing and installing bracket for load guard”,
page 34](#)

⇒ [“2.8 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 34](#)

⇒ [“2.9 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor”, page
35](#)

⇒ [“2.10 Removing and installing sun blind”, page 36](#)

⇒ [“2.11 Removing and installing grab handle”, page 40](#)

⇒ [“2.12 Removing and installing luggage compartment cover”,
page 41](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - load guard



1 - Trim

- ☐ For mounting for load guard
- ☐ Clip into rear seat backrest

2 - Rubber grommet

- ☐ For bracket for load guard
- ☐ Slide onto bracket and insert in trim

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 5.2 Nm

4 - Bracket for load guard

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 34](#)

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

6 - Retainer

- ☐ For load guard
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 33](#)
- ☐ Position locating lug on retainer in bore in body

7 - Load guard

8 - Guide rail

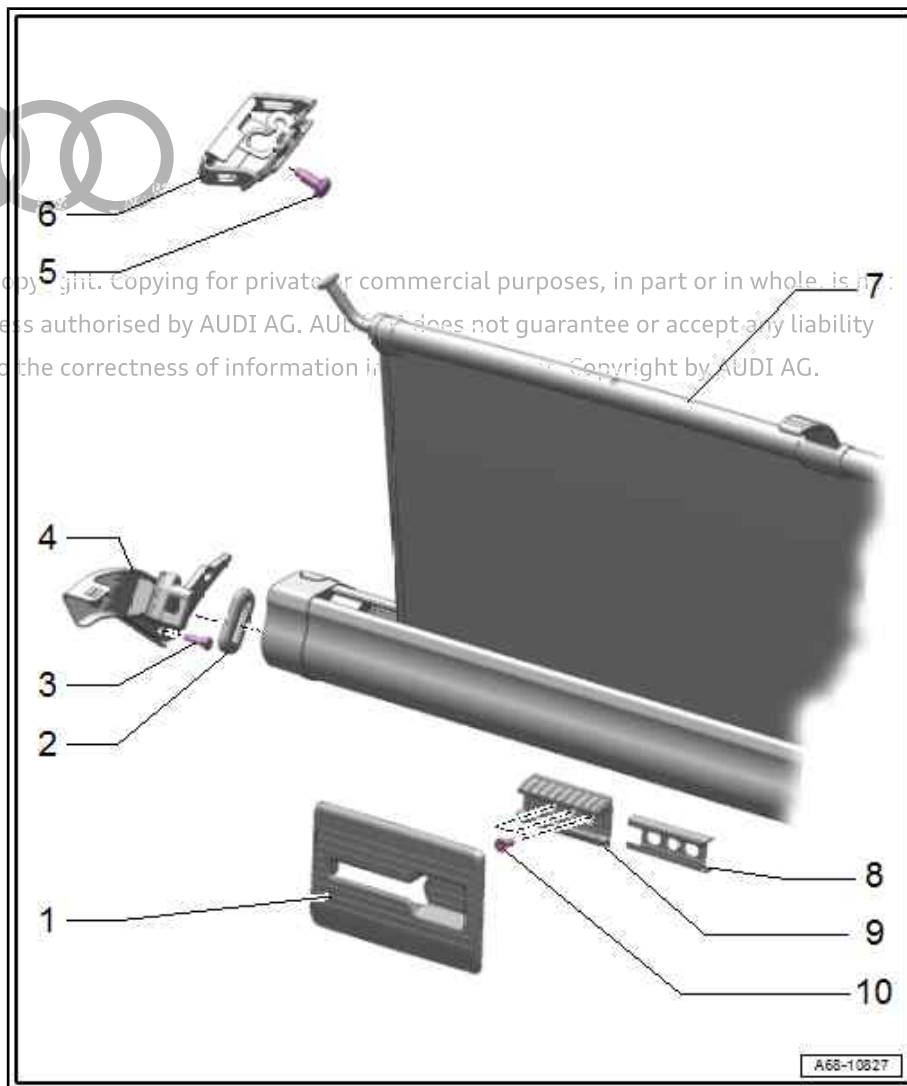
- ☐ Insert in mounting

9 - Mounting for load guard

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Bolted onto rear seat backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 33](#)

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Self-locking
- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ☐ 9 Nm





2.2 Exploded view - sun visors

1 - Expanding caps

- ☐ Clipped into sun visor
- ☐ Press on until it engages completely

2 - Grab handle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 40](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages completely

3 - Expanding caps

- ☐ Unclip only up to detent; do not pull out fully
- ☐ Press on until it engages completely

4 - Centre bracket

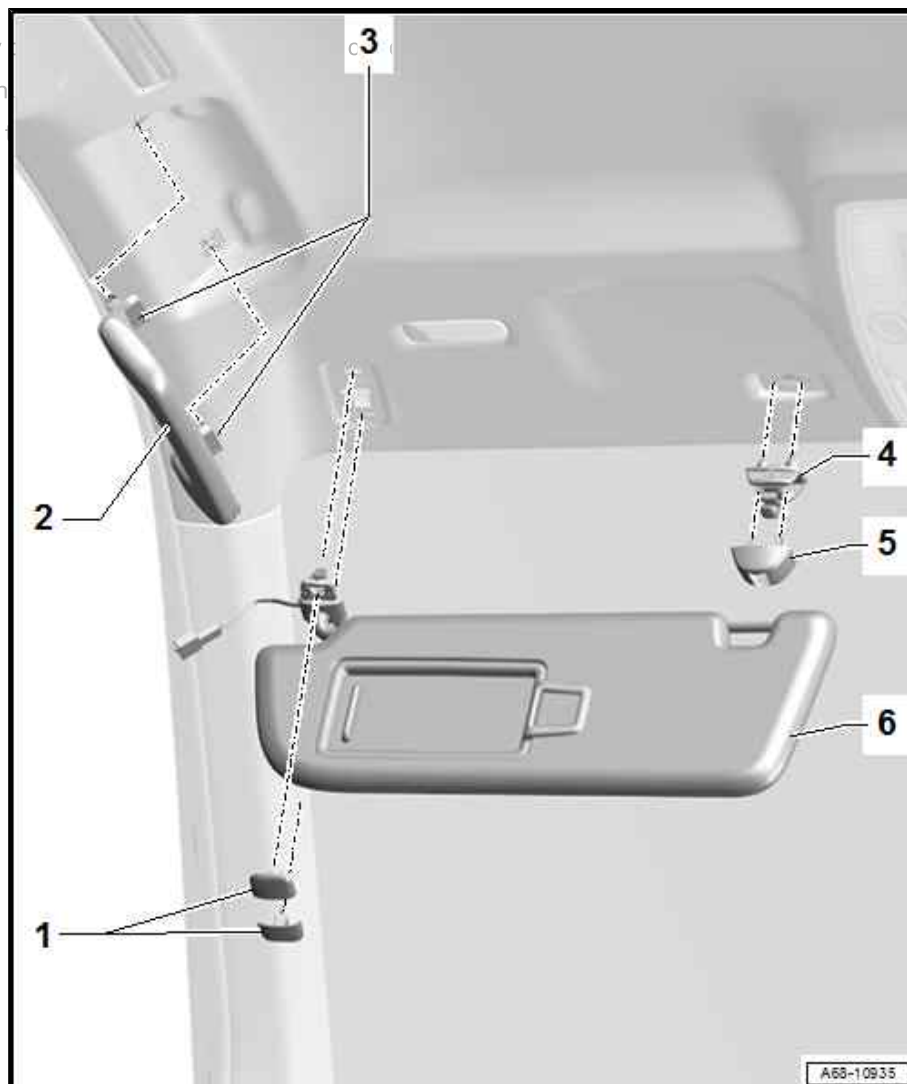
- ☐ For sun visor
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 35](#)
- ☐ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

5 - Expanding cap

- ☐ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

6 - Sun visor

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 34](#)
- ☐ Engage bracket for sun visor in body opening





2.3 Exploded view - sun blind

1 - Sun blind

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 36](#)
- ☐ Clip into rear section of
rear shelf
- ☐ Insert sun blind with rear
shelf in rear window
frame and tighten bolts

2 - Bolts

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

3 - Trim (bottom)

- ☐ For rail
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 39](#)
- ☐ Engage in rail and press
on until it is securely fit-
ted

4 - Trim (top)

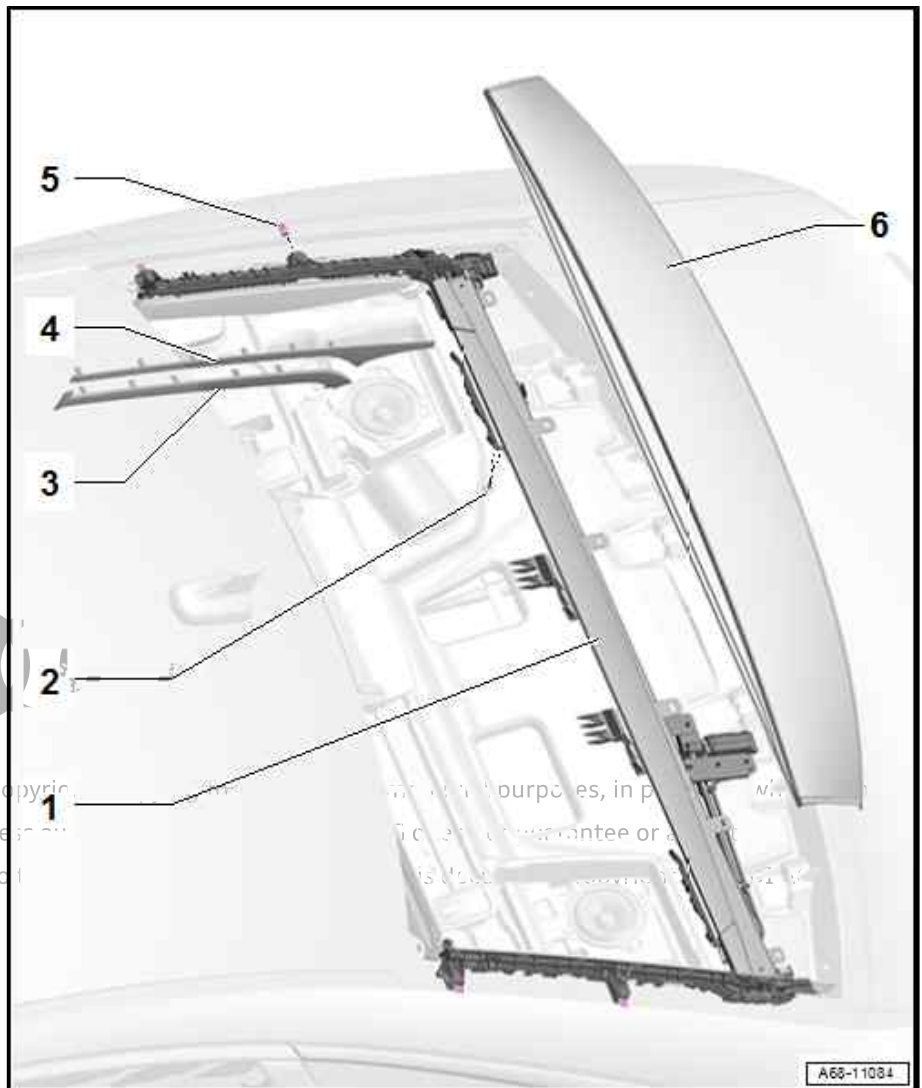
- ☐ For rail
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 39](#)
- ☐ Engage in rail and press
on until it is securely fit-
ted

5 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Remove any clips left in
body mounting points
using removal tool -
T40280-
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ☐ Insert in rail

6 - Rear section of rear shelf

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 36](#)
- ☐ Clip into sun blind
- ☐ Insert sun blind with rear shelf in rear window frame and tighten bolts





2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover

1 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Thread-forming
- ☐ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ☐ 0.35 Nm

2 - Retaining frame

- ☐ For handle for luggage compartment cover
- ☐ Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Renewing ⇒ [page 41](#)

3 - Handle

- ☐ For luggage compartment cover
- ☐ Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Renewing ⇒ [page 41](#)

4 - Luggage compartment cover

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 4.5 Nm

7 - Rail

- ☐ Only supplied together with ⇒ [Item 12 \(page 33\)](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 41](#)

8 - Clip

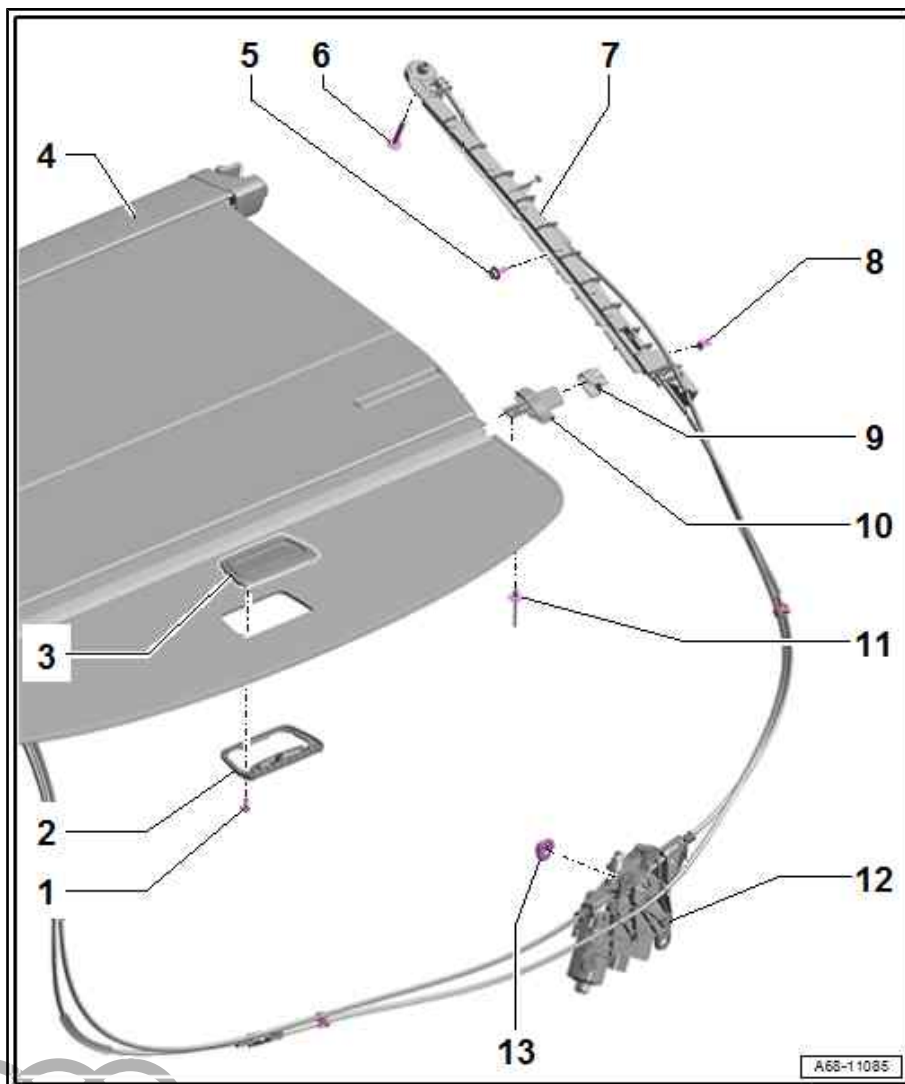
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in rail
- ☐ Remove any clips left in D-pillar mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in rail for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

9 - Actuator

- ☐ For luggage compartment cover
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Clip into rail
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["6.13.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Avant", page 241](#)

10 - Retaining pin

- ☐ Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Riveted to luggage compartment cover





11 - Rivet

- ☐ 2x

12 - Motor 1 for luggage compartment cover - V473-

- ☐ Fitting location: in luggage compartment on lock carrier
- ☐ Only supplied together with ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 32\)](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 41](#)

13 - Nut

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

2.5 Removing and installing retainer for load guard

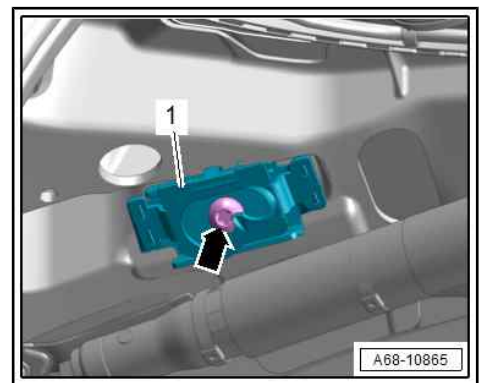
Removing

- Remove moulded headliner ⇒ [page 284](#) and lay it down on seats; headliner does not have to be removed.
- Press flap towards rear, unscrew bolt -arrow- behind flap and detach retainer -1- for load guard.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

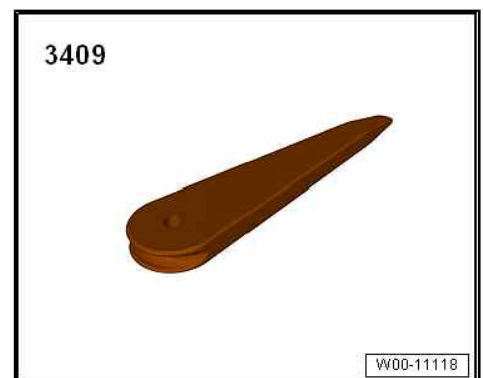
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - load guard", page 28](#)



2.6 Removing and installing mounting for load guard

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-





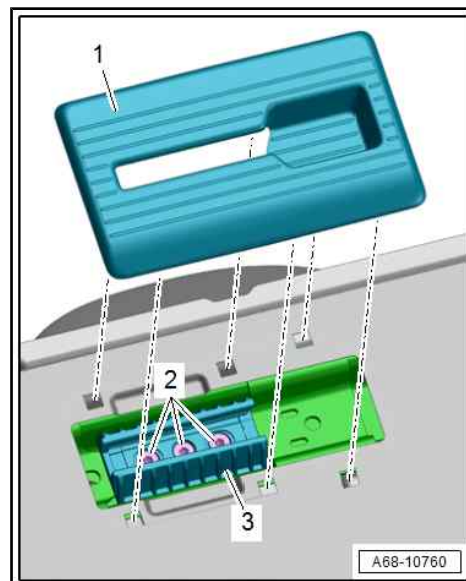
Removing

- Fold backrest forwards.
- Unclip trim -1- for mounting for load guard from rear seat backrest using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Remove bolts -2-.
- Detach mounting for load guard -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - load guard", page 28



2.7 Removing and installing bracket for load guard

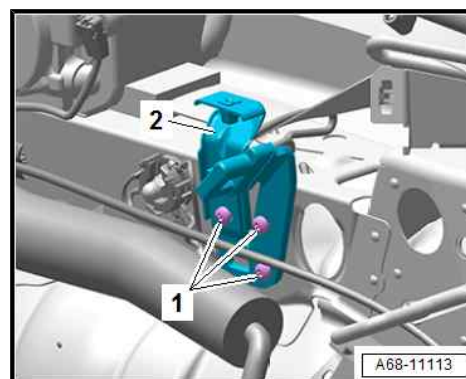
Removing

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 271](#) .
- Remove bolts -1-.
- Detach bracket -2- for load guard.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

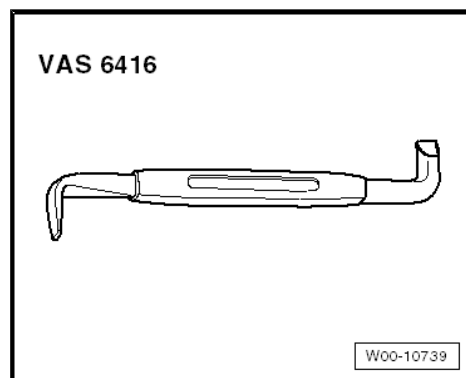
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - load guard", page 28



2.8 Removing and installing sun visor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

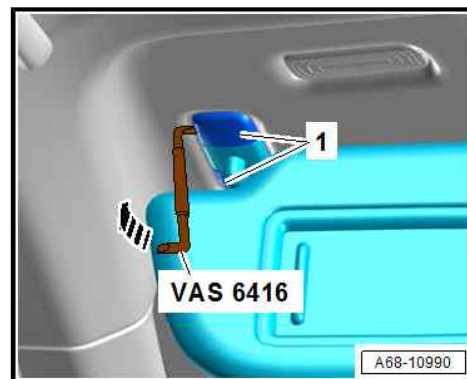


Removing

- Unclip expanding caps -1- for sun visor bracket -arrow-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- only approx. 1 mm under cap.

Note:

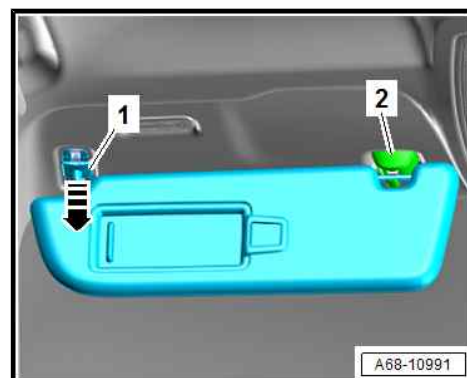
Inserting angled screwdriver further would position it beneath sun visor. The expanding cap can then not be prised off.



- Disengage sun visor from centre bracket -2-.
- Unclip sun visor bracket -1- with retaining clips downwards -arrow- from body opening and remove.
- Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.

Installing

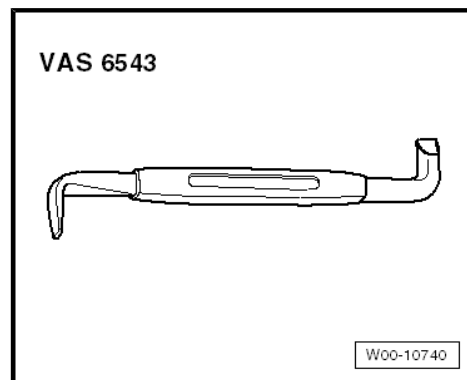
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



2.9 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Disengage sun visor from centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.
- Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket for sun visor -arrow A-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- only approx. 1 mm under cap.

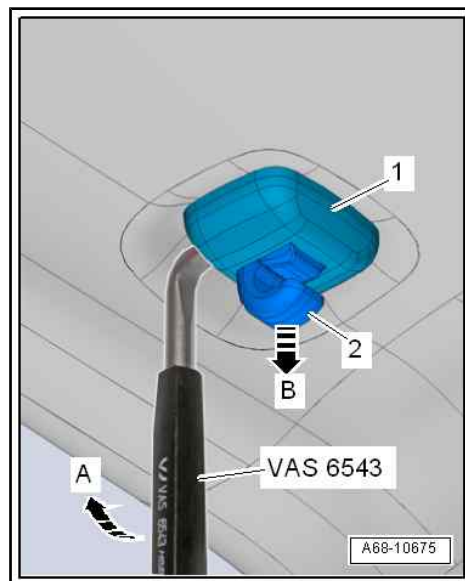
Note:

Inserting angled screwdriver further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.

- Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -2- -arrow B-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



2.10 Removing and installing sun blind

⇒ ["2.10.1 Removing and installing sun blind", page 36](#)

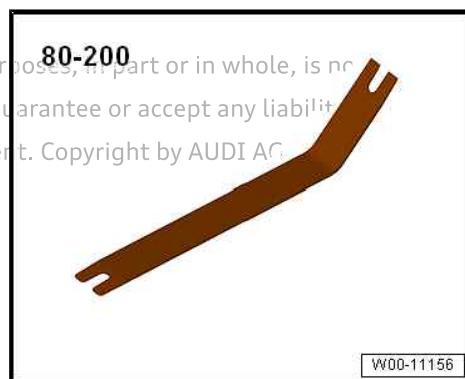
⇒ ["2.10.2 Removing and installing trim for sun blind rail", page 39](#)

2.10.1 Removing and installing sun blind

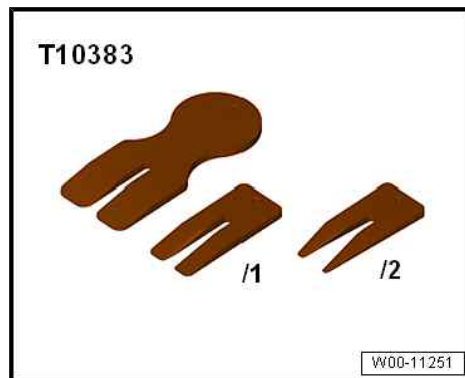
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



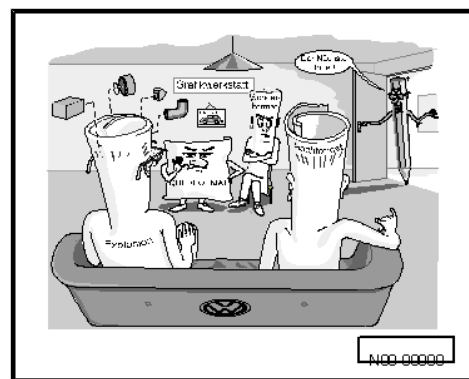


◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

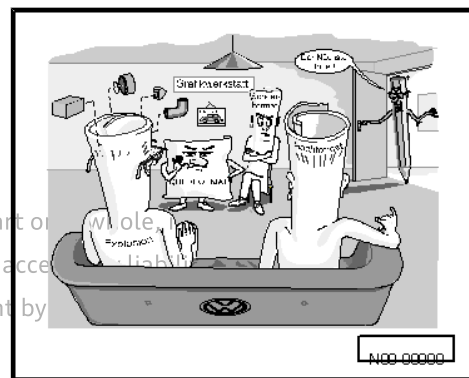
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ➔ [page 240](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ➔ [page 237](#) .
- Remove rear shelf ➔ [page 245](#) .
- Remove rear shelf insulation.
- Unclip trim -1- for sun blind rail -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- , disengage remaining retaining catches and detach trim.



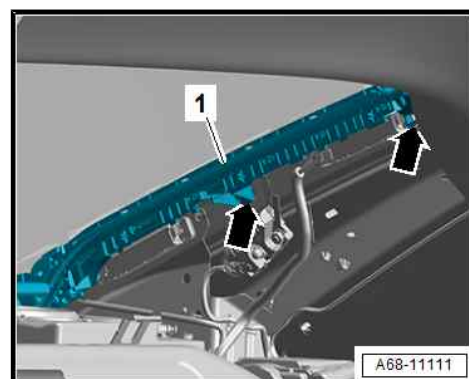
- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

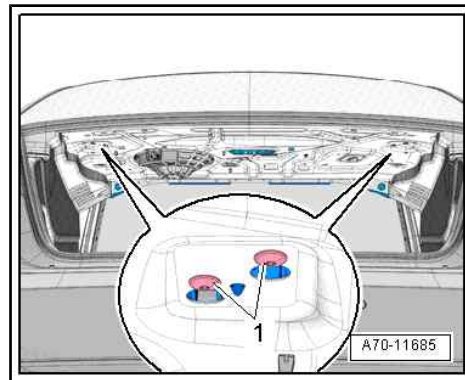


- Unclip sun blind rail -1- at positions indicated -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
- Swivel sun blind rail inwards.
- Repeat procedure for rail on opposite side.

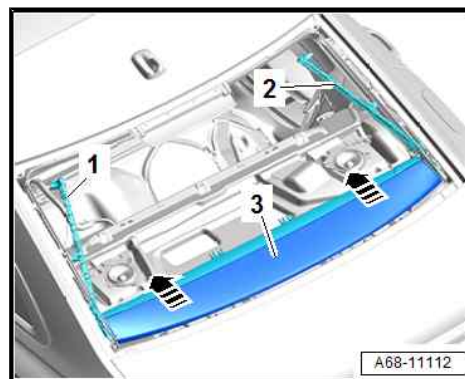




- Unscrew bolts -1- for sun blind in luggage compartment.



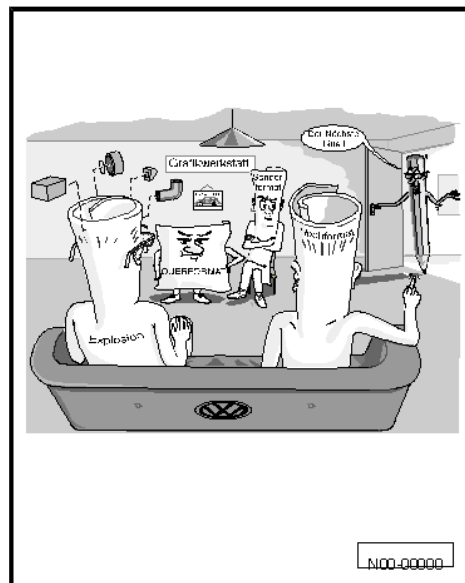
- Fold sun blind rails -1, 2- inwards.
- Lift sun blind with rear shelf -3- slightly and pull it out of mountings on rear window frame towards front -arrows-.
- Take out sun blind with rear shelf.



- If necessary, separate sun blind -1- and rear shelf -3- at fasteners -arrows-; release retaining hooks -2- one after another using a flat-bladed screwdriver to do so.

Installing

- If removed previously, insert sun blind -1- in rear shelf -3- and press on until it engages.



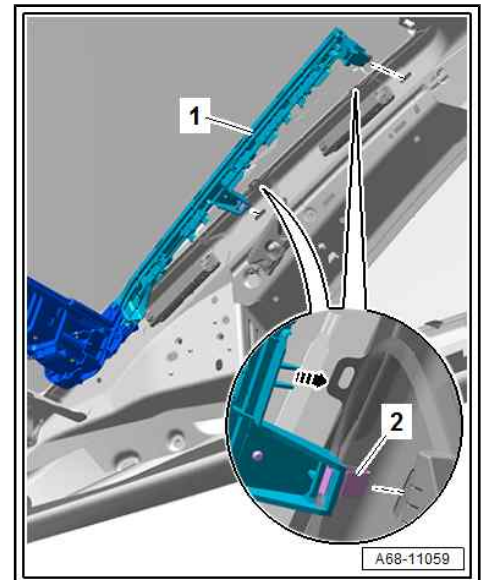
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

- Position sun blind rail -1- in fasteners on D-pillar -arrow- and press on until clips -2- engage audibly.

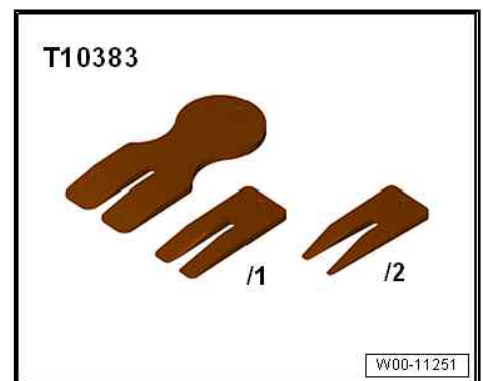
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.3 Exploded view - sun blind", page 31



2.10.2 Removing and installing trim for sun blind rail

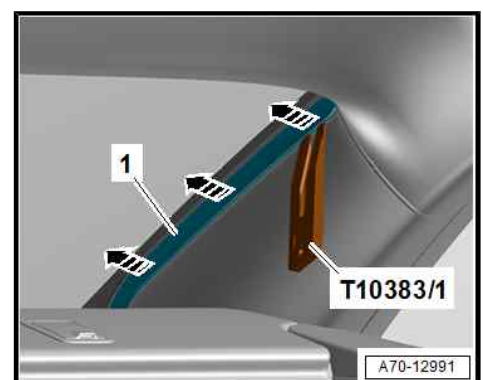
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

- Unclip trim (bottom) -1- for sun blind rail -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1-, disengage remaining retaining catches and detach trim.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



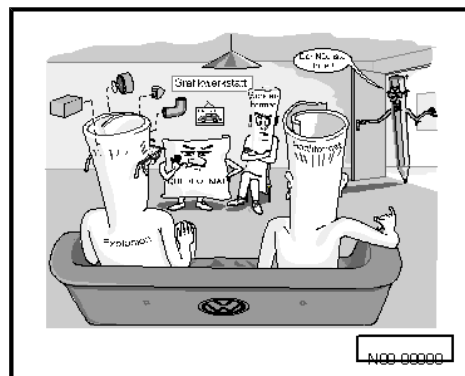
- Unclip trim (top) -1- for sun blind rail -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- , disengage remaining retaining catches and detach trim.

Note:

Shown without D-pillar trim in illustration

Installing

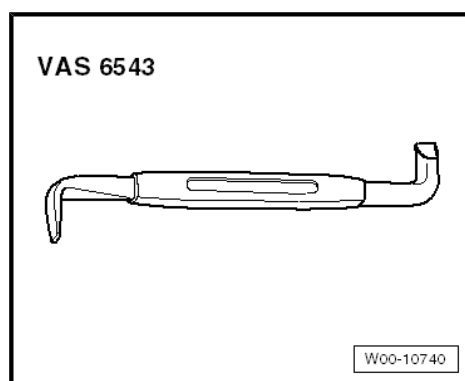
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



2.11 Removing and installing grab handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

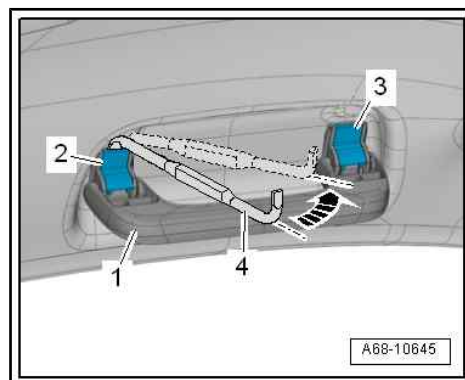


NOTICE

Risk of irreparable damage to grab handle if handled incorrectly.

Silicone cushioning element and spring may fall out.

- Unclip expanding caps only up to detent.
- Insert angled screwdriver -4- in gap behind expanding cap -2-.
- Swivel angled screwdriver -arrow- until expanding cap engages audibly in detent.
- Repeat procedure on second expanding cap -3-.
- Pull grab handle -1- out of cut-out in body.
- Leave expanding caps in detent position in grab handle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Insert grab handle in cut-out in body.
- There must not be a gap between the handle and the roof trim.
- Press in expanding caps.



2.12 Removing and installing luggage compartment cover

⇒ [“2.12.1 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment cover”, page 41](#)

⇒ [“2.12.2 Removing and installing drive unit for luggage compartment cover”, page 41](#)

2.12.1 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment cover

Removing

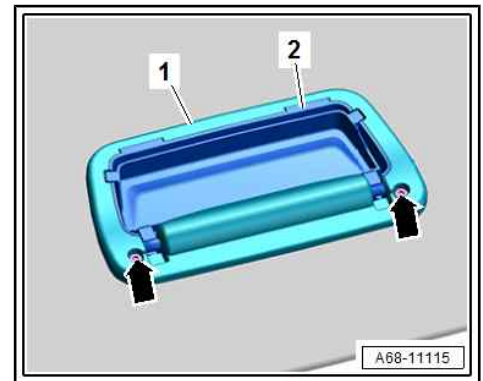
- Remove luggage compartment cover.
- Set down luggage compartment cover on a soft surface.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Disengage and detach retaining frame -1- at handle -2- for luggage compartment cover.
- Remove handle for luggage compartment cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover”, page 32](#)



2.12.2 Removing and installing drive unit for luggage compartment cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

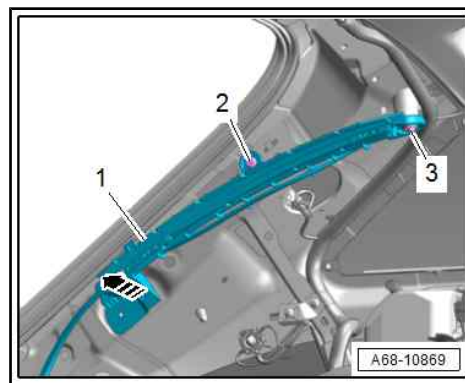


Removing

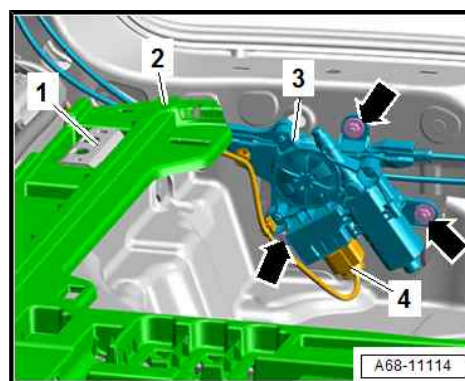
- Remove luggage compartment floor.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove mounting for breakdown set.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove mounting for vehicle tool kit ⇒ [page 278](#) .
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ [page 271](#) .
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 241](#) .



- Remove bolts -2, 3-.
- Unclip rail -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and disengage it from D-pillar.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.



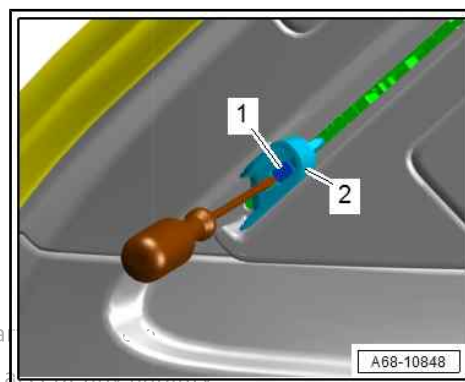
- Release catch and unplug electrical connector -4-.
- Remove nuts -arrows-.
- Disengage drive unit -3- and Bowden cables at brackets.
- Remove bracket (rear) -1- for retaining rails on both sides
⇒ [page 278](#) .
- Lift mounting frame for loading aid -2- slightly on both sides and disengage Bowden cables.
- Remove drive unit for luggage compartment cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Clip both actuators -2- for luggage compartment cover into rail and secure with spreader pin -1-.
- Check function after installing.
- Both actuators for luggage compartment cover must be parallel (top and bottom) at stop in guide of D-pillar trim.
- If actuators are not parallel, check routing of Bowden cables and adjust if necessary.



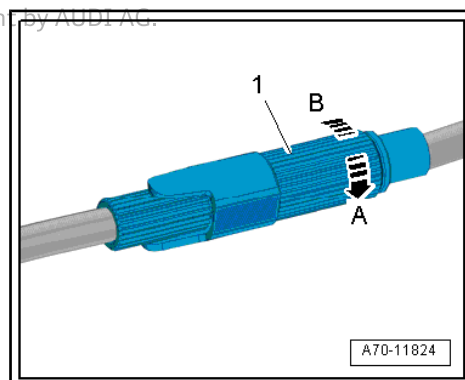
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited without the express written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Adjusting Bowden cables for drive unit:

- Adjust Bowden cable via Bowden cable adjuster -1-.
- Turn Bowden cable adjuster in direction of -arrow A- or -arrow B-.
- Adjust Bowden cable so that the two actuators for luggage compartment cover are parallel.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["2.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover", page 32](#)





3 Centre console

- ⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 43](#)
- ⇒ [“3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim \(rear\)”, page 47](#)
- ⇒ [“3.3 Removing and installing centre console trim \(side\)”, page 49](#)
- ⇒ [“3.4 Removing and installing centre console cover”, page 49](#)
- ⇒ [“3.5 Removing and installing centre console insert”, page 51](#)
- ⇒ [“3.6 Removing and installing storage compartment in centre console \(front\)”, page 52](#)
- ⇒ [“3.7 Removing and installing centre console trim”, page 52](#)
- ⇒ [“3.8 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim \(front\)”, page 53](#)
- ⇒ [“3.9 Removing and installing centre console”, page 53](#)
- ⇒ [“3.10 Removing and installing cup holders”, page 56](#)
- ⇒ [“3.11 Removing and installing vent \(rear\) in centre console”, page 57](#)
- ⇒ [“3.12 Removing and installing trim”, page 57](#)

3.1 Exploded view - centre console

- ◆ Centre console ⇒ [page 43](#)
- ◆ Centre console insert ⇒ [page 45](#)
- ◆ Centre console trim panels ⇒ [page 46](#)

Centre console



1 - Side trim

- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 52](#)

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 3 Nm

3 - Cap

- ☐ 2x

4 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

5 - Centre console

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 53](#)

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 2.5 Nm

7 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 10 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ☐ 2.5 Nm

10 - Centre console insert

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 51](#)
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ☐ Press in as far as stop

11 - Trim (top rear)

- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ With vent
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 47](#)

12 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

13 - Bolt

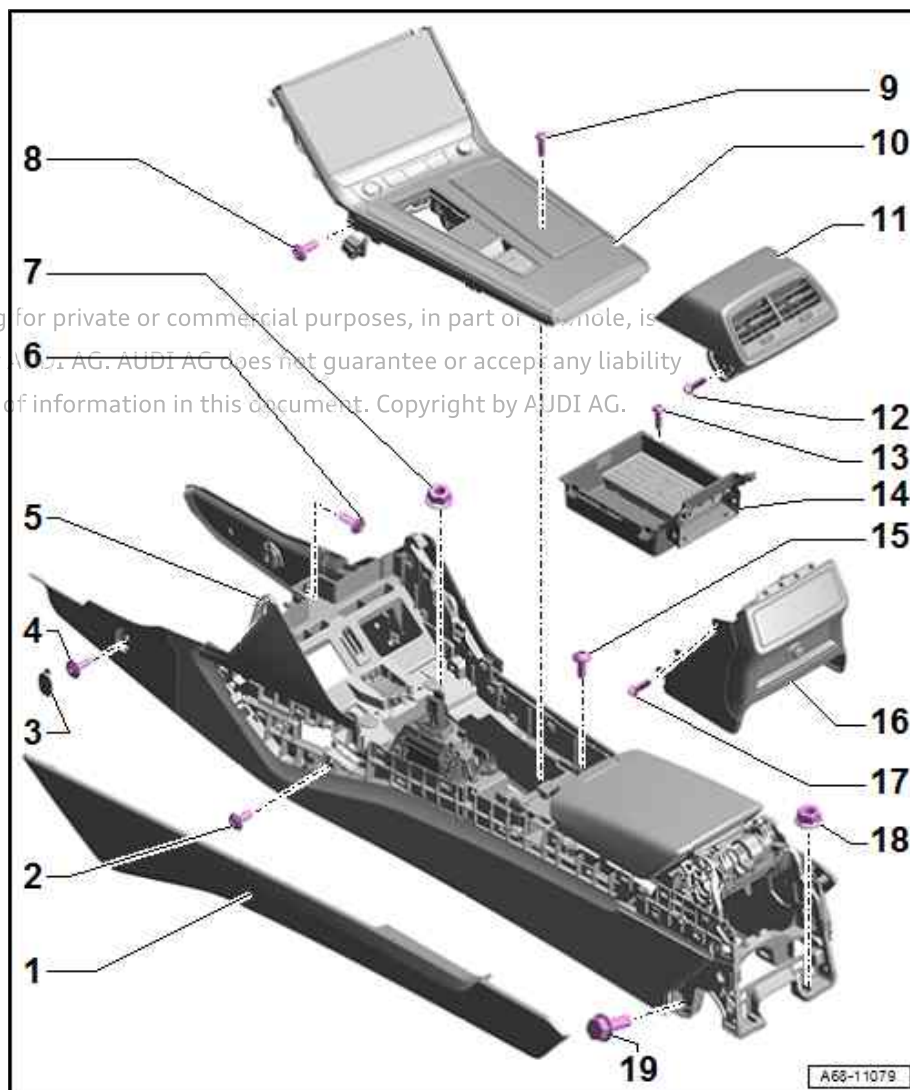
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

14 - Storage compartment

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 52](#)

15 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm





16 - Trim (rear)

- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 48](#)

17 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

18 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 10 Nm

19 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 10 Nm

Centre console insert

1 - Bolt

- ☐ 6x or 8x (depending on version)
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 9x
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

3 - Trim cover (side)

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 50](#)

4 - Cover

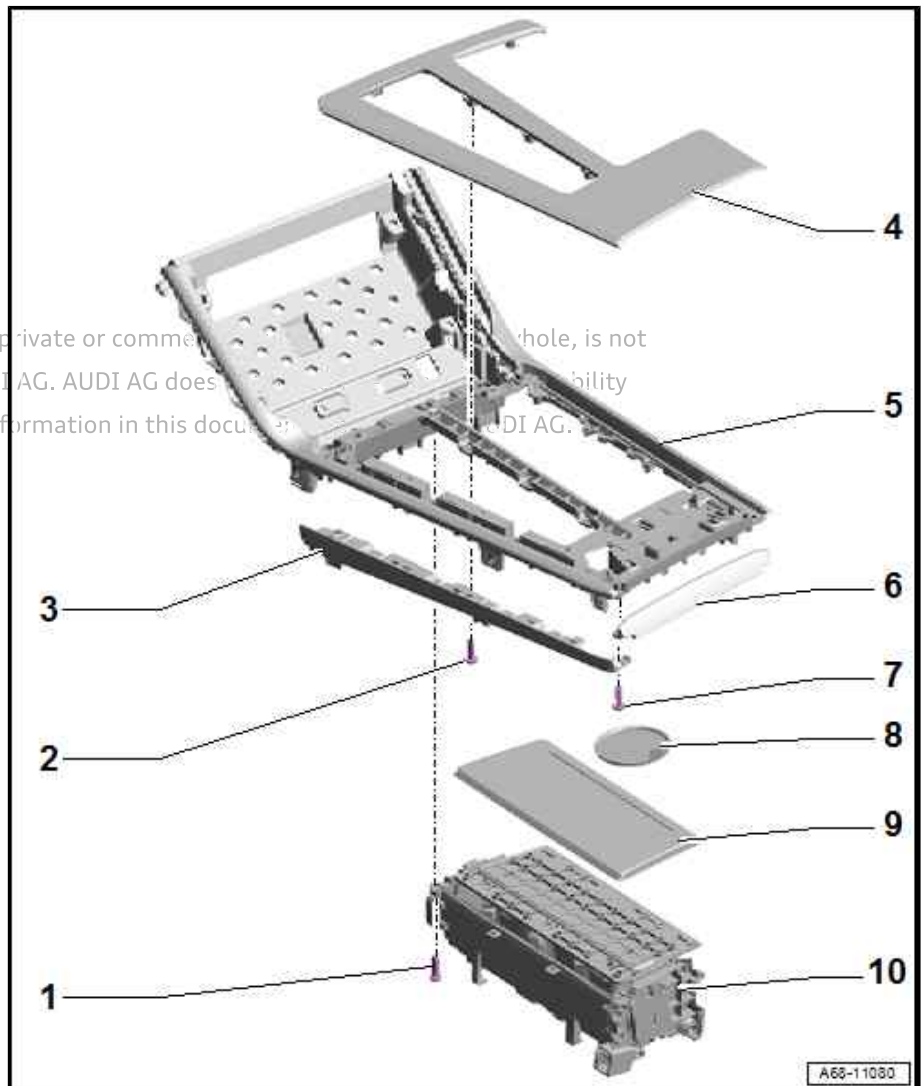
- ☐ For centre console insert
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 49](#)
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ☐ Press in as far as stop

5 - Centre console insert

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 51](#)
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ☐ Press in as far as stop

6 - Trim cover (rear)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 50](#)





7 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

8 - Insert for cup holder

- ☐ 2x

9 - Trim for cup holder

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 56](#)
- ☐ Engage in cup holder and press on until it engages audibly

10 - Cup holder

- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 56](#)

Centre console trim panels

1 - Centre console

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 53](#)

2 - Bracket

- ☐ For trim (front)
- ☐ 2x

3 - Centre console trim in footwell (front)

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 53](#)
- ☐ Engage in centre console

4 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Tightening torque
⇒ [Item 4 \(page 44\)](#)

5 - Cap

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Press into trim (front)

6 - Side trim

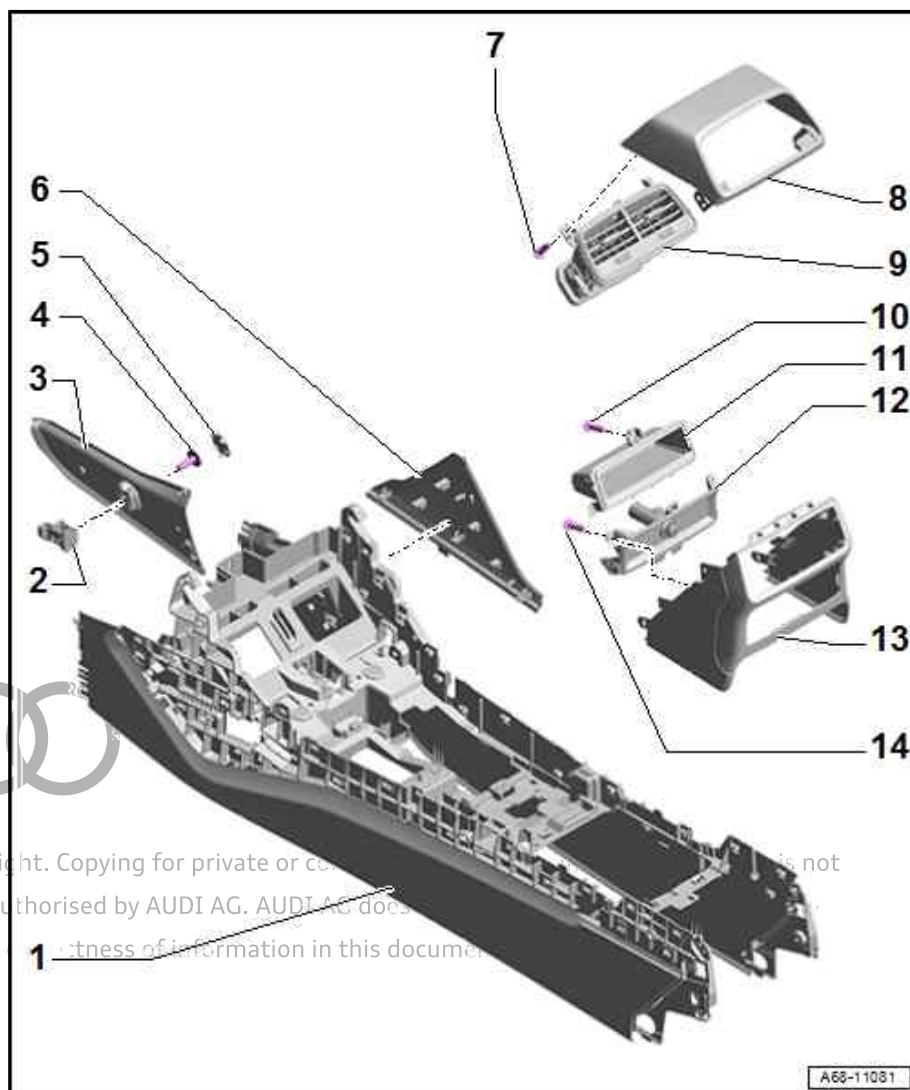
- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 49](#)

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

8 - Trim (top rear)

- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 47](#)





9 - Vent (rear)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 57](#)

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
 - ☐ 1.8 Nm
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

11 - Storage compartment (rear)

- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 52](#)

12 - Trim

- ☐ For button(s)/socket
- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 57](#)

13 - Trim (rear)

- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 48](#)

14 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

⇒ ["3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim \(top rear\)", page 47](#)

⇒ ["3.2.2 Removing and installing centre console trim \(rear\)", page 48](#)

3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console trim (top rear)

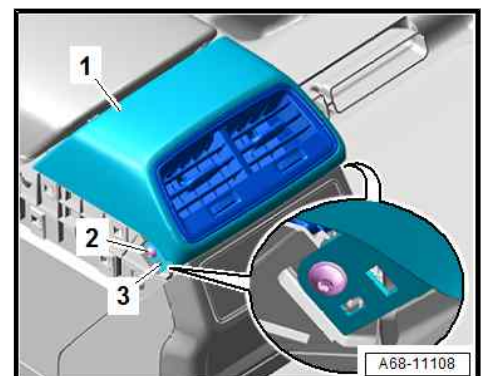
Removing

- Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
- Remove centre console side trim ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- Move front seats to centre position and move backrests to up-right position.
- Unscrew bolt -2- (left and right).
- Disengage trim -1- at lug -3- (both sides).
- Pull trim with vent towards rear off centre console.
- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43](#)





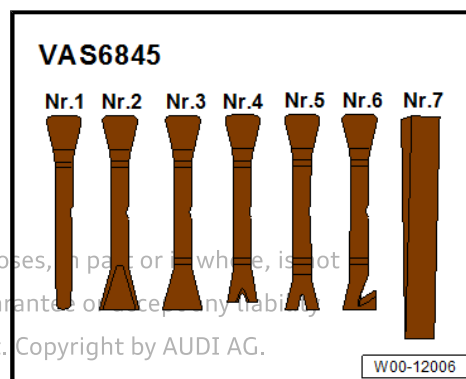
3.2.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

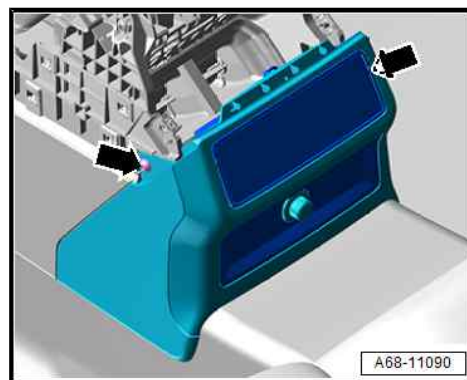


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy, any liability, with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

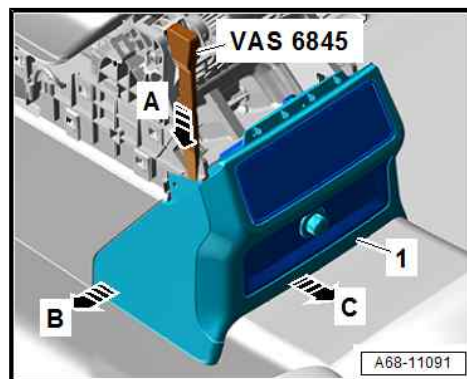


Removing

- Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
- Remove centre console side trim ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- Move front seats to centre position and move backrests to up-right position.
- Remove trim (top rear) ⇒ [page 47](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.



- Release fastener (top) by inserting scraper from -VAS 6845- between trim and centre console at position shown -arrow A-, and leave it inserted.
- Release fastener (bottom) by taking hold of trim with your hand and pulling it outwards slightly -arrow B- until fastener disengages audibly.
- At the same time pull trim -1- towards rear out of fasteners -arrow C-.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Pull trim with operating unit and socket off centre console towards rear.
- Press release catches and unplug electrical connectors.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

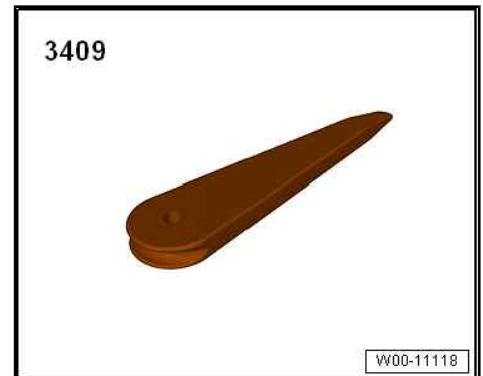
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43](#)



3.3 Removing and installing centre console trim (side)

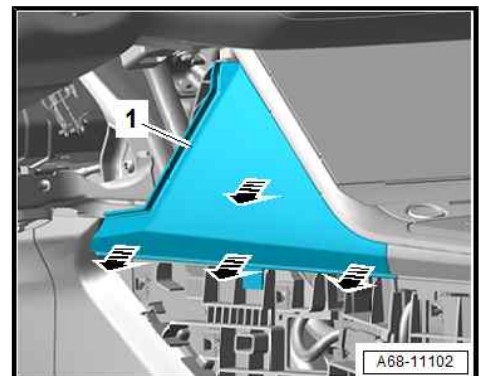
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Driver side: Remove dash panel cover (driver side) [⇒ page 19](#) .
- Passenger side: Remove glove box [⇒ page 25](#) .
- Remove centre console side trim [⇒ page 52](#) .
- Starting at front, unclip centre console trim -1- from centre console -arrows- by hand and using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Release all other retaining catches for centre console trim.
- Disengage and detach centre console trim from centre console insert.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

3.4 Removing and installing centre console cover

[⇒ "3.4.1 Removing and installing cover for centre console insert", page 49](#)

[⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing trim cover for centre console insert", page 50](#)

3.4.1 Removing and installing cover for centre console insert

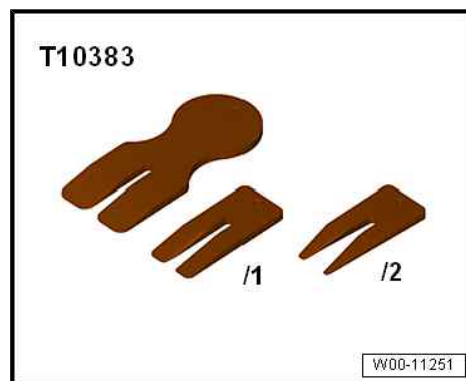
Special tools and workshop equipment required



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



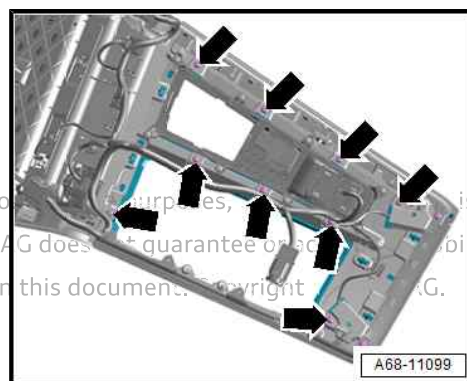
◆ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

- Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- Remove cup holder ⇒ [page 56](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

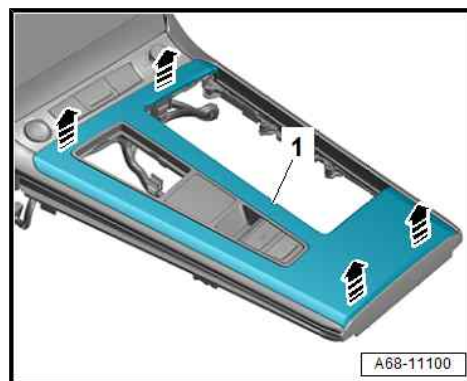


- Starting at rear, unclip cover -1- for centre console insert upwards -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .
- Release all other retaining catches for cover for centre console insert.
- Detach cover for centre console insert.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 43](#)



3.4.2 Removing and installing trim cover for centre console insert

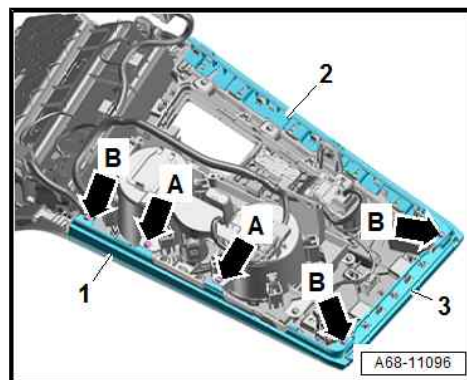
Removing

- Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- Depending on version: Remove bolts -arrows A-.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows B-.
- Disengage/release trim cover -1, 2, 3- at centre console insert and detach it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 43](#)

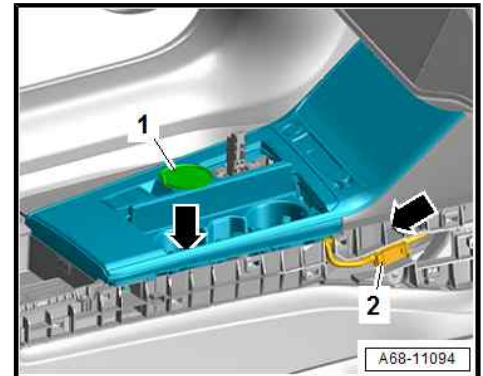




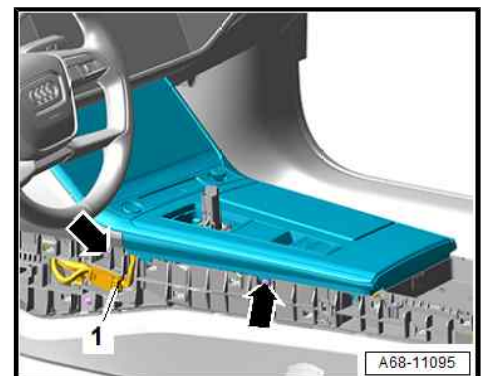
3.5 Removing and installing centre console insert

Removing

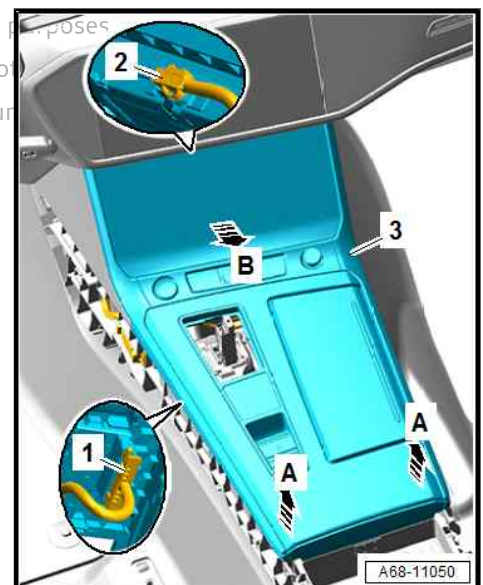
- Remove selector lever handle ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever handle , or ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 37 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever handle .
- Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
- Remove centre console trim panels (sides) ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- Remove cup holder lining (rear) -1-.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector -2-.



- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector -1-.



- Starting at rear, unclip centre console insert -3- upwards -arrows A- by hand and pull it towards rear -arrow B-.
- Lift centre console insert, press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -1- for selector lever position display -Y5- .
- Carefully pull centre console insert towards rear beneath dash panel, press release mechanism and disconnect aerial -2-.
- Detach centre console insert.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43](#)



3.6 Removing and installing storage compartment in centre console (front)

⇒ [“3.6.1 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment \(front\)”, page 52](#)

⇒ [“3.6.2 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment \(rear\)”, page 52](#)

3.6.1 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (front)

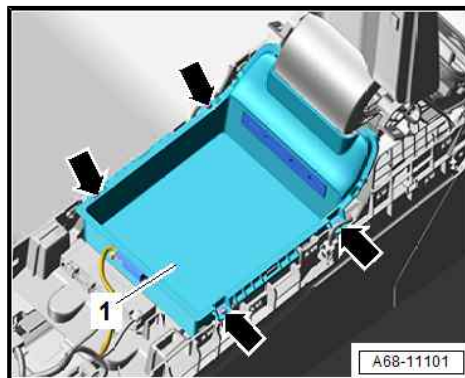
Removing

- Remove centre console trim panels (sides) ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- Remove centre console trim (top rear) ⇒ [page 47](#) .
- Remove storage compartment illumination bulb - L120- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in centre console .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Take storage compartment -1- out of centre console.
- Press release catches and unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 43](#)



3.6.2 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)

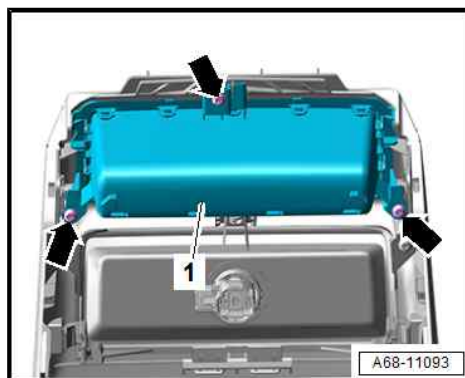
Removing

- Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ [page 48](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Remove storage compartment -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 43](#)



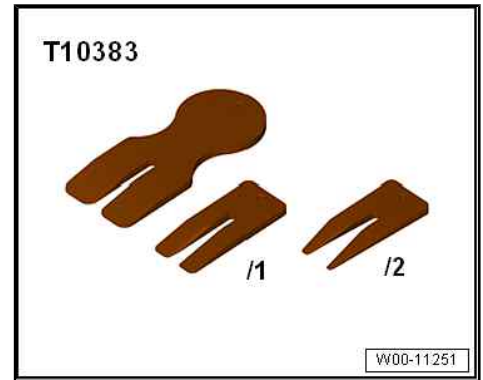
3.7 Removing and installing centre console trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Wedges - T10383-

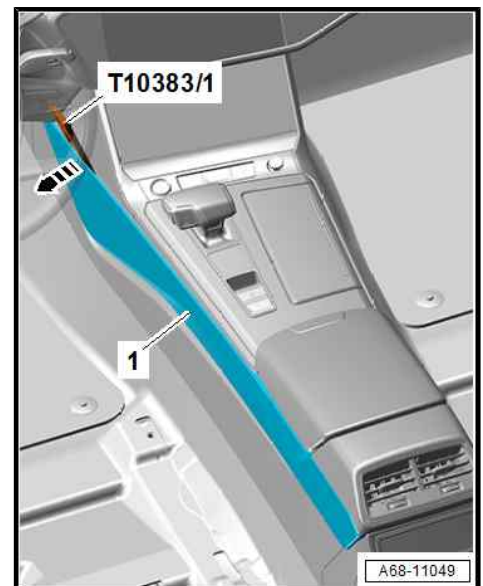


Removing

- Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
- Starting at front, unclip centre console trim -1- from centre console -arrow- by hand or using wedge - T10383/1- .
- Release and detach all other retaining catches for centre console trim and remove trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



3.8 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)

Removing

- Move front seat as far back as it will go.
- Unclip cap -1- using a small flat-bladed screwdriver.

Unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.

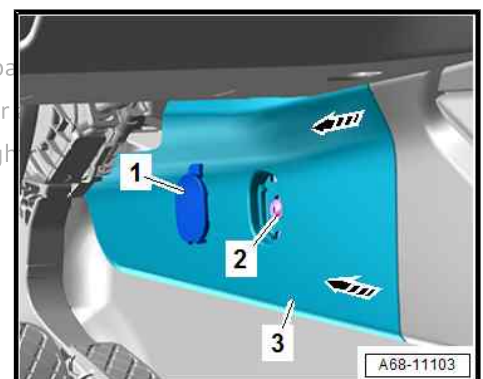
- Pull trim -3- forwards out of fasteners and off centre console -arrows-.

- Take trim out downwards.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43



3.9 Removing and installing centre console

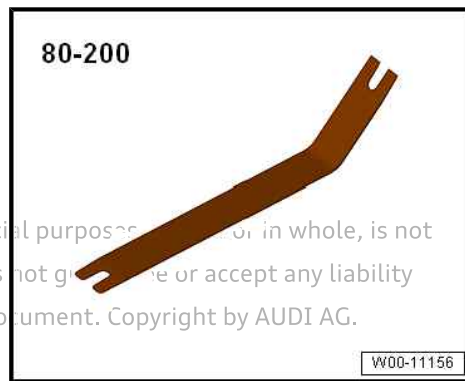
Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal lever - 80-200-

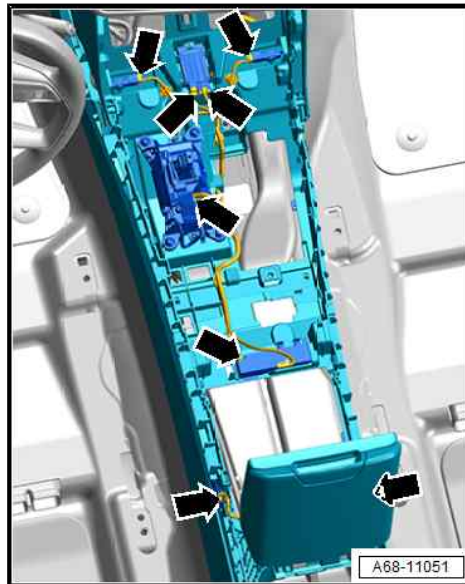


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not give any warranty or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove centre console footwell trim (front) ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- Remove selector lever handle ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever handle , or ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 37 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever handle .
- Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
- Remove centre console trim panels (sides) ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- Move front seats to centre position and move backrests to up-right position.
- Remove centre console trim panels (rear) ⇒ [page 47](#) .
- Remove storage compartment in centre console ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- Unplug electrical connectors -arrows- and move wiring clear.
- Unclip electrical wiring harness using removal lever - 80-200- and move wiring harness clear.

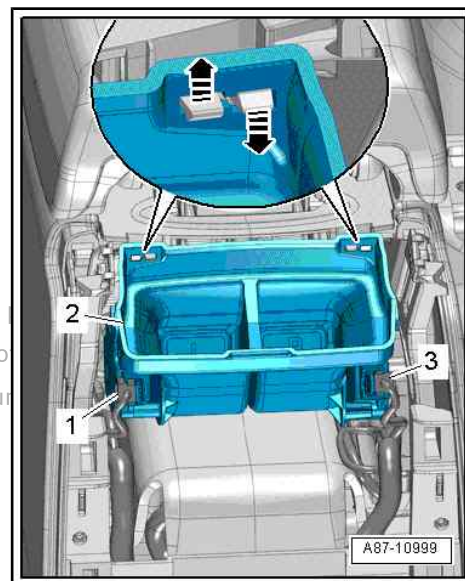




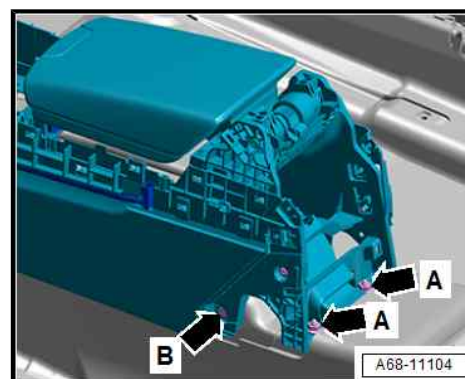
- Release retaining catches -arrows-.
- Pull air duct -2- off air duct (rear).
- If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -1, 3-.



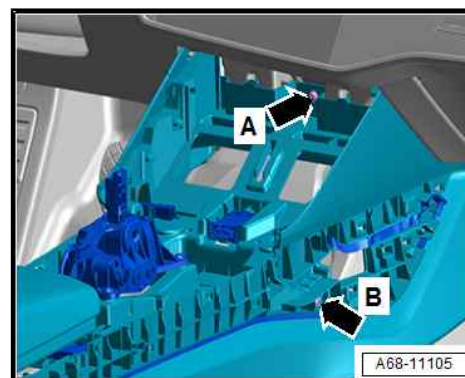
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Unscrew nuts -arrows A-.
- Unscrew bolt -arrow B- (left and right).



- Unscrew bolt -arrow A-.
- Unscrew bolt -arrow B- (left and right).



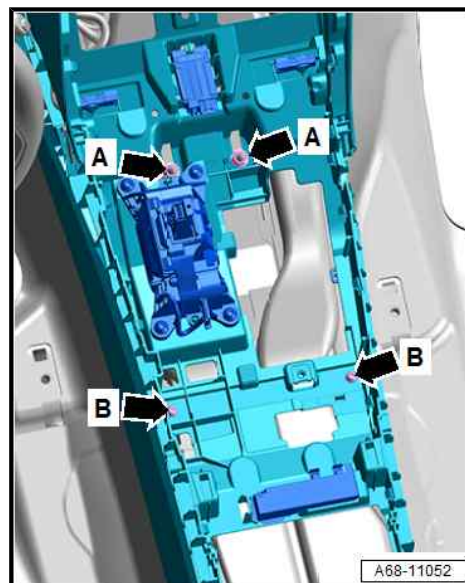


- Unscrew nuts -arrows A-.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows B-.
- Move electrical wiring clear.
- Lift centre console with centre armrest at rear, pull towards rear and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43](#)



3.10 Removing and installing cup holders

⇒ ["3.10.1 Removing and installing cup holder in centre console", page 56](#)

⇒ ["3.10.2 Removing and installing trim for cup holder", page 56](#)

3.10.1 Removing and installing cup holder in centre console

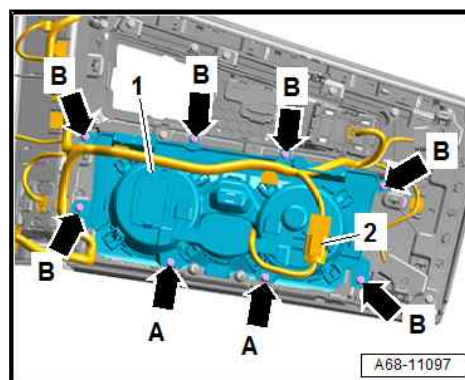
Removing

- Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Unclip electrical wiring harness and move it clear.
- If fitted, unscrew bolts -arrows A-.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows B-.
- Remove cup holder -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43](#)



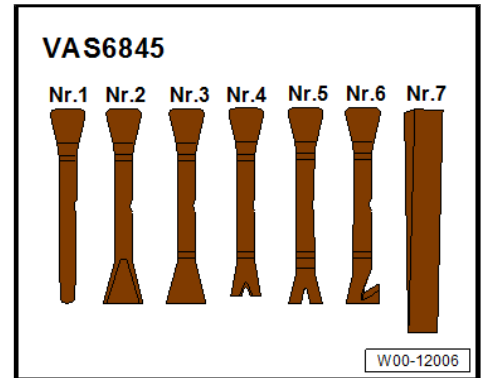
3.10.2 Removing and installing trim for cup holder holder

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Clip release lever no. 4 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

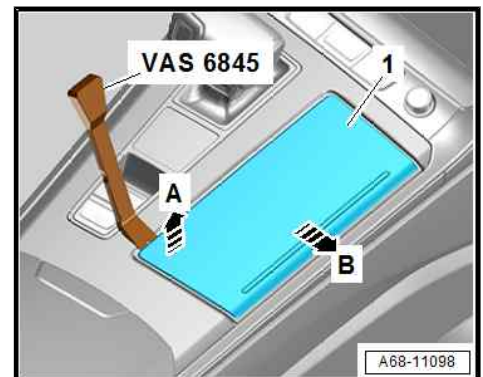


Removing

- Insert clip release lever from -VAS 6845- between trim and cover for cup holder and unclip trim -1- -arrow A-.
- Release all other retaining catches.
- Lift trim, disengage it from cover for cup holder -arrow B- and detach it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



3.11 Removing and installing vent (rear) in centre console

Removing

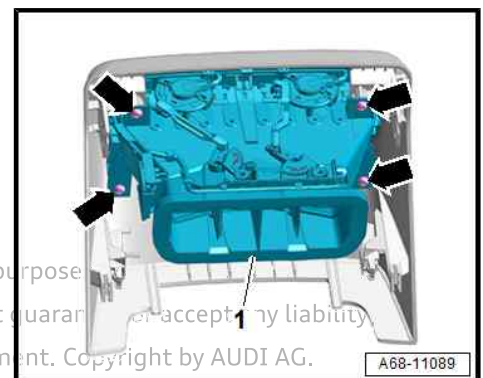
- Remove centre console trim (top rear) ⇒ [page 47](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach vent -1- from trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



3.12 Removing and installing trim

Removing

- Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ [page 48](#) .

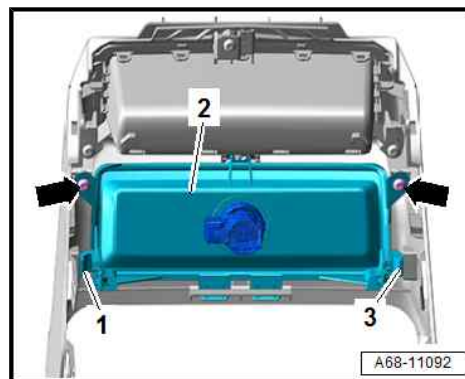


- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Release fasteners -1, 3- and disengage and detach trim for button(s)/socket -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 43](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



4 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ [“4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)”, page 59](#)

⇒ [“4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest \(front\)”, page 59](#)

⇒ [“4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest \(top section\)”, page 60](#)

4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)

1 - Cover (bottom)

- ☐ For centre armrest

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 2 Nm

3 - Centre armrest (top section)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 60](#)

4 - Centre armrest (front)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 59](#)

5 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Tightening torque
⇒ [Item 18 \(page 45\)](#)

6 - Bolt

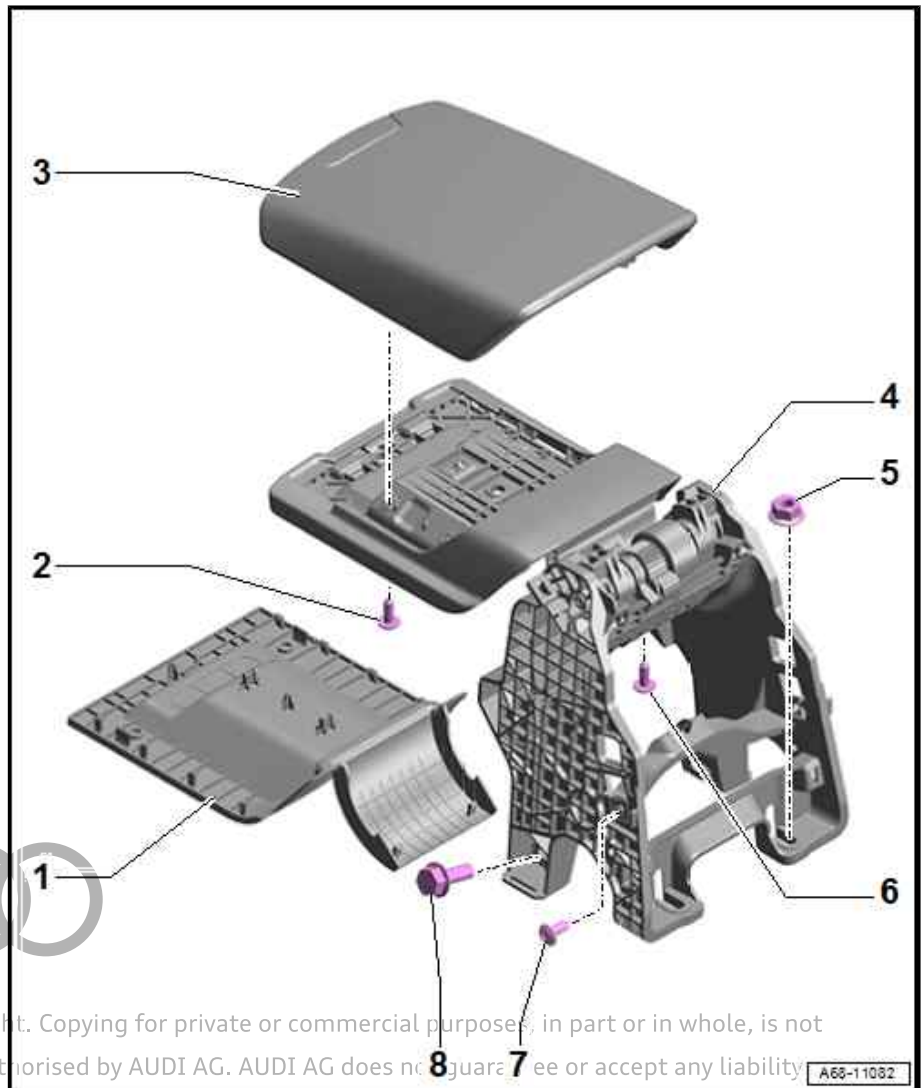
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 3 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 3 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Tightening torque
⇒ [Item 19 \(page 45\)](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

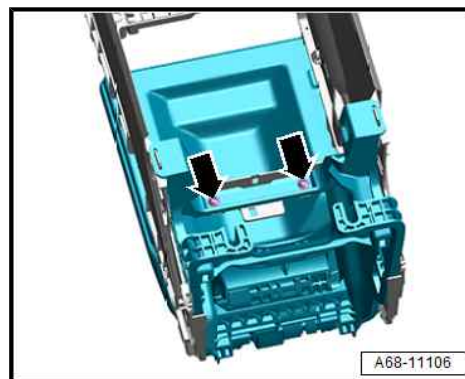
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

Removing

- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 53](#) and set it down on a soft surface.



- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for centre armrest.

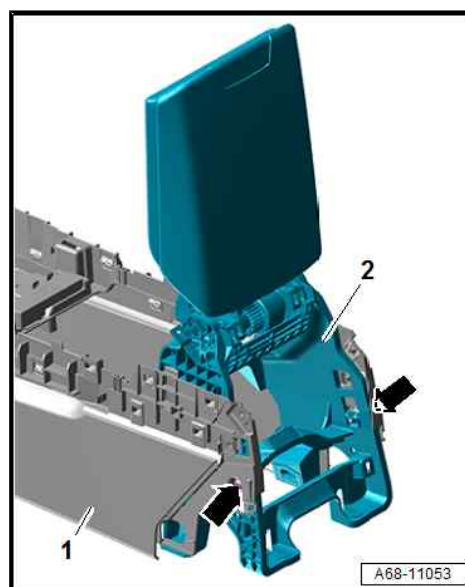


- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Open centre armrest.
- Pull centre console -1- slightly outwards and disengage from centre armrest.
- Take centre armrest -2- off centre console towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

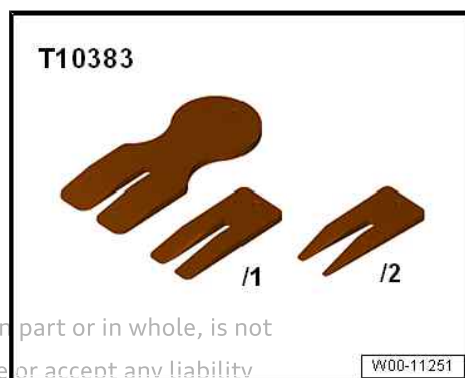
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)", page 59](#)



4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-

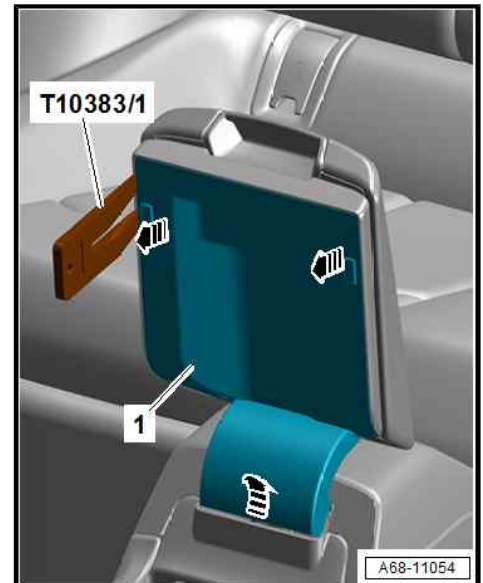


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Open centre armrest.
- Insert wedge - T10383/1- between cover and centre armrest.
- Unclip cover -1- from centre armrest using wedge - T10383/1- -top arrows-.
- Swivel cover forwards and pull it out of centre console at bottom -bottom arrow-.

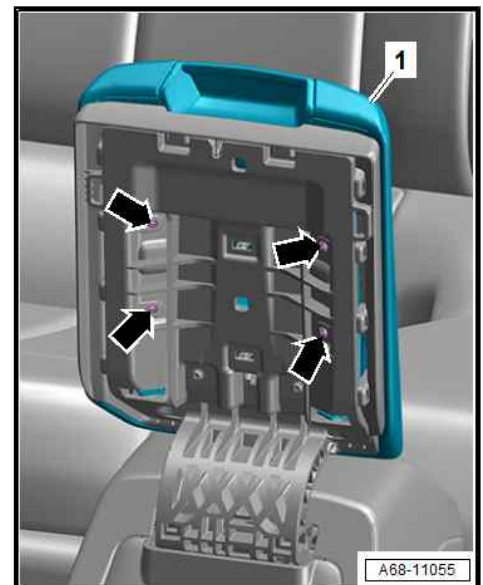


- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Disengage and detach centre armrest (top section) -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)", page 59](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



5 Interior mirror

⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror", page 62](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror", page 63](#)

⇒ ["5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off", page 65](#)

⇒ ["5.4 Switching compass display on and off", page 65](#)

⇒ ["5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone", page 65](#)

⇒ ["5.6 Calibrating digital compass", page 66](#)

⇒ ["5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles", page 66](#)

⇒ ["5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map", page 67](#)

⇒ ["5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 72](#)

5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror

1 - Cover (front)

- ☐ For mirror base
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Retaining clip

- ☐ For interior mirror
- ☐ Renew after removing interior mirror

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

4 - Cover (rear)

- ☐ For mirror base
- ☐ For interior mirror without optional equipment
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Retaining plate

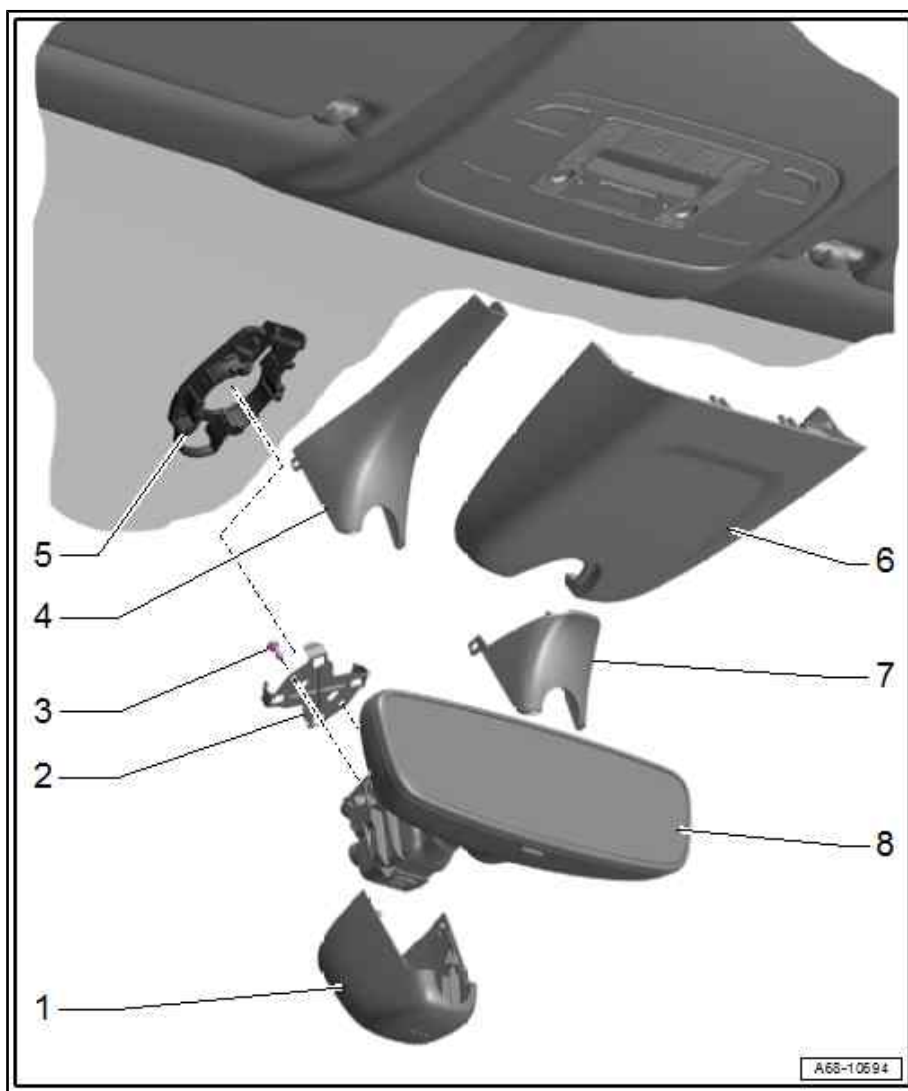
- ☐ For interior mirror
- ☐ Bonded to windscreen

6 - Cover

- ☐ For sensors control unit
- ☐ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Cover (rear)

- ☐ For mirror base
- ☐ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly





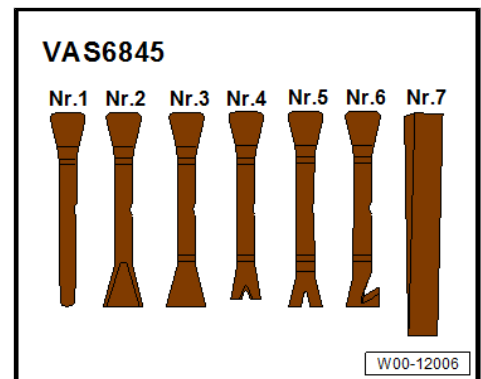
8 - Interior mirror

- ☐ Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror: Interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains liquid electrolyte. Pay attention to leaking electrolyte if mirror glass is broken
- ☐ Depending on equipment version: with integrated main beam assist control unit - J844-
- ☐ Main beam assist control unit - J844- cannot be renewed individually. Renew interior mirror if defective
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 63](#)
- ☐ Renew retaining clip after removing

5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

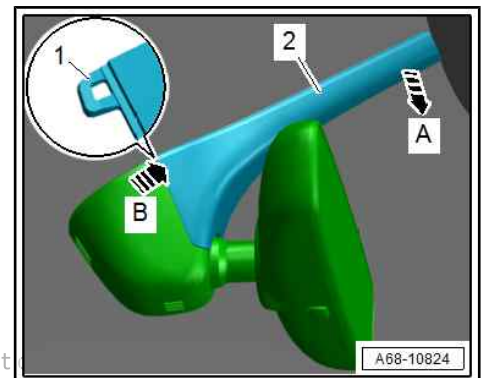
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Clip release lever no. 5 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



Removing

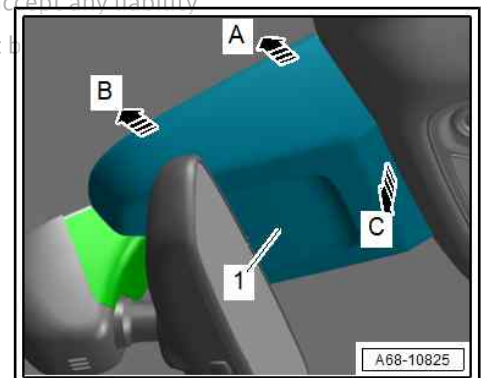
- Note safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇒ [page 13](#)
- Swivel interior mirror down as far as possible (approx. 25°).
- Pull cover -2- downwards at rear -arrow A-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- by pressing firmly on cover -arrow B-.
- Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited without the written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

Interior mirror with optional equipment:

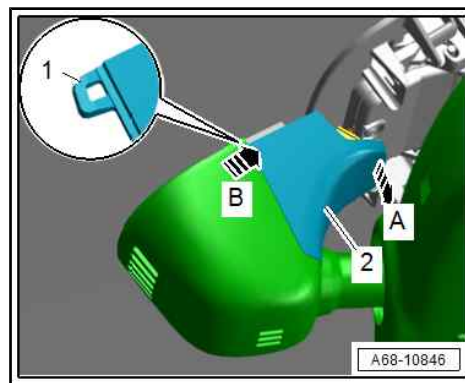
- Unclip cover -1- -arrows A, B, C- using clip release lever from -VAS 6845- ; to do so, carefully insert clip release lever between windscreen and cover.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Disengage cover at front and pull out towards rear.





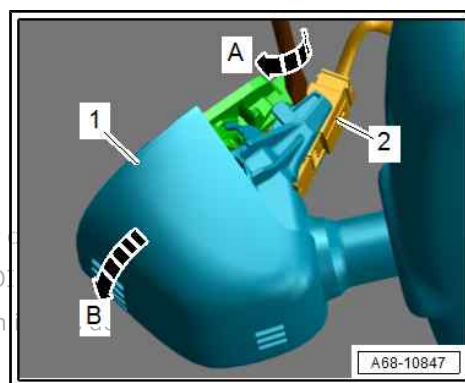
Cover (rear), interior mirror with optional equipment:

- Pull cover -2- downwards at rear -arrow A-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- by pressing firmly on cover -arrow B-.
- Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.

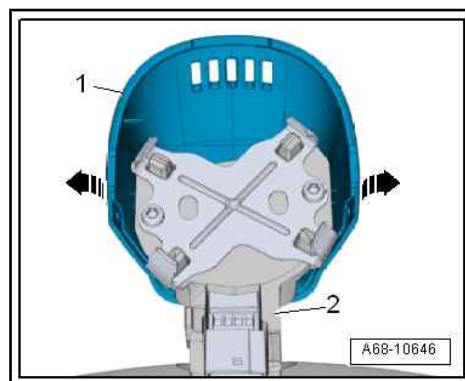


All mirror versions (continued):

- Insert flat-bladed screwdriver between retainer and mirror base.
- Carefully rotate flat-bladed screwdriver about its own axis -arrow A- until retaining tab is disengaged from retainer.
- At the same time turn mirror base -1- as far as it will go in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B-.
- Detach interior mirror from retainer and unplug electrical connector -2-.



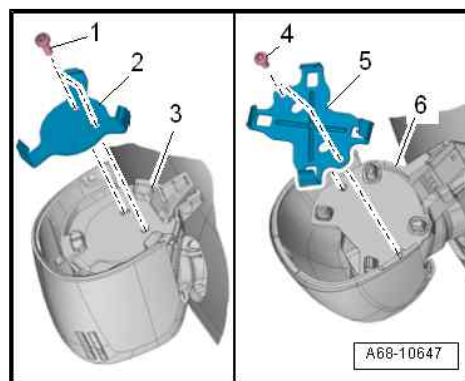
- Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- at front downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Renew retaining clip -2- or -5- after removing interior mirror; for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Fit interior mirror at 20° angle to installation position.
- Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.
- If renewing the interior mirror and the integrated main beam assist control unit - J844- , select the function "Replace control unit" of the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror", page 62](#)



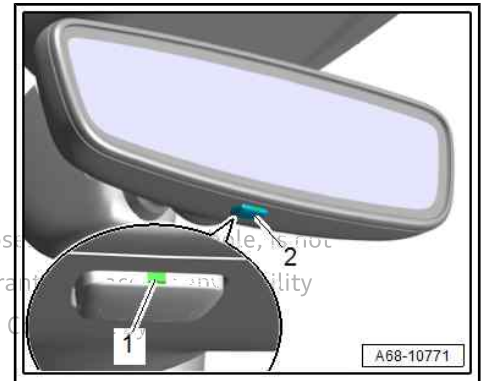
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

- Press button -2- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

Automatic anti-dazzle function "On": Indicator lamp -1- lights up.

Automatic anti-dazzle function "Off": Indicator lamp -1- goes out.

- ◆ The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- ◆ If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- ◆ When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- ◆ The automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear sun blind is retracted.

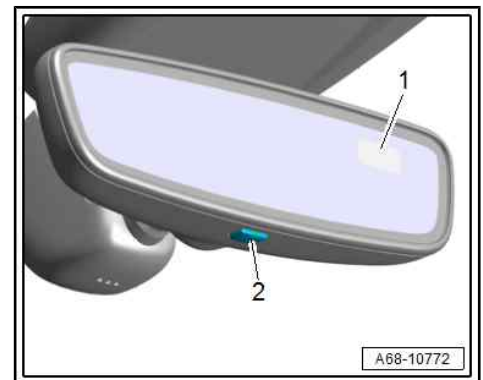


5.4 Switching compass display on and off

- Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched "on" or "off".

Compass display "on" - direction is indicated.

Compass display "off" - direction is not indicated.



5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- You have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

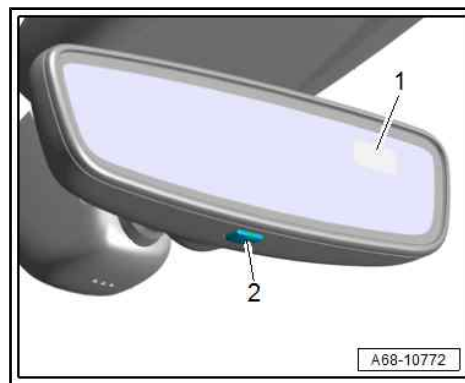


Setting magnetic deflection zone:

- Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.
- Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.
- Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:
 - ♦ Europe ⇒ [page 67](#)
 - ♦ North America ⇒ [page 67](#)
 - ♦ South America ⇒ [page 68](#)
 - ♦ Asia ⇒ [page 69](#)
 - ♦ Africa ⇒ [page 70](#)
 - ♦ Australia ⇒ [page 71](#)

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

- Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ [page 65](#) after setting the magnetic deflection zone.



5.6 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

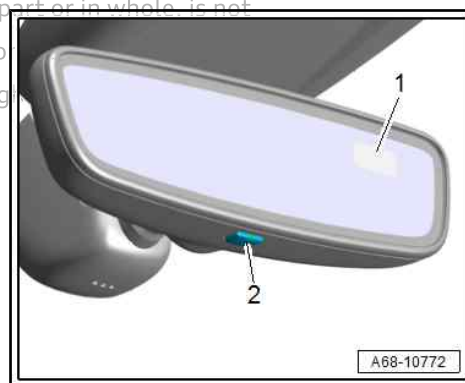
- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.
- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

Calibrating digital compass:

- Switch on ignition.
- Compass display -1- should show “C”.
- If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.
- Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.
- After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ [page 65](#).



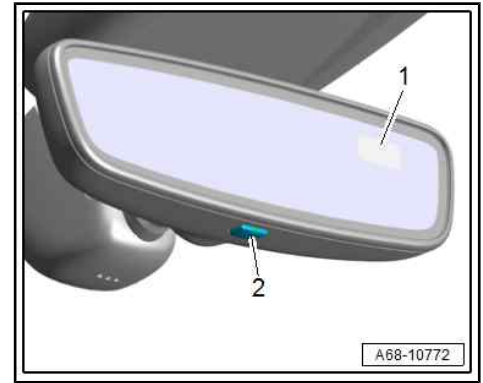
5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.



- Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).
- Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.
- After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated
⇒ [page 66](#) .
- Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on
⇒ [page 65](#) after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.

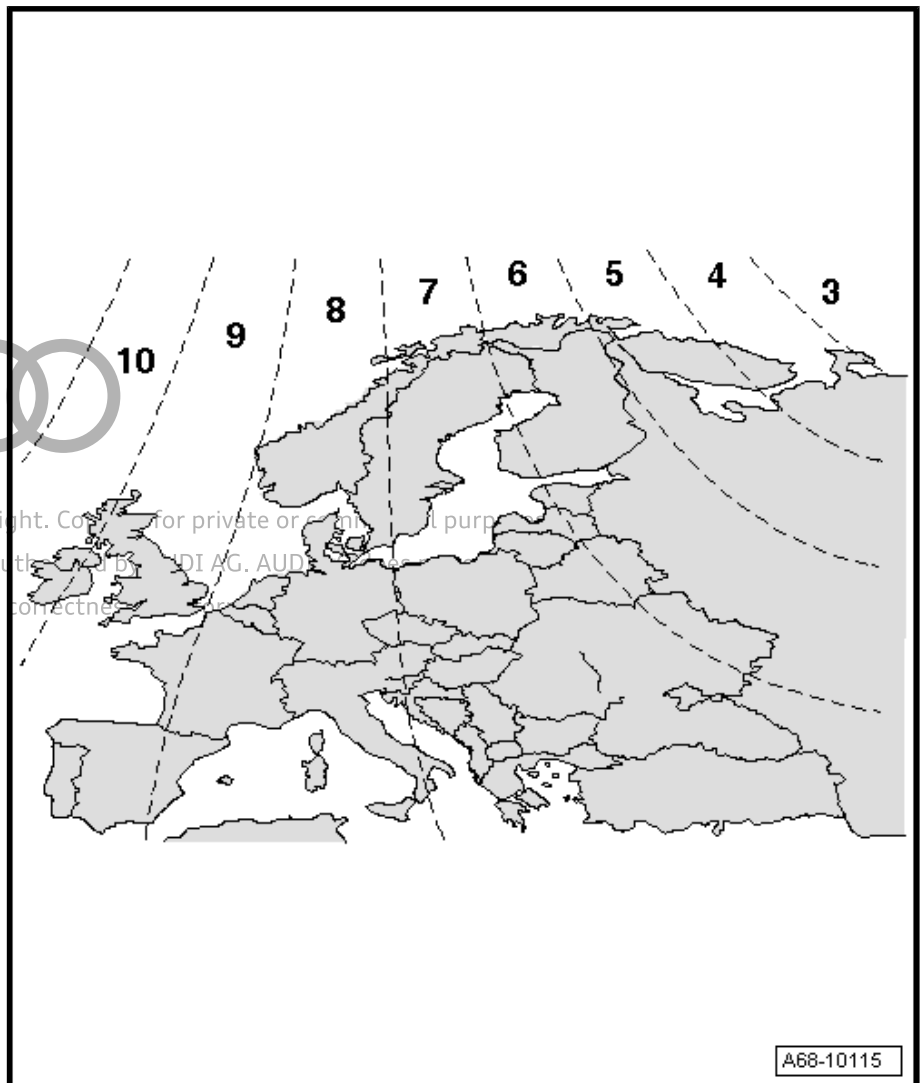


5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

Europe



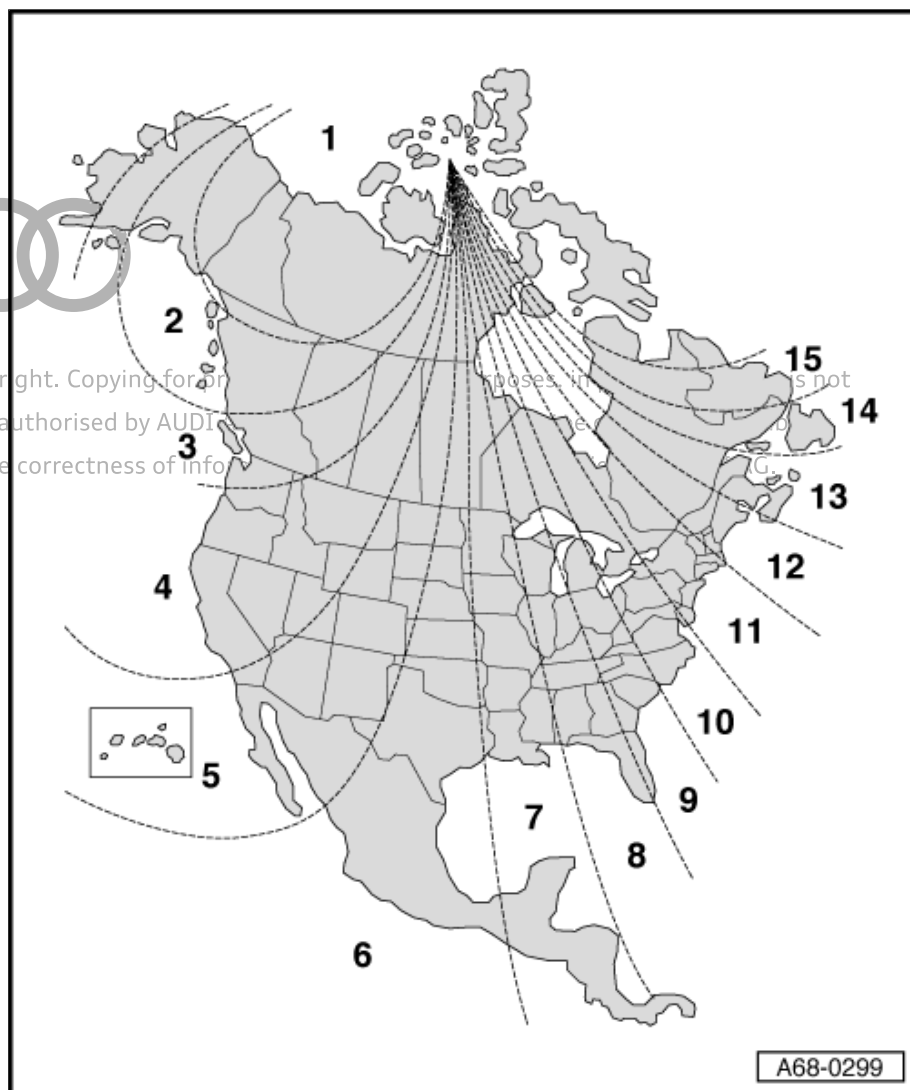
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not responsible for the correctness with respect to the content.



North America



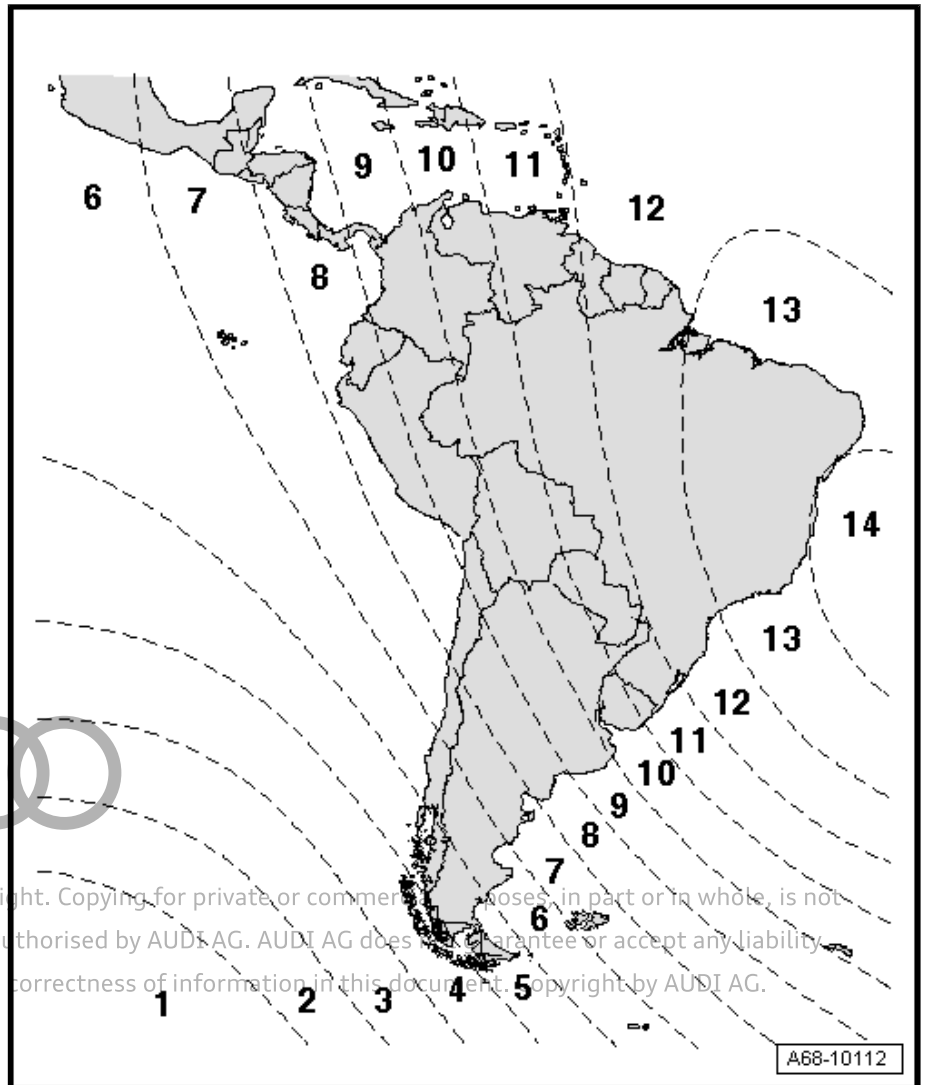
Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. We assume no responsibility with respect to the correctness of information.



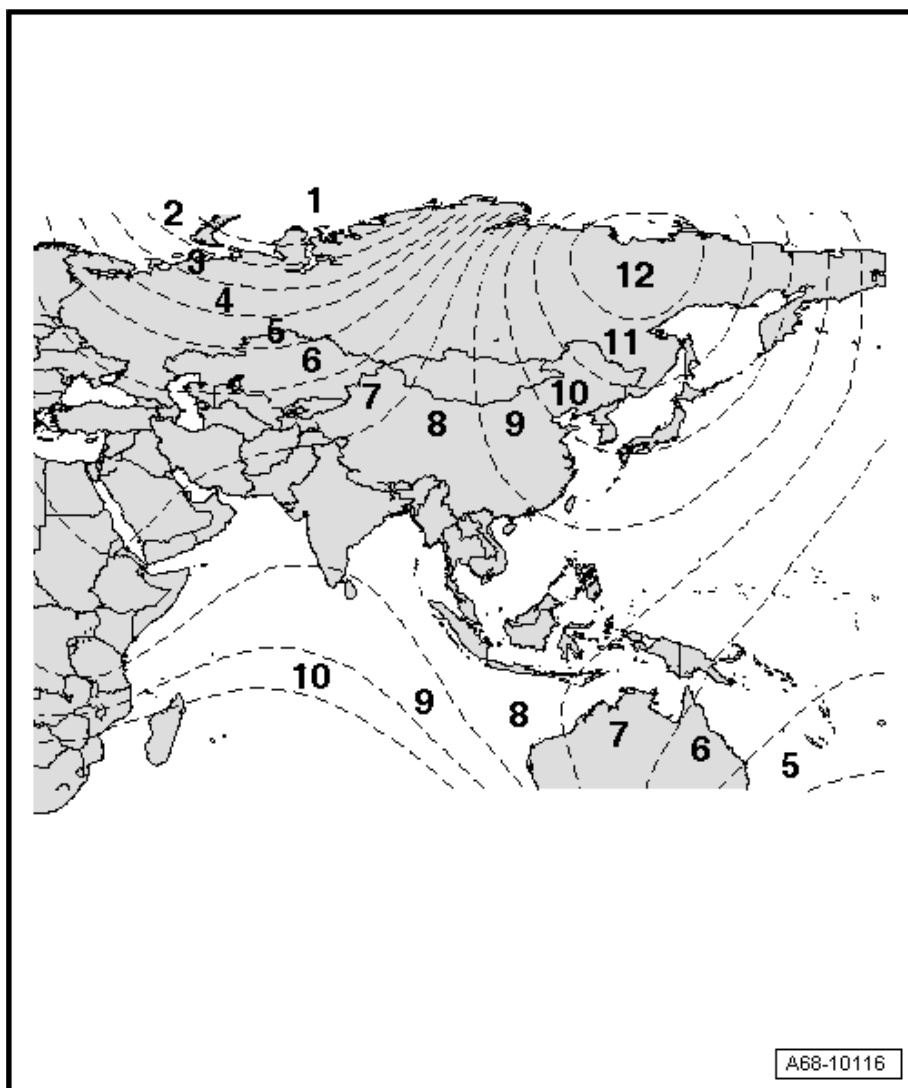
South America



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Asia



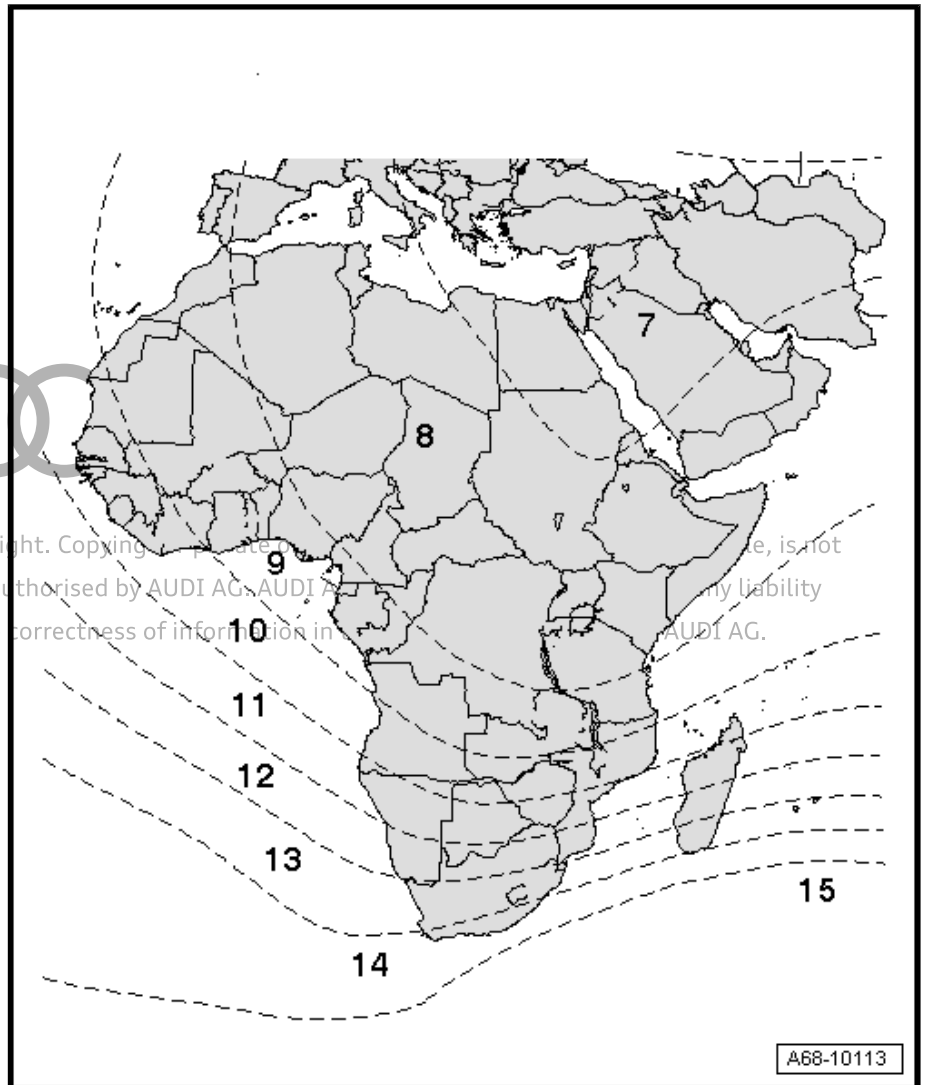
Africa



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

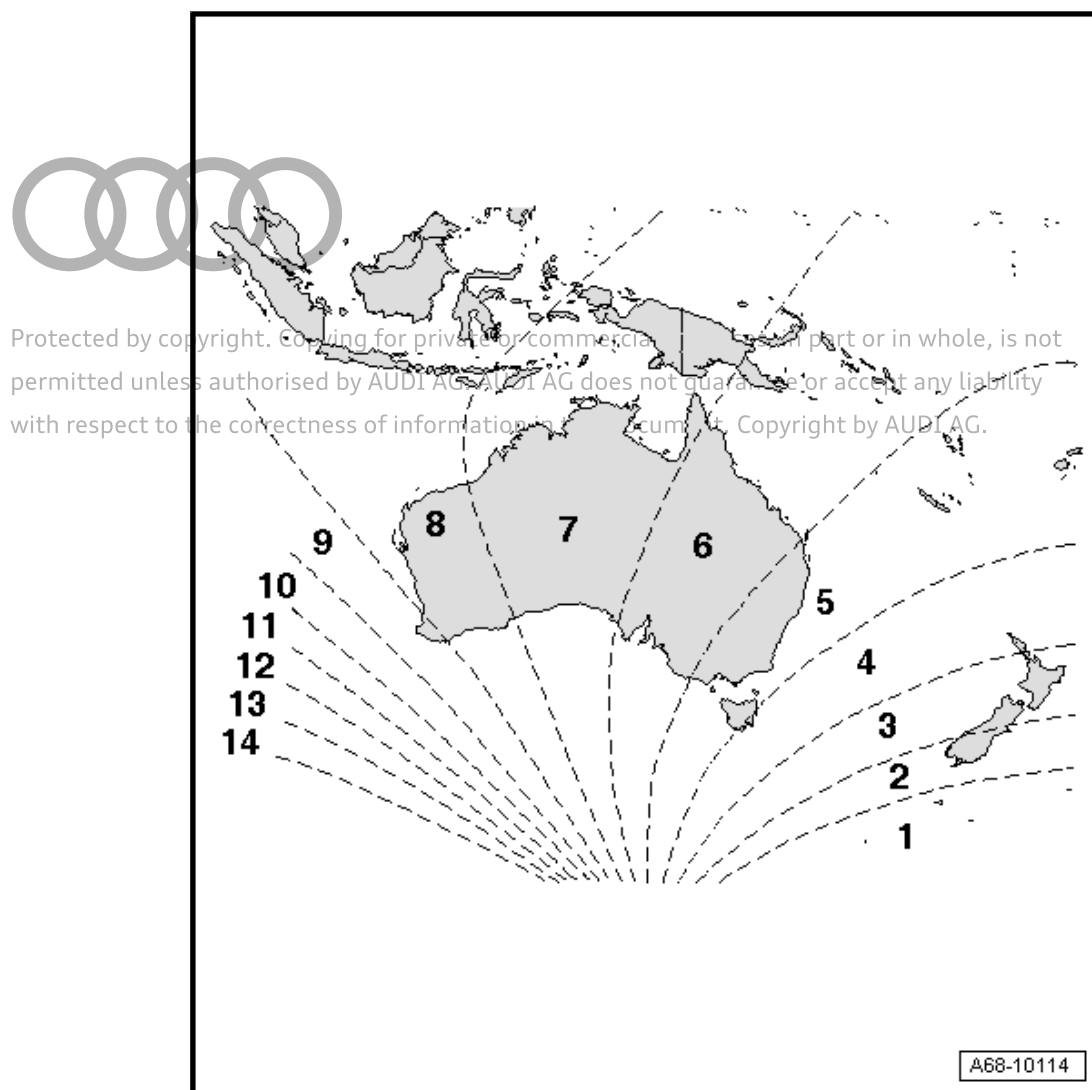


Protected by copyright. Copying or reproduction in any form, without permission, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG assumes no liability for the content of this publication. The copyright holder is AUDI AG.



A68-10113

Australia



5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

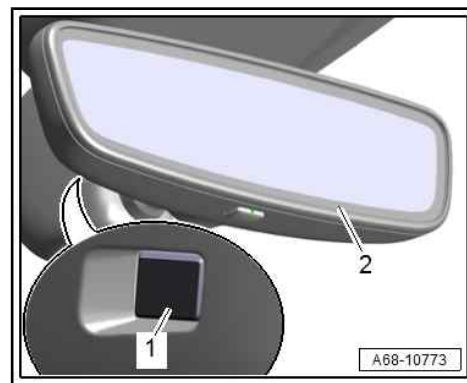
The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.



Test sequence

- Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.
- Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- (in mirror) on mirror side.
- Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ [“1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 74](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt \(front\)”, page 77](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt \(rear\)”, page 80](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt \(rear\)”, page 82](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle \(front\)”, page 83](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle \(rear\)”, page 84](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt \(front\)”, page 85](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt \(rear\)”, page 88](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Removing and installing belt guide \(front\)”, page 94](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Removing and installing belt guide \(rear\)”, page 95](#)

⇒ [“1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting \(front\)”, page 99](#)

⇒ [“1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting \(rear\)”, page 100](#)

⇒ [“1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 101](#)

⇒ [“1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle \(front\)”, page 102](#)

⇒ [“1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle \(rear\)”, page 102](#)

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not allowed under the terms of the AFDH-CC-BY-NC-SA license. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Belt buckle (front)

- ☐ With front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 83](#)

2 - Igniter for front passenger side seat belt tensioner 2 - N298-

- ☐ Only for NAR version
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 79](#)

3 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 77](#)

4 - Front right seat belt - NX11-

- ☐ with
- ◆ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ◆ Front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 77](#)

5 - Belt height adjuster/belt guide fitting (front)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 77](#)

6 - Rear belt end fitting (right-side)

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 80](#)

7 - Rear right seat belt

- ☐ with
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side - N197-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: control unit for rear right belt tensioner - J1098-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 80](#)

8 - Passenger side belt buckle, seat row 2 - FX6-

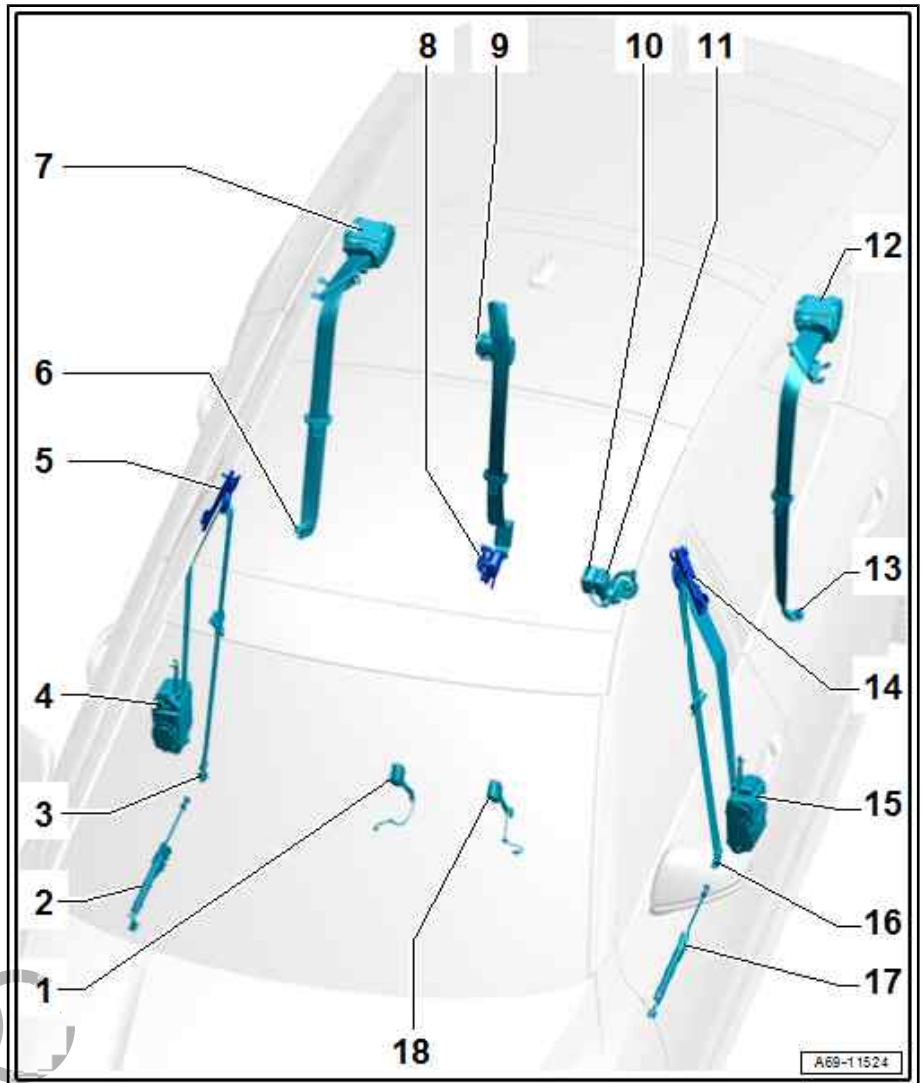
- ☐ with
- ◆ Belt switch for seat row 2, passenger side - F392-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: light for rear belt buckle, passenger side - L370-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 84](#)

9 - Rear centre seat belt

- ☐ Equipment version with 2+1 seats
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 82](#)

10 - Twin belt buckle - FX4- , seat row 2, middle

- ☐ with
- ◆ Belt switch for seat row 2, middle - F391-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: light for rear belt buckle, centre - L371-





- ☐ For equipment version with 2+1 seats
- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 84](#)

11 - Twin belt buckle - FX4- , seat row 2, driver side

- ☐ with
- ◆ Belt switch for seat row 2, driver side - F390-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: light for rear belt buckle, driver side - L369-
- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 84](#)

12 - Rear left seat belt

- ☐ with
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: control unit for rear left belt tensioner - J1097-
- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 80](#)

13 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 80](#)

14 - Belt height adjuster/belt guide fitting (front)

- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 77](#)

15 - Front left seat belt - NX10-

- ☐ with
- ◆ Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ◆ Driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 77](#)

16 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 77](#)

17 - Igniter for driver side seat belt tensioner 2 - N297-

- ☐ Only for NAR version
- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 79](#)

18 - Belt buckle (front)

- ☐ With driver side belt switch - E24-
- ☐ Exploded view [⇒ page 83](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 77

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - belt tensioner (front), NAR vehicles", page 79

1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)

1 - Belt end fitting

- ☐ NAR vehicles: with coupling for belt tensioner
⇒ page 79
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ page 99

2 - Seat belt (front) -NX10- / -NX11-

- ☐ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ☐ with
- ◆ Control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ◆ Control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-
- ◆ Driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ◆ Front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ◆ Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ◆ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ☐ Control unit for front belt tensioner -J854- / -J855- must be adapted after renewing seat belt
⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ page 85

3 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For:

- ◆ Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ◆ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

4 - Electrical connector

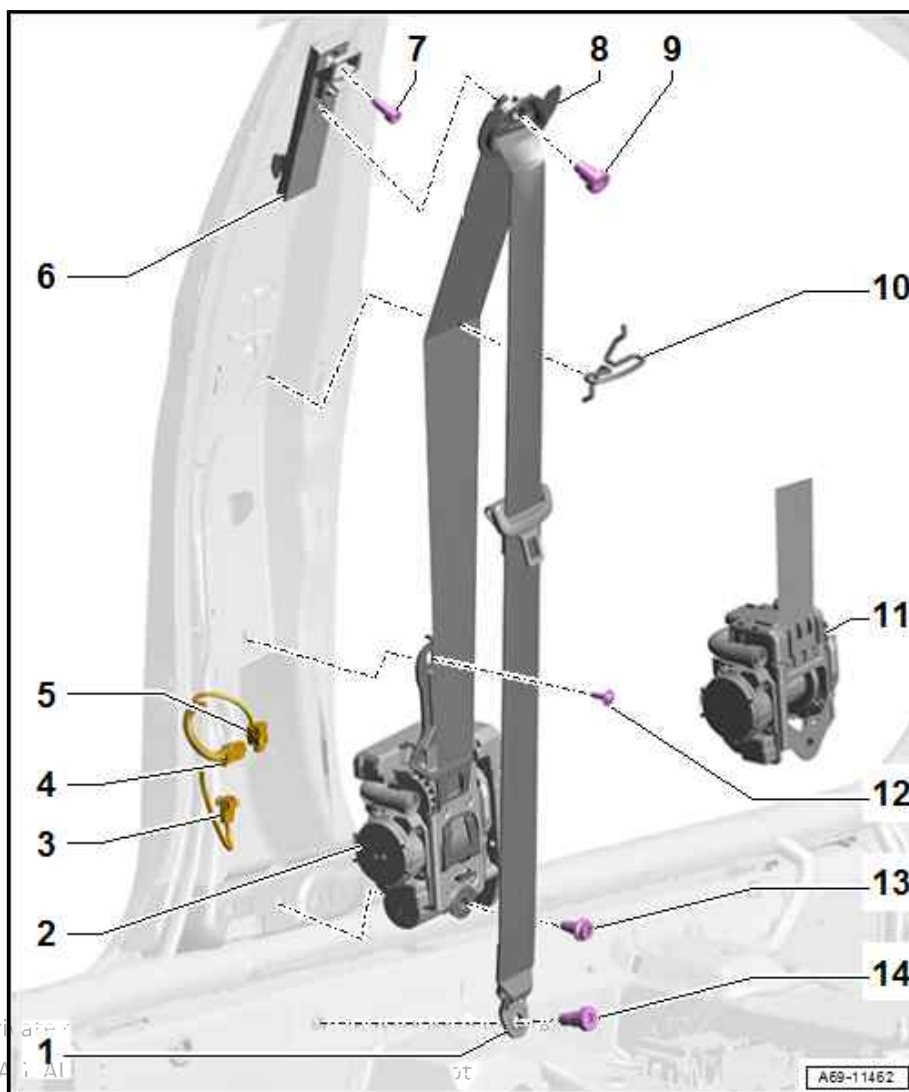
- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For:

- ◆ Control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-
- ◆ Control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-

5 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For:

- ◆ Driver side belt force limiter - G551-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted and authorized by AUDI AG. All rights reserved. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-

6 - Belt height adjuster

- ☐ Renew belt height adjuster if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 101](#)

7 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 27 Nm

8 - Belt guide fitting

9 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

10 - Belt guide

- ☐ Do not trap or damage belt
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 94](#)

11 - Seat belt (front) -NX10- / -NX11-

- ☐ Equipment version without electric belt tensioning
- ☐ with

- ◆ Driver side belt force limiter - G551-

- ◆ Front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-

- ◆ Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-

- ◆ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 85](#)
- Permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Bolt

- ☐ 4 Nm

13 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

14 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm



1.2.2 Exploded view - belt tensioner (front), NAR vehicles

1 - Belt tensioner 2

- ☐ with
- ◆ Igniter for driver side seat belt tensioner 2 - N297-
- ◆ Igniter for front passenger side seat belt tensioner 2 - N298-
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 86](#)

2 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 20 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 20 Nm

4 - Electrical connector

5 - Bracket

- ☐ For belt end fitting/coupling

6 - Belt end fitting with coupling

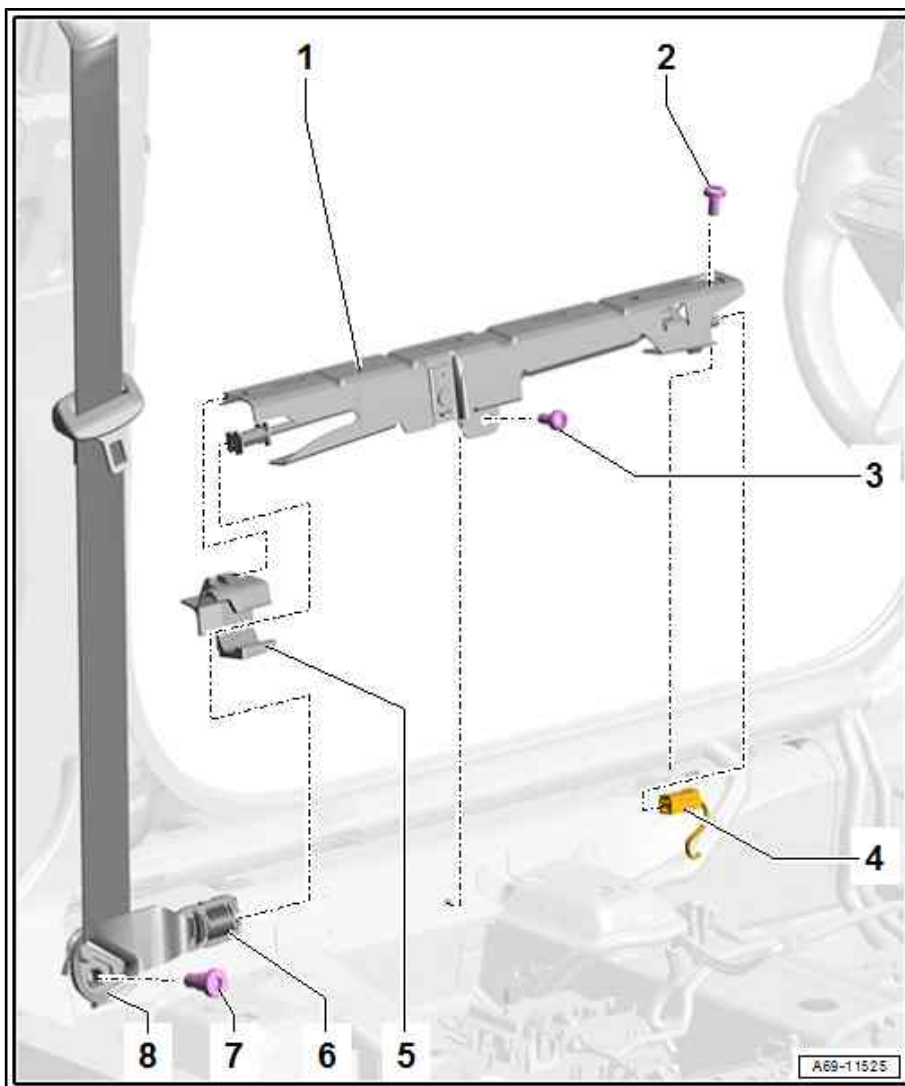
- ☐ For belt tensioner
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 99](#)

7 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

8 - Belt guide fitting (bottom)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 99](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

2 - Electrical connector

- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For:
- ◆ Control unit for rear left belt tensioner - J1097-
- ◆ Control unit for rear right belt tensioner - J1098-

3 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For:
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side - N197-

4 - Rear seat belt

- ☐ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning
- ☐ with
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side - N197-
- ◆ Control unit for rear left belt tensioner - J1097-
- ◆ Control unit for rear right belt tensioner - J1098-
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Control unit for rear belt tensioner -J1097- / -J1098- must be adapted after renewing seat belt ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- ☐ Removing and installing:

- ◆ Saloon ⇒ [page 88](#)

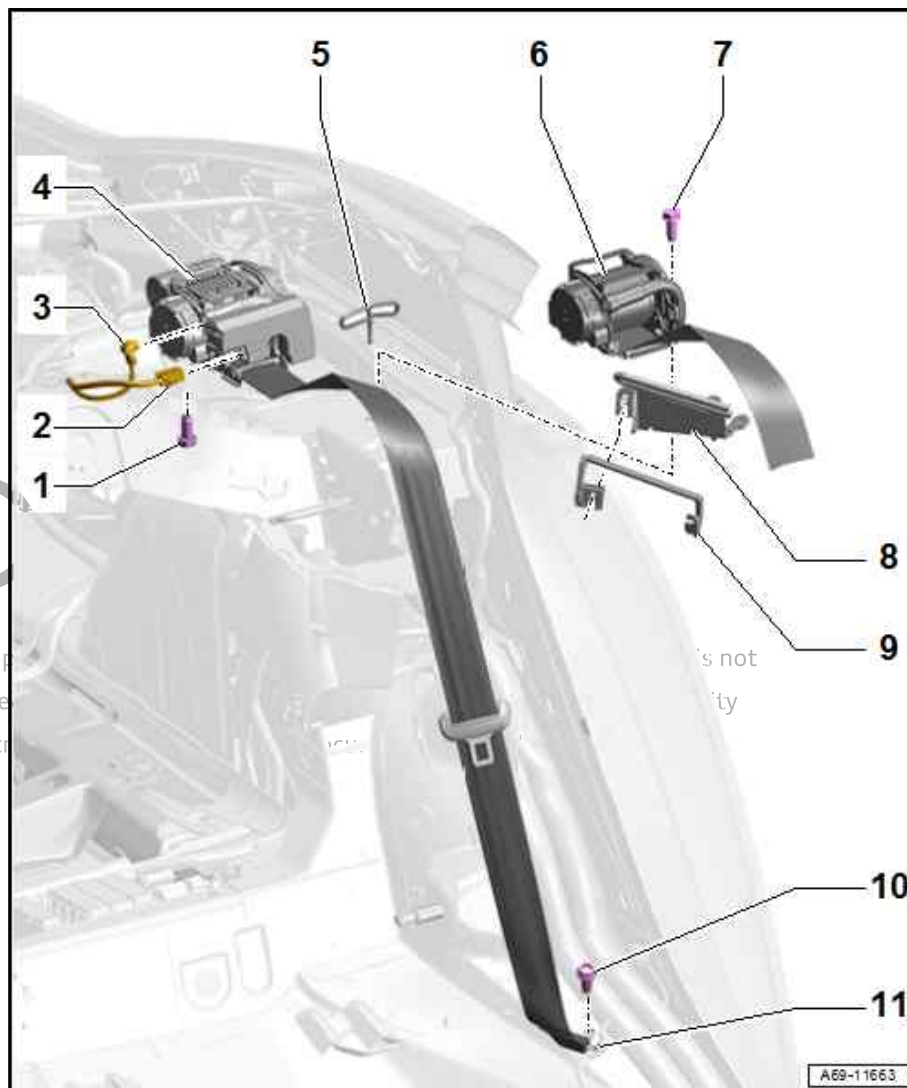
- ◆ Avant ⇒ [page 91](#)

5 - Belt guide (Avant)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 98](#)

6 - Rear seat belt

- ☐ Equipment version without electric belt tensioning
- ☐ with
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ◆ Rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side - N197-
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing:
- ◆ Saloon ⇒ [page 88](#)





◆ Avant ⇒ [page 91](#)

7 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

8 - Belt guide

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing:

◆ Saloon ⇒ [page 96](#)

◆ Avant ⇒ [page 98](#)

9 - Cover

- ☐ For belt guide
- ☐ China version/equipment version only

10 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ China version: secured to belt end fitting with securing clip
- ☐ 40 Nm

11 - Belt end fitting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 100](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.

1 - Clip

2 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 102](#)

3 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

4 - Seat belt

- ❑ In folding backrest
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 92](#)

5 - Belt guide

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 95](#)
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

7 - Seat belt

- ❑ In rear shelf
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 93](#)

8 - Belt guide

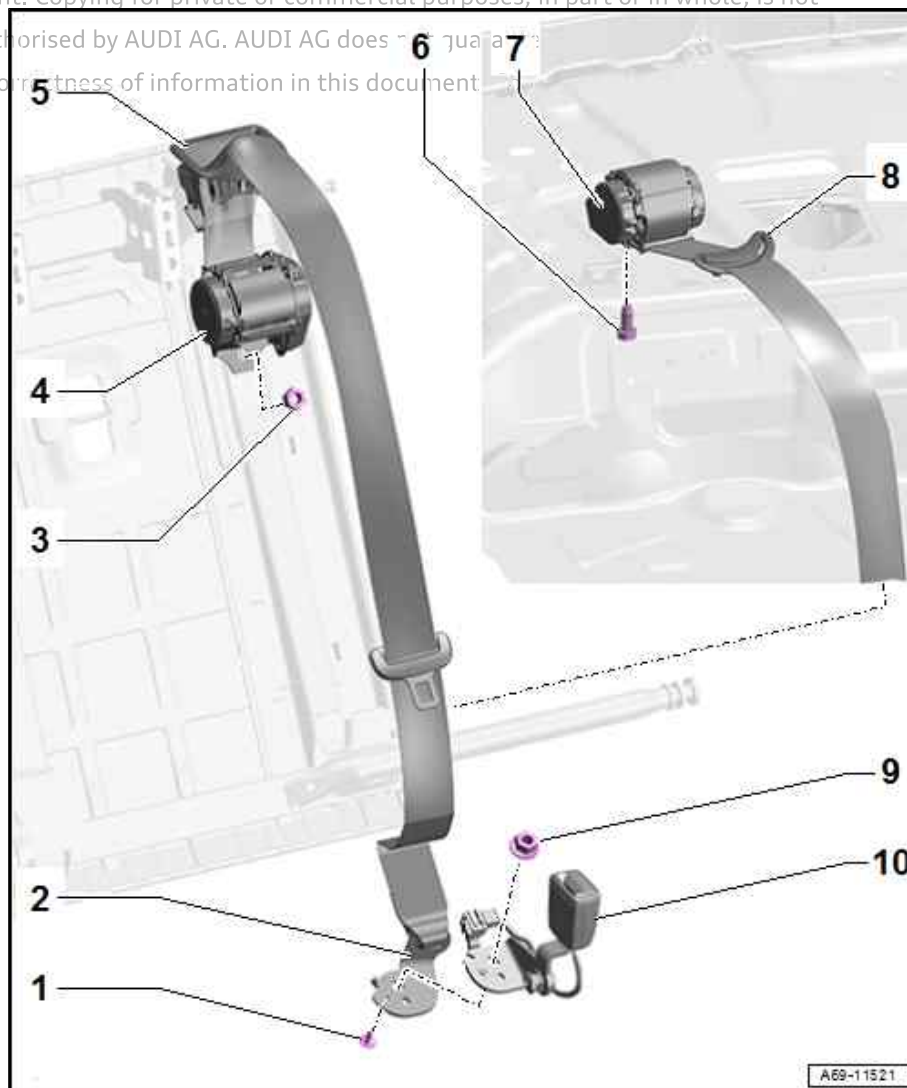
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 95](#)
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly in rear shelf

9 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 84\)](#)

10 - Belt buckle (rear right)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 102](#)





1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle (front)

- ☐ with

◆ Driver side belt switch - E24-

◆ Front passenger side belt switch - E25-

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 102](#)
- ☐ Renew belt buckle if belt
tensioner was triggered
while belt was fastened

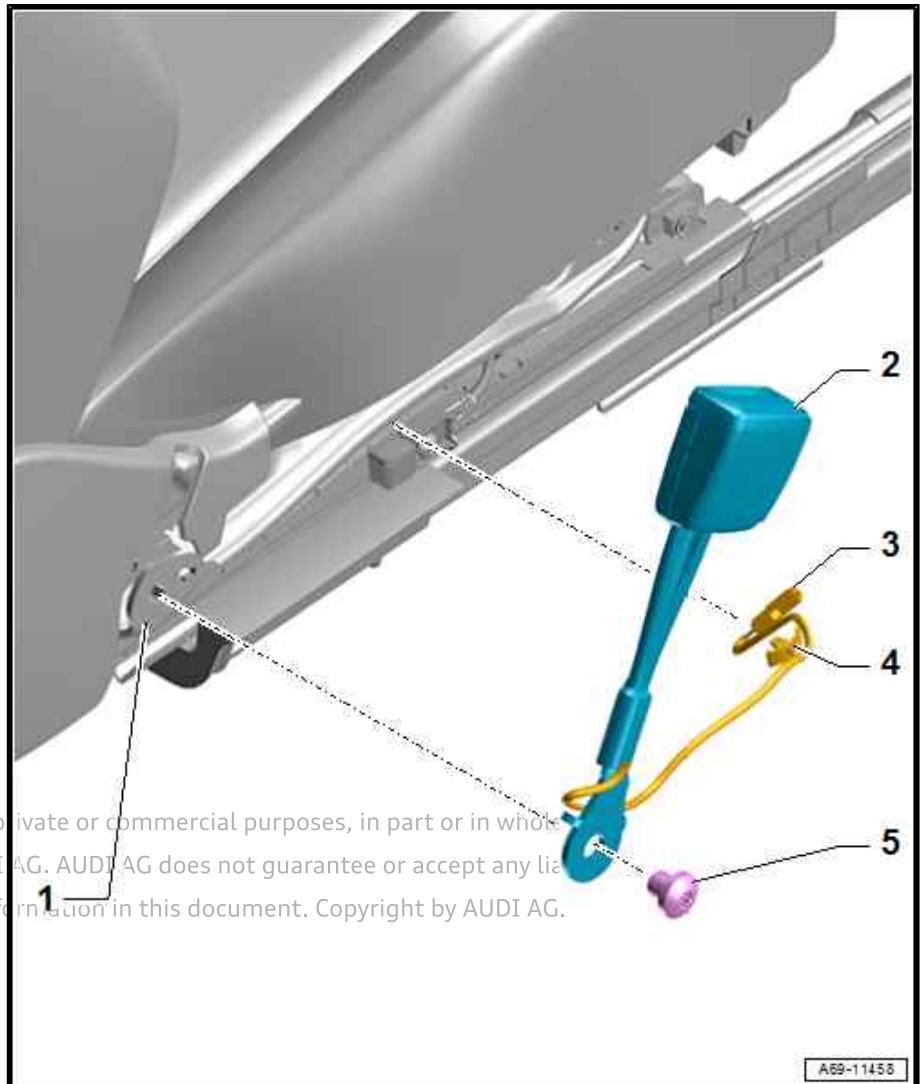
3 - Electrical connector

4 - Cable retainer

- ☐ Clip into seat pan

5 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed
following an accident
while seat belt was fas-
tened
- ☐ 33 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)

1 - Nut

- ☐ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

2 - Belt buckle (right-side)

- ☐ with
- ◆ Belt switch for seat row 2, passenger side - F392-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: light for rear belt buckle, passenger side - L370-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 102](#)
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ☐ Align with direction of travel when bolting on; must engage in locating element

3 - Nut

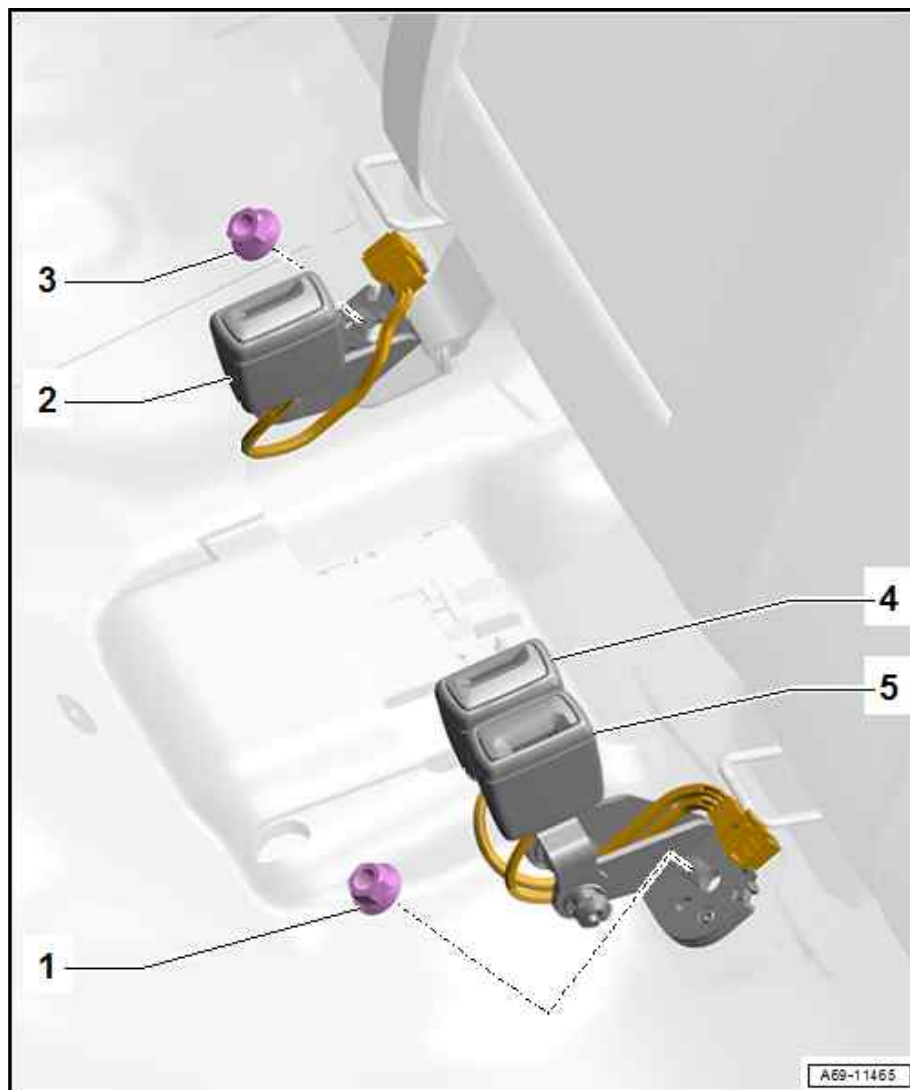
- ☐ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

4 - Belt buckle (centre)

- ☐ With belt switch for seat row 2, middle - F391-
- ☐ For equipment version with 2+1 seats
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 102](#)
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ☐ Align with direction of travel when bolting on; must engage in locating element

5 - Belt buckle (left-side)

- ☐ with
- ◆ Belt switch for seat row 2, driver side - F390-
- ◆ Depending on equipment version: light for rear belt buckle, driver side - L369-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 102](#)
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ☐ Align with direction of travel when bolting on; must engage in locating element



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

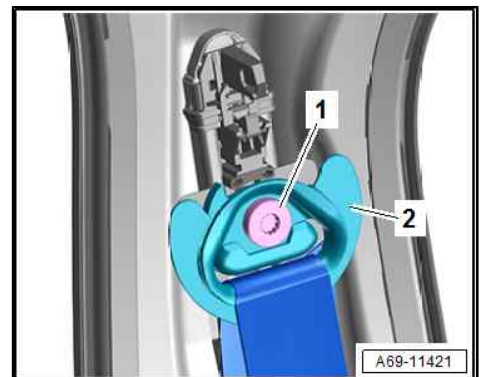
⇒ ["1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt \(front\)", page 85](#)

⇒ ["1.7.2 Removing and installing belt tensioner \(front\) - NAR vehicles", page 86](#)

1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

Removing permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 234](#) .
- Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ [page 99](#) .
- Remove B-pillar trim (top) and guide out belt ⇒ [page 235](#) .
- Remove belt guide (front) ⇒ [page 94](#) .
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -2- with belt.



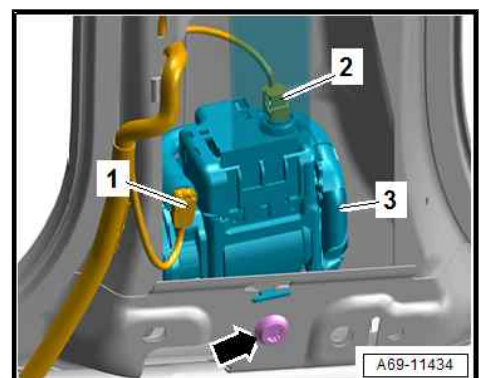
Equipment version without electric belt tensioning:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- for belt tensioner igniter and belt force limiter; to do so, pull out connector locking element.
- Remove bolt -arrow- and take seat belt -3- out of mounting.





Equipment version with electric belt tensioning:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- for belt tensioner igniter; to do so, pull out connector locking element.
- Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -2- for control unit for belt tensioner.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and take seat belt -4- out of mounting.
- Pull out connector locking element and unplug electrical connector -3- for belt force limiter.

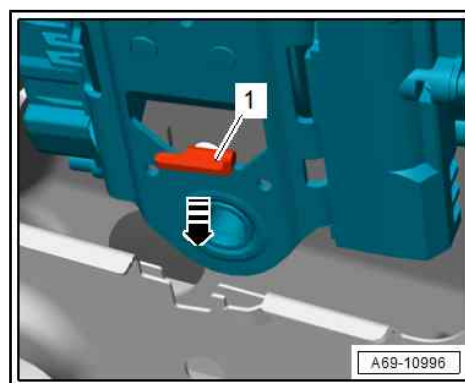
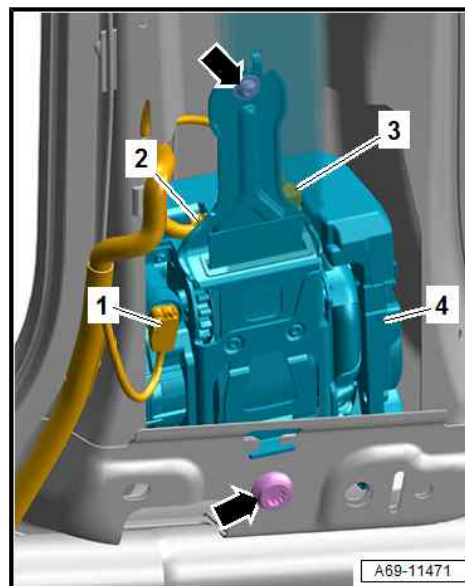
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Depending on equipment version, the control unit -J854- / -J855- may need to be adapted after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- Insert seat belt with locating element -1- in mounting -arrow- and tighten bolt.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt \(front\)", page 77](#)



1.7.2 Removing and installing belt tensioner (front) - NAR vehicles

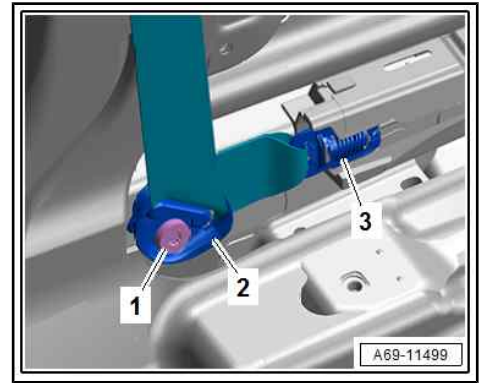
Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#).
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 233](#).
- Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 234](#).
- Press floor covering to side in area of belt end fitting.

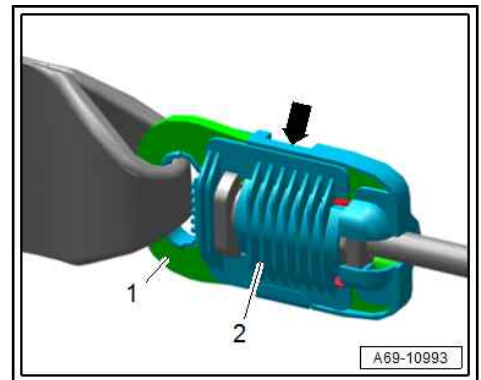
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



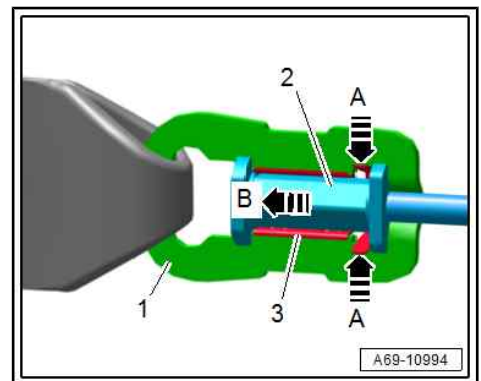
- Disengage belt end fitting -3- from bracket.



- Using a screwdriver, open cover -2- for belt end fitting -1- at catch -arrow- and slide to the side.



- Press retaining tabs of securing clip towards each other -arrows A- with pliers.
- At the same time slide anchoring pin -2- and securing clip -3- in direction of -arrow B- to release them.
- Disengage anchoring pin from securing clip in belt end fitting -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

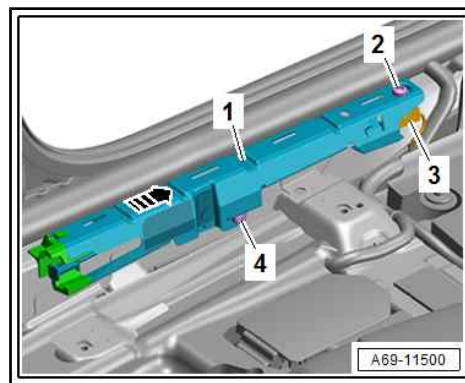


- Press floor covering to side in area of belt tensioner.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release catch and unplug electrical connector -3- for belt tensioner.
- Remove bolts -2, 4-.
- Push wiring harness slightly to one side.
- Disengage belt tensioner -1- towards front out of mounting -arrow- and detach.



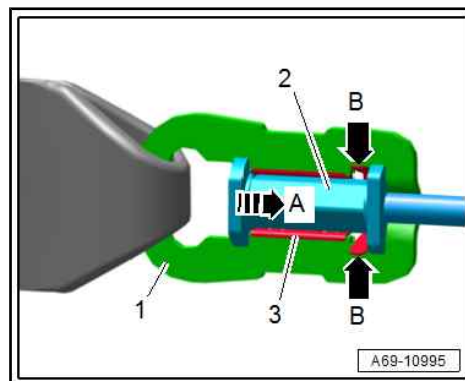
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Engage anchoring pin -2- in securing clip -3- and slide both in direction of -arrow A- until retaining tabs engage -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“1.2.2 Exploded view - belt tensioner \(front\), NAR vehicles”, page 79](#)



1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

⇒ [“1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt \(rear\) - Saloon”, page 88](#)

⇒ [“1.8.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt \(rear\) - Avant”, page 91](#)

⇒ [“1.8.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt \(centre rear\) in folding backrest”, page 92](#)

⇒ [“1.8.4 Removing and installing three-point seat belt \(centre rear\) in rear shelf”, page 93](#)

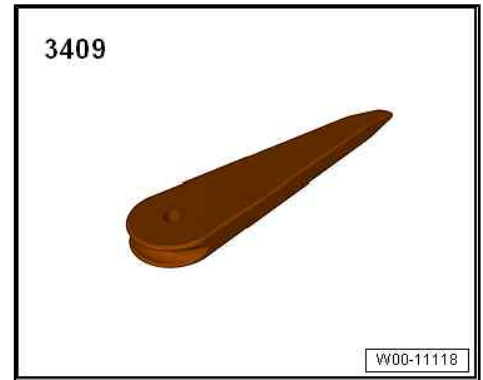
1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

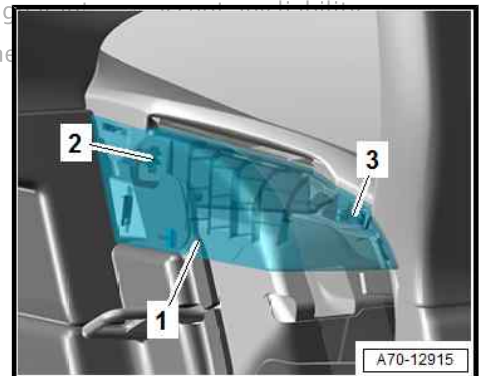


◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

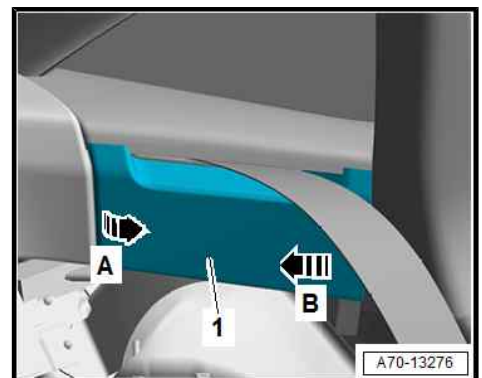


Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Remove seat bench ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats .
- Depending on equipment/country-specific version: Remove fixed backrest or individual rear seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Version 1: Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.

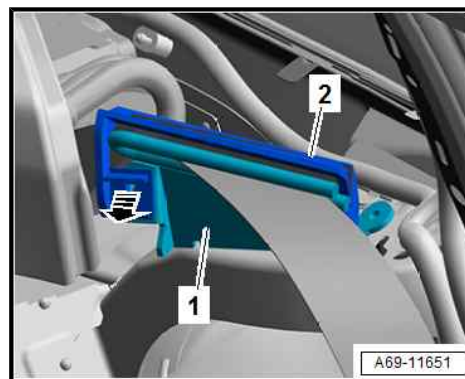


- Version 2: Unclip trim -1- for belt guide from fastener -arrow A- and disengage it from C-pillar trim -arrow B-.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .
- Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 100](#) .
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove rear shelf ⇒ [page 245](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 269](#) .
- Press rear shelf insulation to side in vicinity of seat belt.





- China version/equipment version: If fitted, unclip cover -2- from belt guide -1- -arrow- and disengage it.

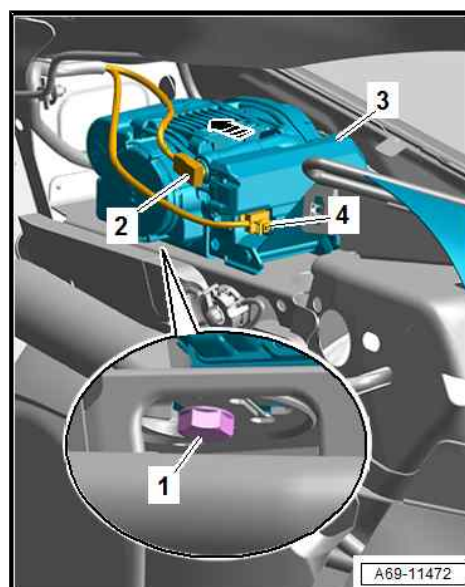


- Release connector locking element with a small flat-bladed screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -4-.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release connector locking element with a small flat-bladed screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Unclip electrical wiring harness in vicinity of bolted connection for three-point seat belt and push to the side.
- Press wheel housing insulation to the side in vicinity of bolted connection for seat belt.
- Remove suspension turret insulation and loosen bolt -1- (luggage compartment side) approx. 7 turns.
- Slide three-point seat belt -3- towards rear -arrow-, disengage it from mounting and remove.



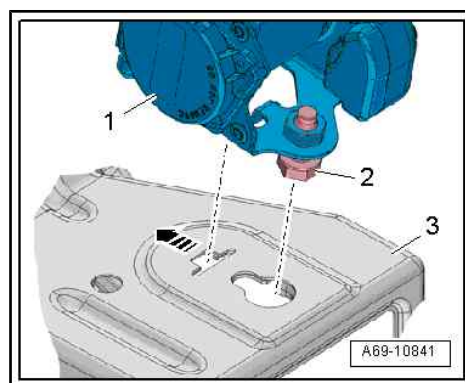
Installing

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Depending on equipment version, the control unit -J1097- / -J1098- may need to be adapted after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- Insert three-point seat belt -1- with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.
- Press three-point seat belt forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 80**

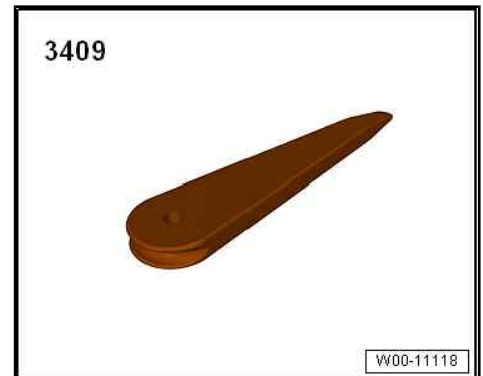




1.8.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - Avant

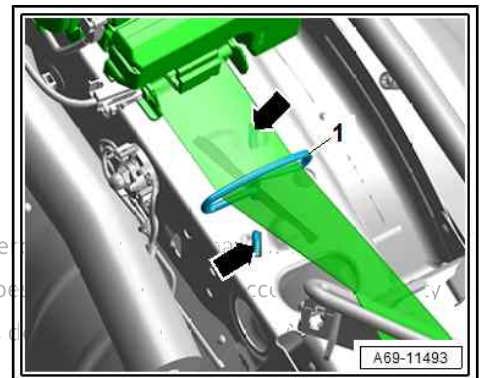
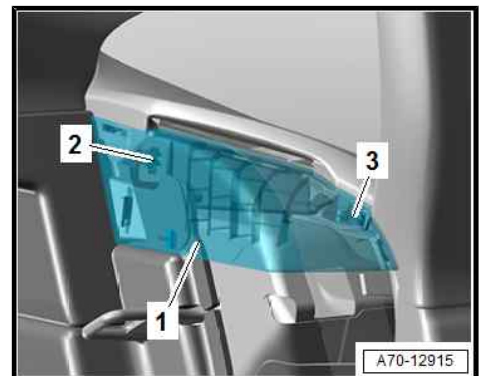
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.
- Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 271](#) .
- Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 100](#) .
- Press side window insulation to side in vicinity of seat belt.
- Release fasteners -arrows- one by one with a flat-bladed screwdriver, and at the same time rotate belt guide -1- anti-clockwise.
- Detach belt guide and thread out belt.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

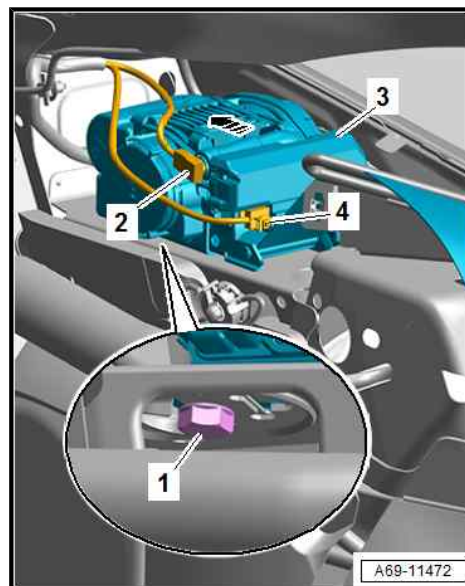


- Release connector locking element with a small flat-bladed screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -4-.

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release connector locking element with a small flat-bladed screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Unclip electrical wiring harness and press to the side.
- Press wheel housing insulation to the side in vicinity of bolted connection for seat belt.
- Remove suspension turret insulation and loosen bolt -1- approx. 7 turns.
- Slide three-point seat belt -3- towards rear -arrow-, disengage it from mounting and remove.

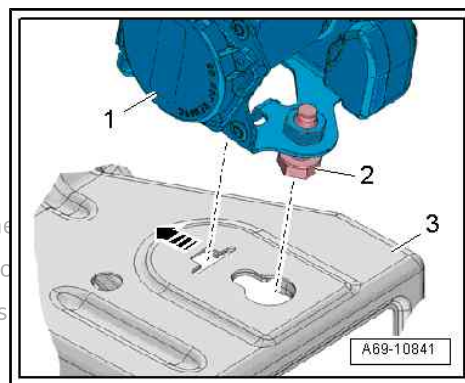


Installing

- Insert three-point seat belt -1- with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.
- Press three-point seat belt forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Depending on equipment version, the control unit -J1097- / -J1098- may need to be adapted after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **“1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”**,
page 80

1.8.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (centre rear) in folding backrest

Removing

- Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ **page 102**.
- Remove folding backrest (right-side) ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Removing and installing cover and padding .



- Unscrew nut -1-.
- Disengage three-point seat belt -2- and detach.
- Thread out belt -3-.

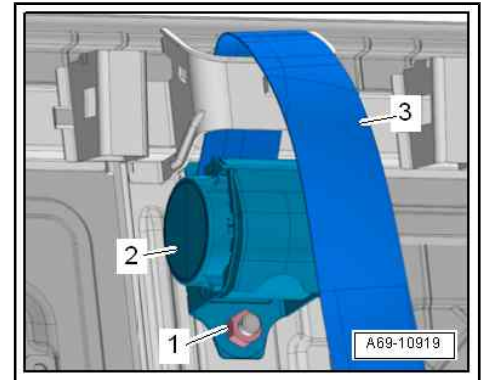
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

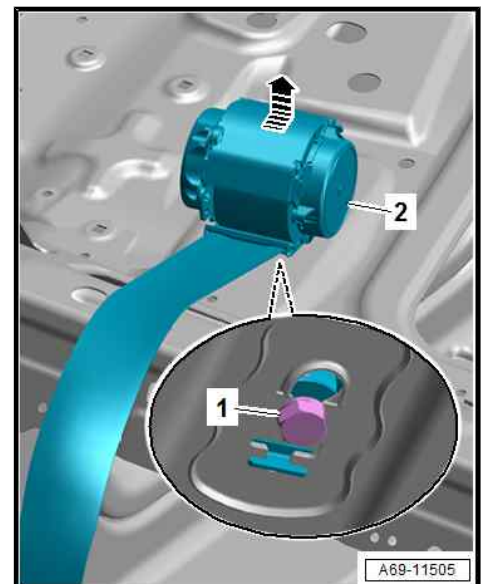
⇒ **"1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)", page 82**



1.8.4 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (centre rear) in rear shelf

Removing

- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Remove fixed backrest/individual rear seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 102](#) .
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove rear shelf ⇒ [page 245](#) .
- Loosen bolt -1- (luggage compartment side) approx. 7 turns.
- Press rear shelf insulation to side in vicinity of seat belt.
- Slide three-point seat belt -2- out of mounting towards rear and lift it out -arrow-.





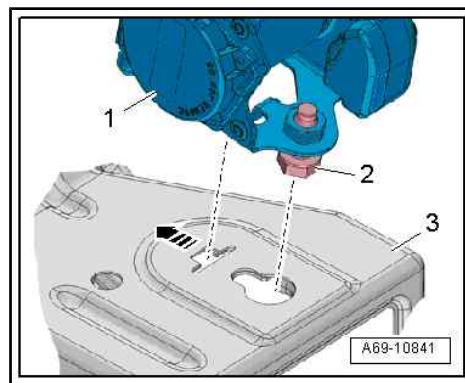
Installing

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- Insert three-point seat belt -1- with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.
- Press three-point seat belt forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

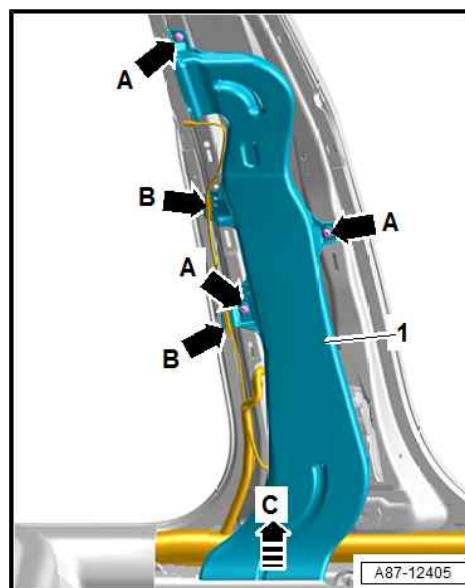
⇒ **"1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)", page 82**



1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (front)

Removing

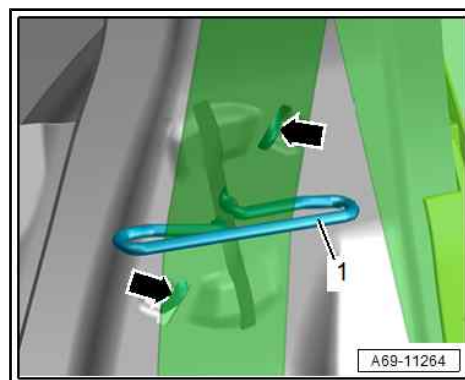
- Remove B-pillar trim and move it to one side together with belt ⇒ [page 234](#) .
- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove spreader rivets -arrows A-.
- Unclip electrical wiring from air duct -arrows B-.
- Press floor covering slightly to one side and pull air duct -1- upwards and out -arrow C-.



- Release fasteners -arrows- one by one with a flat-bladed screwdriver, and at the same time rotate belt guide -1- anti-clockwise.
- Detach belt guide and thread out belt.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability



1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

⇒ ["1.10.1 Removing and installing belt guide \(centre rear\) in folding backrest", page 95](#)

⇒ ["1.10.2 Removing and installing belt guide \(centre rear\) in rear shelf", page 95](#)

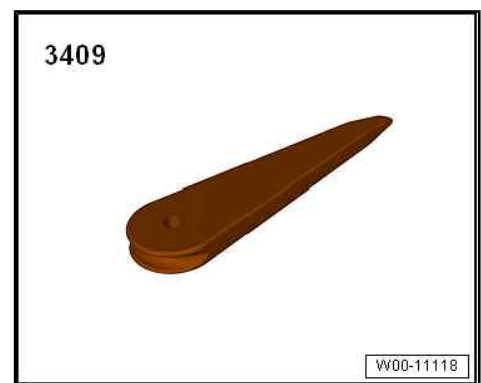
⇒ ["1.10.3 Removing and installing outer belt guide \(rear\) - Saloon", page 96](#)

⇒ ["1.10.4 Removing and installing outer belt guide \(rear\) - Avant", page 98](#)

1.10.1 Removing and installing belt guide (centre rear) in folding backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

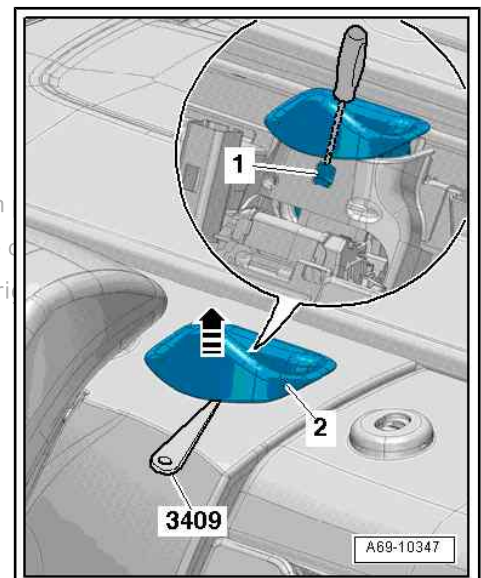


Removing

- Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 102](#) .
- Insert flat-bladed screwdriver into opening in belt guide (from top) and release retaining tab -1-.
- At the same time, unclip belt guide -2- using removal wedge - 3409 - arrow-.
- Thread out belt end fitting and detach belt guide.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



1.10.2 Removing and installing belt guide (centre rear) in rear shelf

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

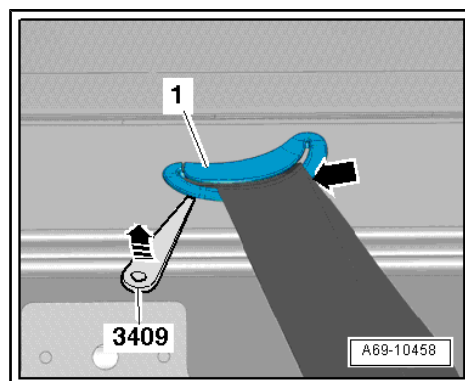


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

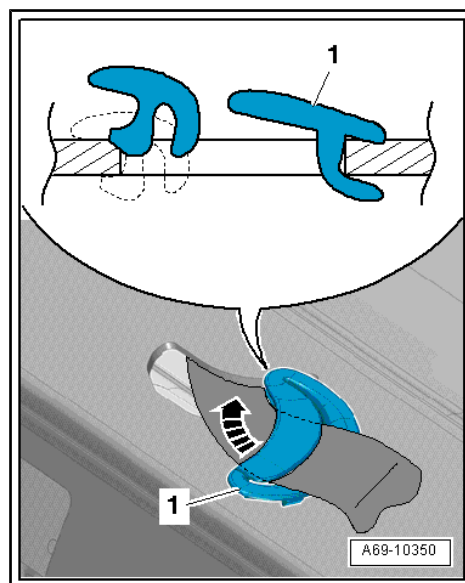
- Unclip belt guide -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -left arrow-.
- Unclip belt guide on opposite side -right arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and lift out of rear shelf.
- Open belt guide at disconnecting point and thread out belt.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Position belt guide -1- with edge turned by approx. 90° above opening in rear shelf (as shown in illustration).
- Slide belt guide into corner of opening and at the same time turn belt guide into opening -arrow-.
- Press belt guide down until retaining tabs engage in rear shelf.

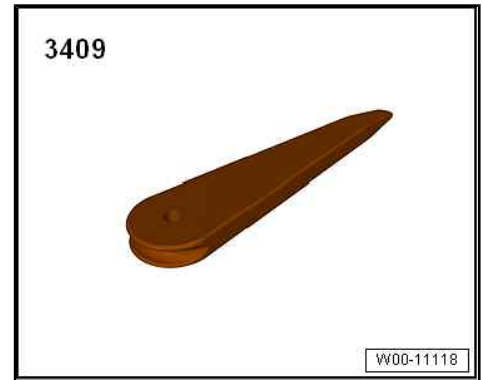


1.10.3 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

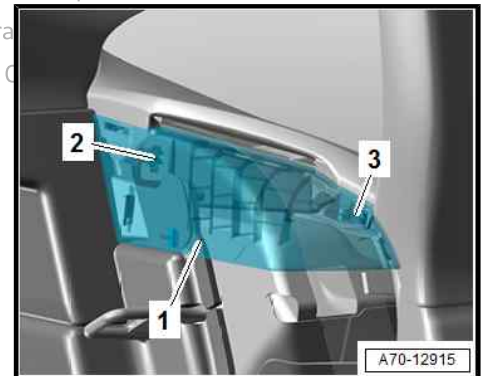


◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

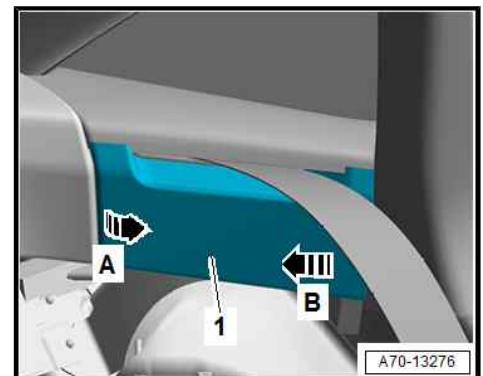


Removing

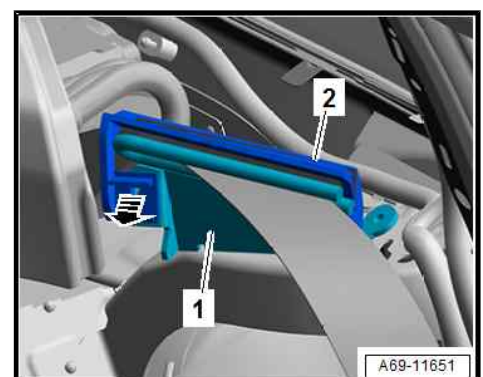
- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Depending on equipment/country-specific version: Remove fixed backrest or individual rear seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest
- Version 1: Using removal wedge - 3409-, press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.



- Version 2: Unclip trim -1- for belt guide from fastener -arrow A- and disengage it from C-pillar trim -arrow B-.
- Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 237](#) .



- China version/equipment version: If fitted, unclip cover -2- from belt guide -1- -arrow- and disengage it.
- If necessary, press rear shelf insulation to side in vicinity of belt guide.





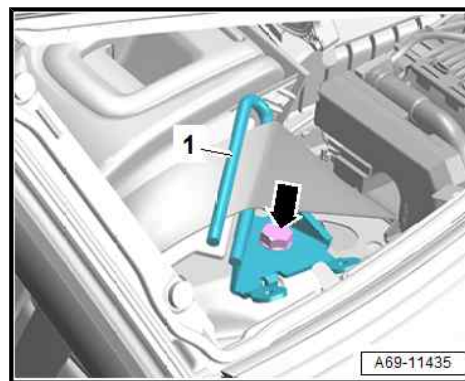
- Take belt out of belt guide.
- Remove bolt -arrow-.
- Disengage belt guide -1- from mounting and remove.
- Right side of vehicle (depending on equipment version): Unplug electrical connector for parking aid warning buzzer.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

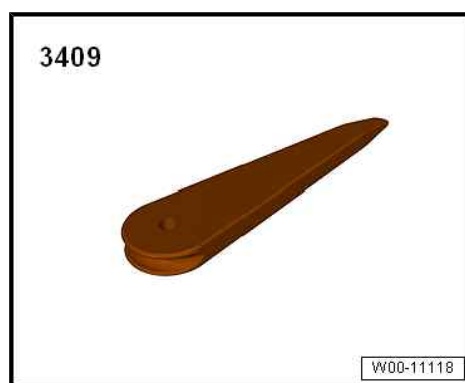
⇒ **"1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", page 80**



1.10.4 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - Avant

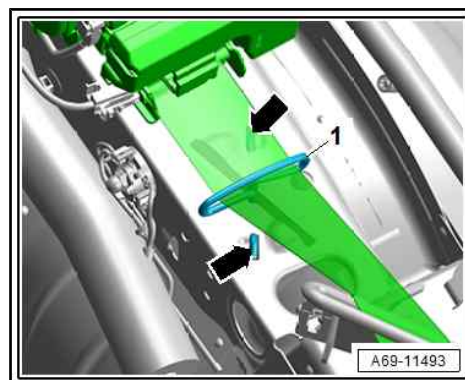
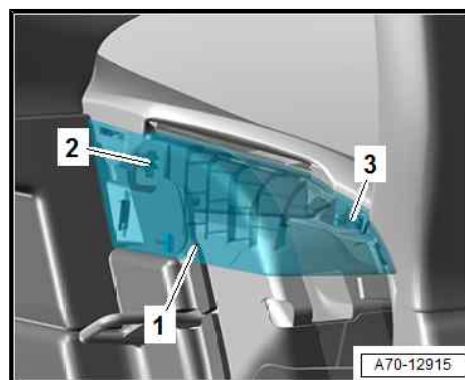
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.
- Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 271](#) .
- Press side window insulation to side in vicinity of belt guide.
- Release fasteners -arrows- one by one with a flat-bladed screwdriver, and at the same time rotate belt guide -1- anti-clockwise.
- Detach belt guide and thread out belt.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Take belt out of belt guide.
- Remove bolt -arrow-.
- Disengage belt guide -1- from mounting and remove.
- Right side of vehicle (depending on equipment version): Unplug electrical connector for parking aid warning buzzer.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)"**,
page 80

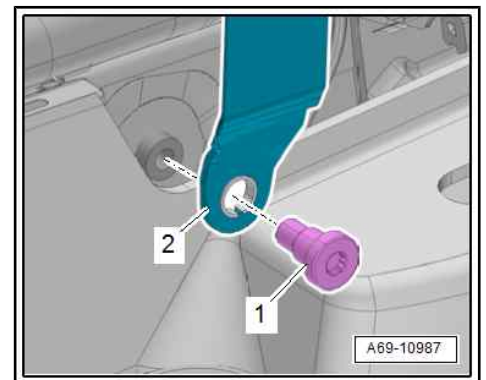
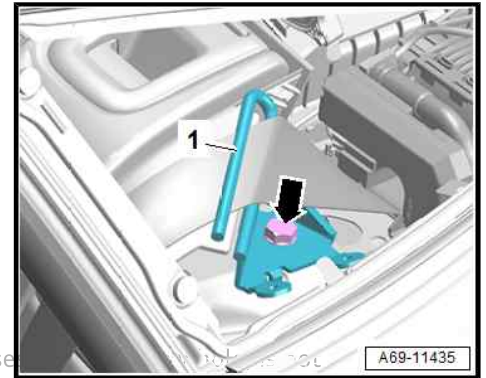
1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)

Removing

- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 234](#) .

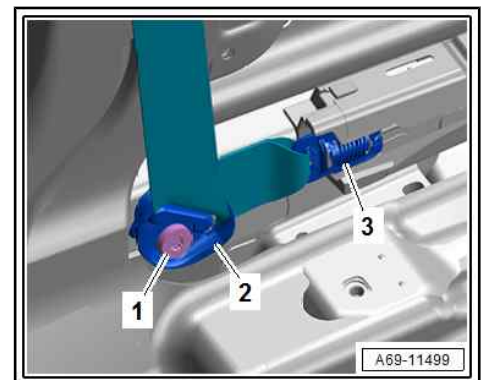
Belt end fitting without belt tensioner:

- Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection and unscrew bolt -1-.
- Remove bolt with belt end fitting -2-.



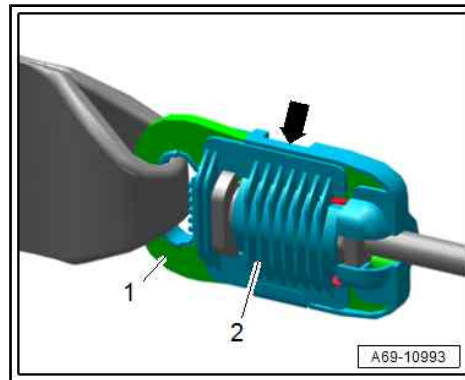
Belt end fitting with belt tensioner:

- Press floor covering to side in area of belt end fitting.
- Unscrew bolt -1- and detach belt guide fitting -2-.
- Disengage belt end fitting -3- from bracket.





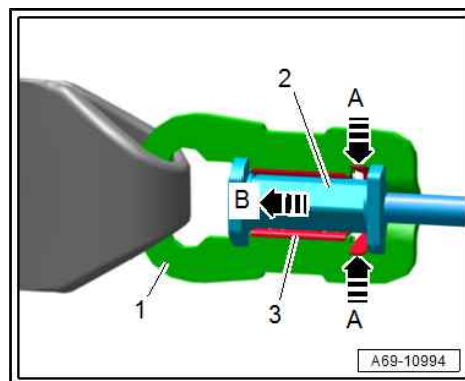
- Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, open cover -2- for belt end fitting -1- at catch -arrow- and slide to the side.



- Press retaining tabs of securing clip towards each other -arrows A- with pliers.
- At the same time slide anchoring pin -2- and securing clip -3- in direction of -arrow B- to release them.
- Disengage anchoring pin from securing clip in belt end fitting -1-.

Installing

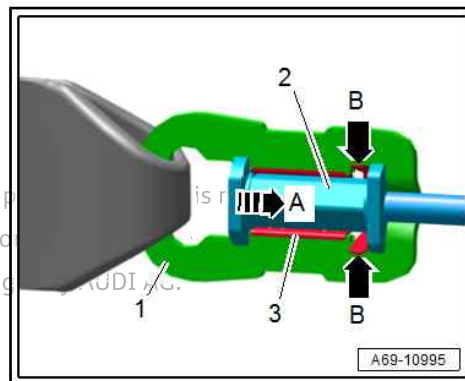
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



- Belt end fitting with belt tensioner: Engage anchoring pin -2- in securing clip -3- and slide both in direction of -arrow A- until retaining tabs engage -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 77**



1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

Removing

- Remove seat bench ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats .
- Depending on equipment/country-specific version: Remove fixed backrest or individual rear seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .
- China version: If necessary, release sill panel trim and press it to side ⇒ [page 229](#) .



- Remove bolt -1-.
- Remove bolt with belt end fitting -2-.

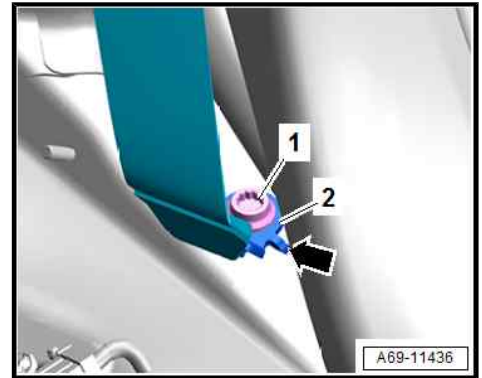
Installing

- Position belt end fitting so that locating element -arrow- engages in recess in floor panel.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **“1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 80**



1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

Removing

- Move slide for belt height adjuster to lowest possible position.
- Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ [page 235](#) and move to side together with belt.
- Remove bolt -4-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -1- with belt.
- Remove bolt -3-.
- Lift belt height adjuster -2- off B-pillar.

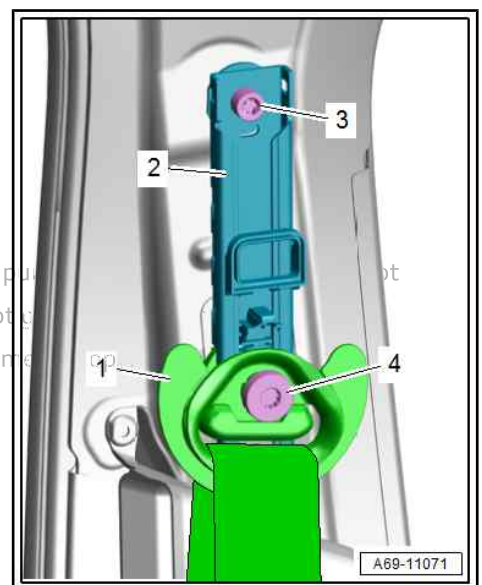
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

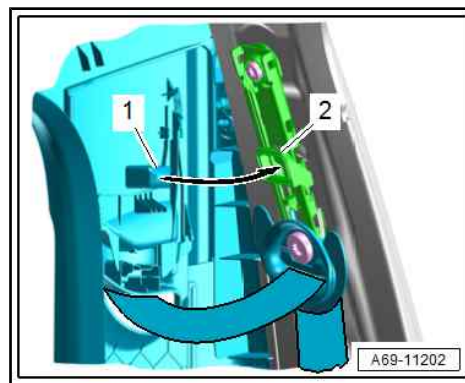
When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always supplied with belt height adjustment slide and set to bottom detent position (assembly position).

- If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).
- Do not operate belt height adjustment button when fitting B-pillar trim.





- First insert B-pillar trim upwards into mounting at roof.
- Retaining pin -1- on sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in mounting -2- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.
- Belt height adjuster as replacement part: After fitting B-pillar trim, press slide firmly upwards.
- This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.
- The following functions must be tested successfully:
- Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the possible positions (including top position).
- Belt height adjustment button must always automatically return to top position whenever it has been operated.
- After tightening bolt, belt guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction.



If any of the listed functions are not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 77**

1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

Removing

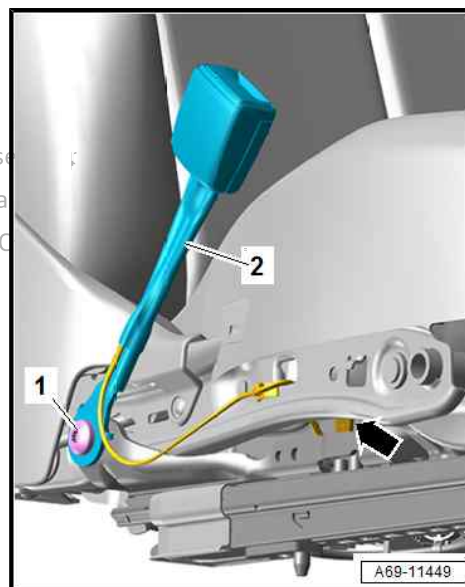
- Remove front seat ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat .
- Unplug electrical connector -arrow- and move wiring clear.
- Remove bolt -1- and detach belt buckle -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Position belt buckle so that locating element engages in opening on seat frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **"1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)", page 83**



1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

Removing

- Remove seat bench ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats .

-
- A detailed diagram of the A69-11437 assembly. It shows a blue motor unit (5) connected to a yellow cable (4) which is plugged into a yellow connector (2). A green component (3) is attached to the top, and a pink/purple component (1) is at the base. A black arrow points to a small black component near the base of the motor.
- A69-11437

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)", page 84



2 Child seat anchors

⇒ [“2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors \(front\)”, page 104](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors \(rear\)”, page 105](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor \(front\)”, page 105](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor \(rear\)”, page 107](#)

2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)

1 - Cover for child seat anchor

2 - Child seat anchor

- ☐ Front passenger's seat only
- ☐ Bolted to seat pan
- ☐ Checking after an accident ⇒ [page 13](#)
- ☐ Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 105](#)

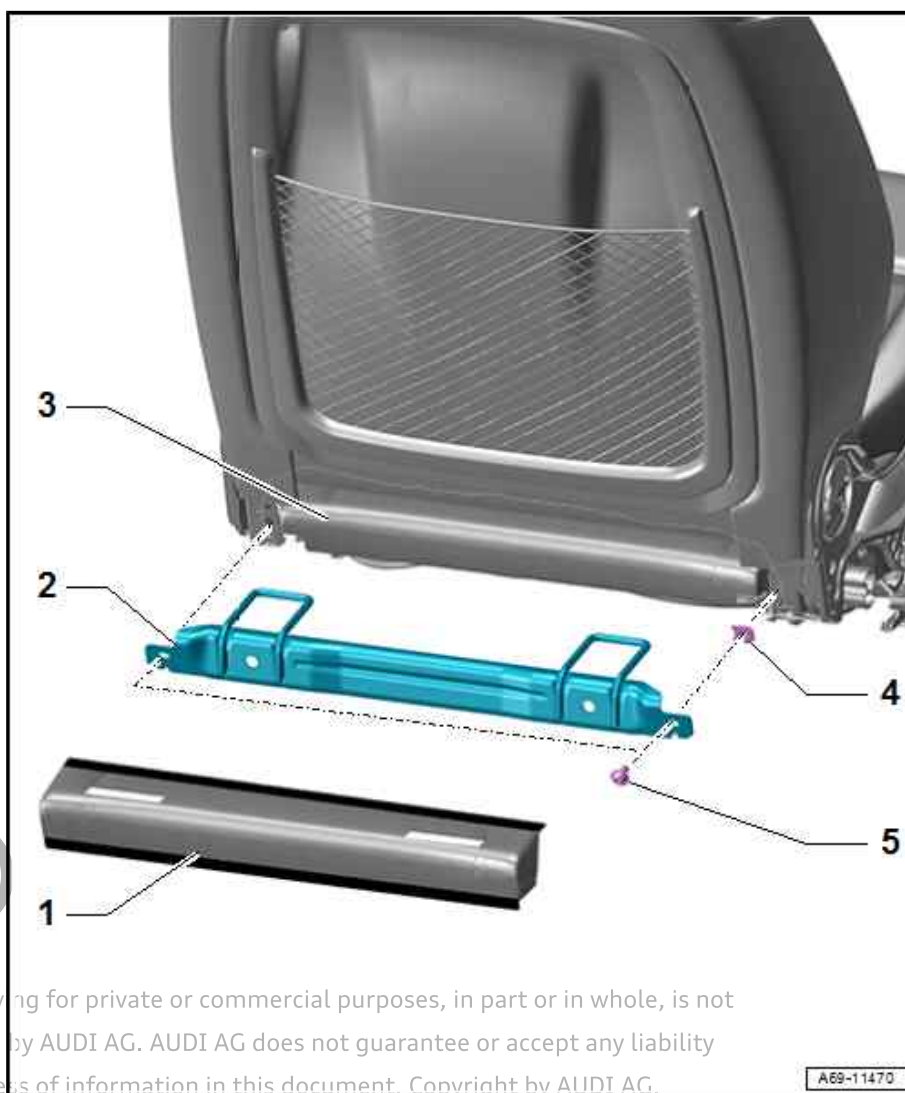
3 - Front passenger seat

4 - Speed nut

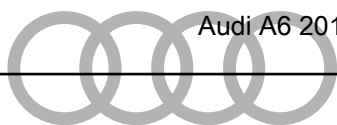
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Inserted in seat pan
- ☐ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 7.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

1 - Cover (Avant)

- ☐ For child seat anchor
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 107](#)
- ☐ Engage in anchor and
press on until it engages
audibly
- ☐ Can only be pressed on-
to folding backrest in
one position

2 - Child seat anchor in folding backrest (Avant)

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Welded to outer frame
of folding backrest

3 - Cover (Saloon)

- ☐ For child seat anchor
- ☐ 2x or 3x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 108](#)
- ☐ Insert in rear shelf and
press on until it engages
audibly

4 - Child seat anchor in rear shelf (Saloon)

- ☐ 2x or 3x
- ☐ Welded to back panel

5 - Child seat anchor (bottom)

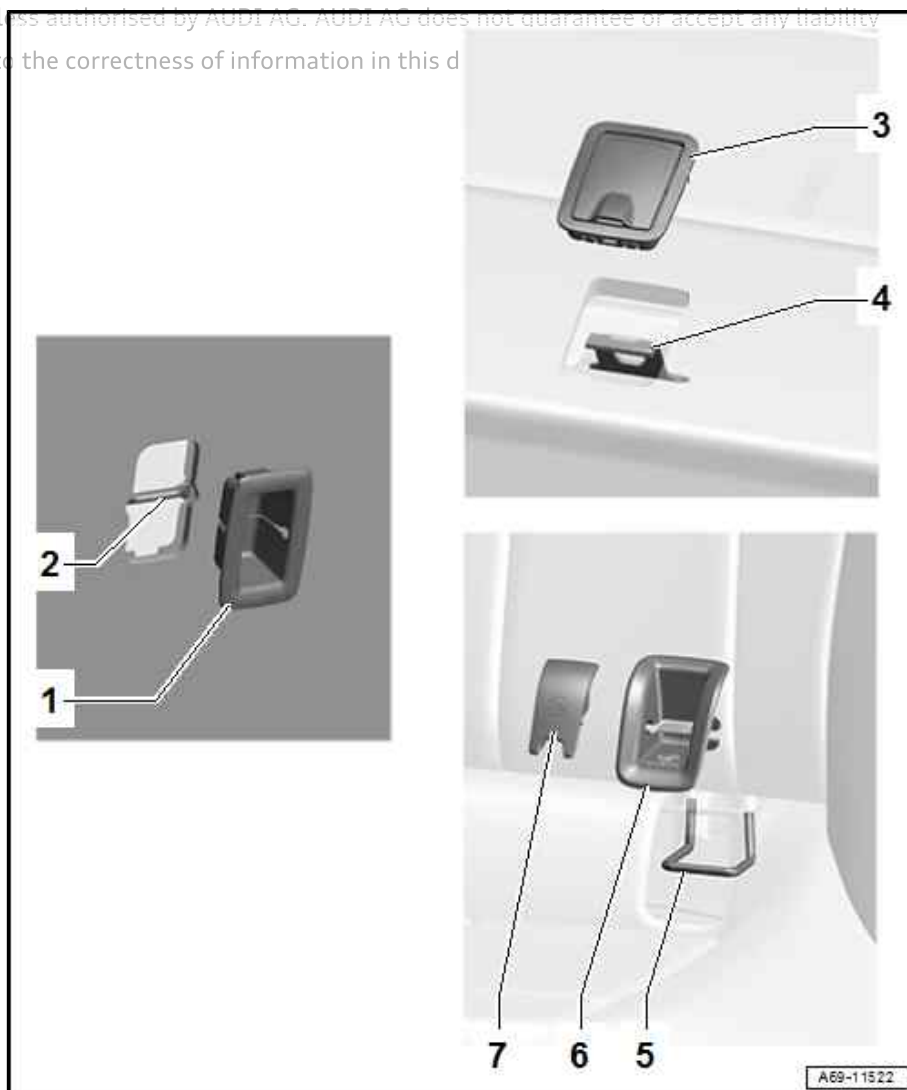
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Welded to vehicle floor

6 - Guide

- ☐ For child seat anchor (bottom)
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 107](#)
- ☐ Must be seated firmly on anchor

7 - Cover

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 107](#)
- ☐ Must be seated firmly on anchor



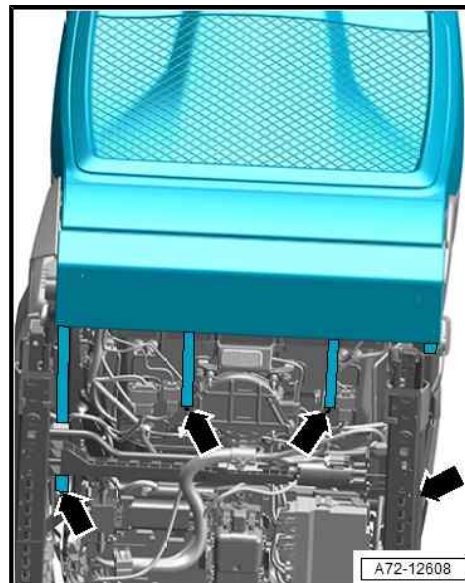
2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)

Removing

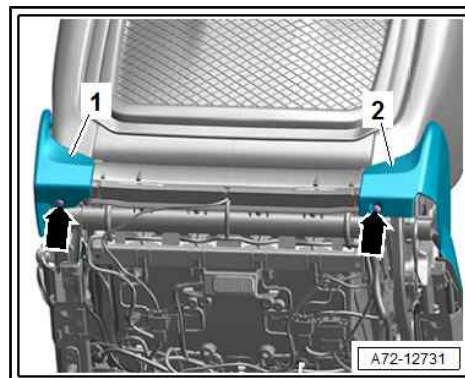
- Unbolt front passenger seat and tilt it forwards with wiring still attached ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat .



- Depending on equipment version: Remove backrest adjuster knob ➔ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit .
- Comfort seat: Disengage tensioning straps for backrest cover panel -arrows- from bottom of seat pan.



- Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.
- Disengage seat frame trim -1, 2- at rear of backrest fitting and press slightly to one side.



- If necessary, press seat frame trim slightly to one side and unscrew bolts -arrows-.
- Press seat frame trim slightly to one side and detach child seat anchor -1- from front seat towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ➔ "2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)", page 104





2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)

⇒ **"2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (bottom)", page 107**

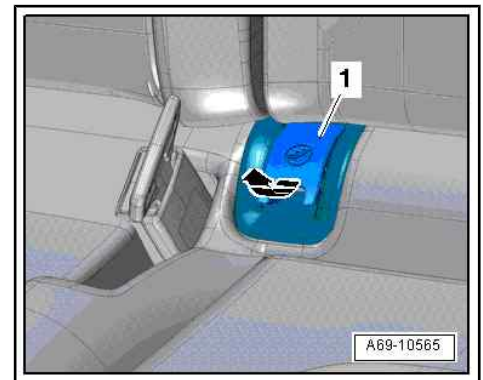
⇒ **"2.4.2 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor - folding backrest", page 107**

⇒ **"2.4.3 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor - rear shelf", page 108**

2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (bottom)

Removing

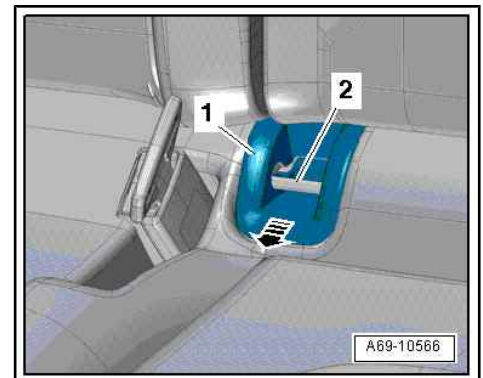
- Unclip cover -1- for child seat anchor from anchor -arrow- and detach.



- Press guide -1- for child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -2-.
- Take guide for child seat anchor out towards front -arrow-.

Installing

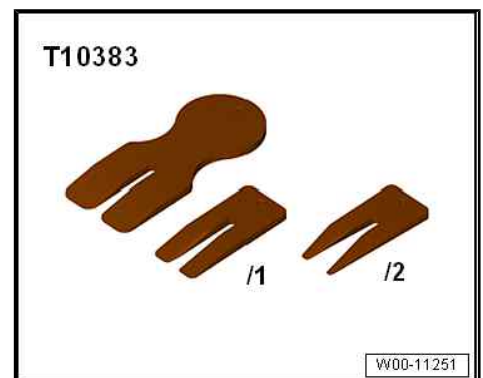
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



2.4.2 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor - folding backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



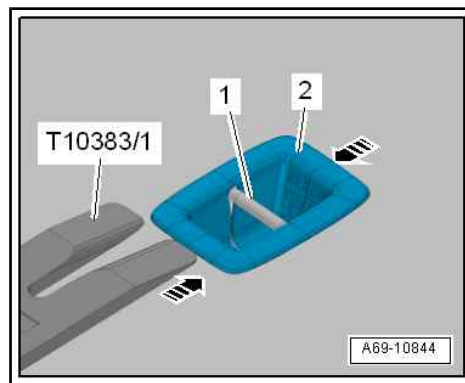


Removing

- Fold backrest forwards.
- Release retaining tabs using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows- and prise cover -2- upwards off folding backrest.
- Carefully pull cover off child seat anchor -1- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



2.4.3 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor - rear shelf

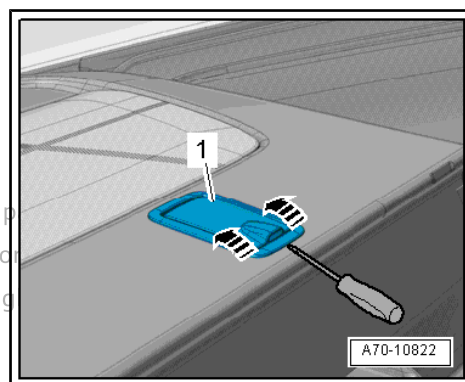
Removing

- Depending on equipment version: Fold backrest forwards.
- Using flat-bladed screwdriver, unclip cover -1- for child seat anchor -arrows- and remove.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited without the written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee the correctness of the information in this document. Copyright © 2019 Audi AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.





3 Airbag system

⇒ **"3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system", page 109**

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system

1 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)

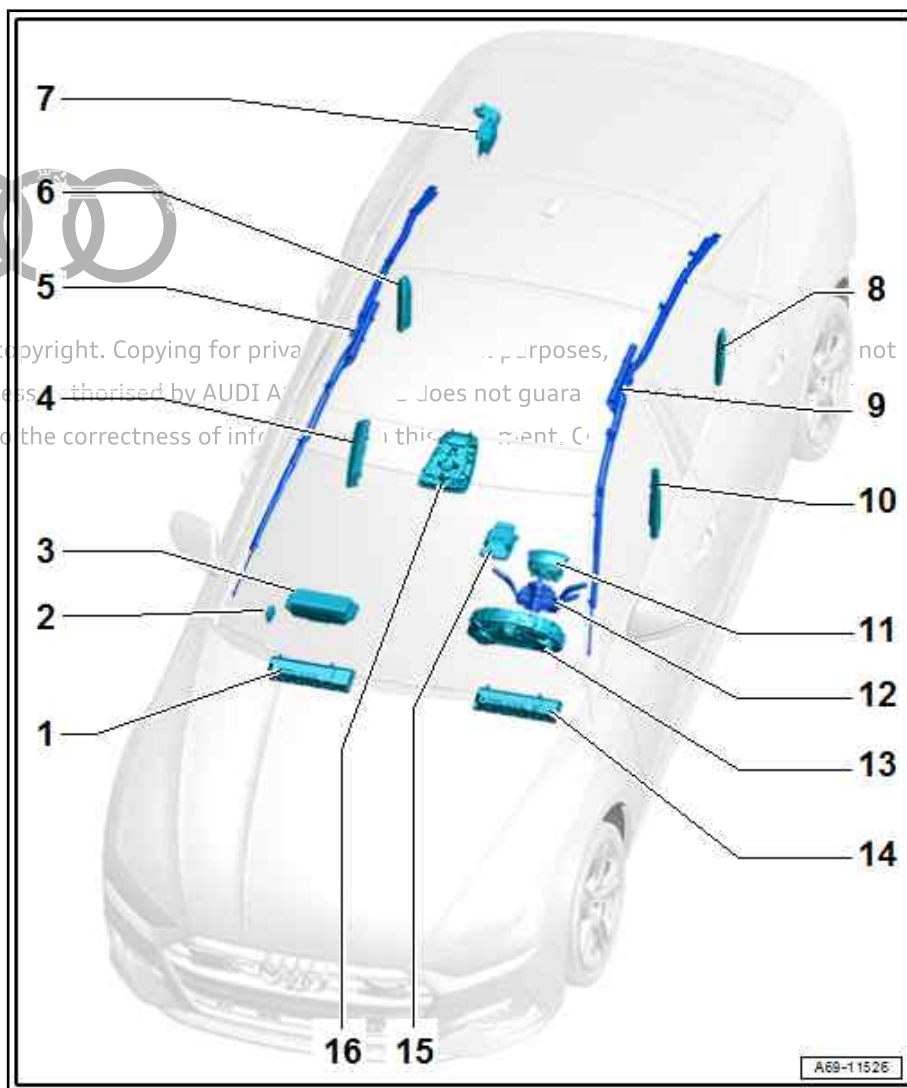
- ☐ With front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-
- ☐ NAR vehicles
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 142](#)

2 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- ☐ Rest-of-world vehicles/equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 125](#)

3 - Front passenger airbag unit - NX3-

- ☐ with
- ◆ Airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- ◆ NAR version: with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- ◆ Igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-
- ☐ Equipment version/rest-of-world version: can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 123](#)



4 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- ☐ With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 128](#)

5 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)

- ☐ With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 137](#)

6 - Side airbag, rear (passenger side)

- ☐ With rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 129](#)

7 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 115](#)

8 - Side airbag, rear (driver side)

- ☐ With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-



- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 129](#)

9 - Curtain airbag (driver side)

- ☐ With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 137](#)

10 - Side airbag (driver side)

- ☐ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 128](#)

11 - Airbag (driver side)

- ☐ with
- ◆ Driver side airbag igniter - N95-
- ◆ Igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 118](#)

12 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ☐ With coil connector - F350-
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

13 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- ☐ Integrated in dash panel insert; cannot be renewed separately if defective
- ☐ Renewing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

14 - Knee airbag (driver side)

- ☐ With driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-
- ☐ NAR vehicles
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 142](#)

15 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 111](#)

16 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- ☐ Integrated in front roof module - WX3- Cannot be renewed separately if defective
- ☐ Renewing front roof module - WX3- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)



4 Airbag control unit

⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit", page 111](#)

⇒ ["4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ", page 111](#)

4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit

1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 111](#)
- ☐ Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

2 - Nut

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit
- ☐ 9 Nm

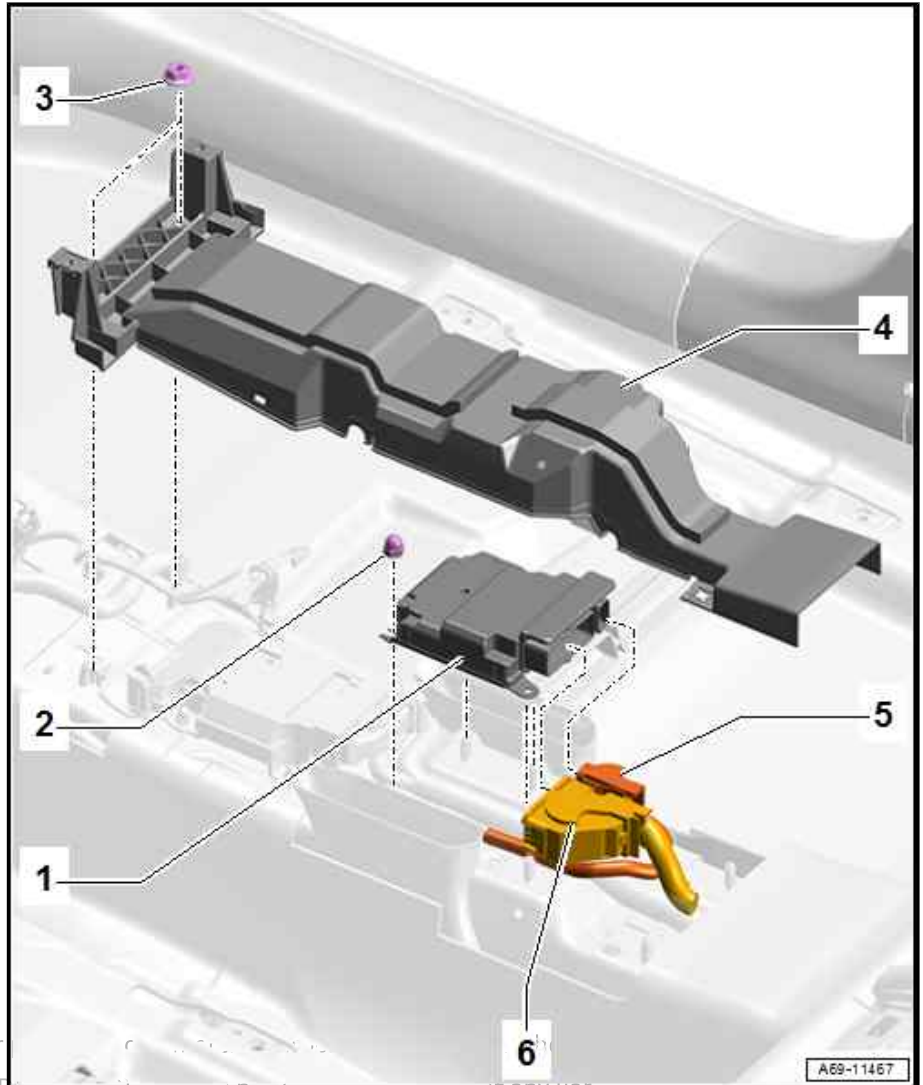
3 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 4 Nm

4 - Cover

5 - Electrical connector

6 - Electrical connector



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

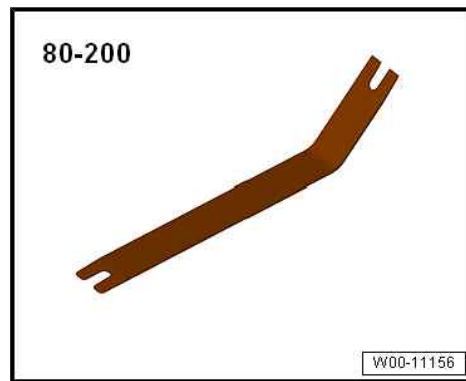
4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester



◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

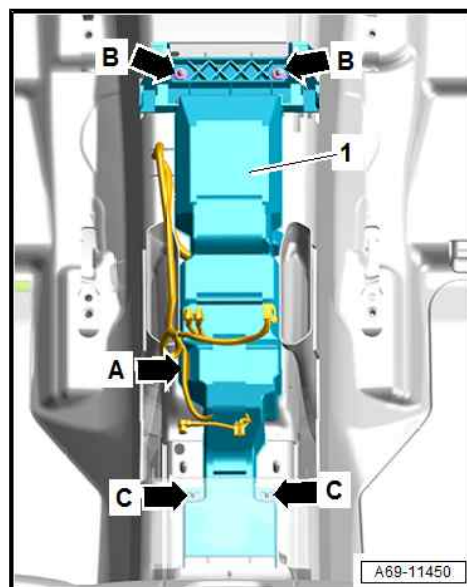
- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



NOTICE

Risk of damage to airbag control unit. Electrical connectors corrode when exposed to moisture.

- After unplugging connectors for control unit, cover them or seal them off to prevent moisture from entering.
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- Disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
- Unclip electrical wiring harness -arrow A- from cover using removal lever - 80-200- and move wiring harness clear.
- Unscrew nuts -arrows B- and detach cover from studs.
- Lift floor covering slightly and unclip cover -1- for control unit (rear) from studs beneath floor covering -arrows C-.
- Pull cover for control unit out from under floor covering and remove.





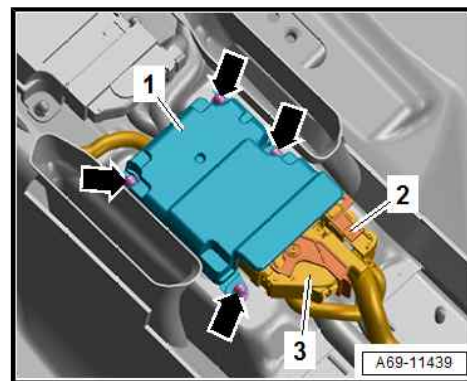
- Remove nuts -arrows-.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Take airbag control unit -1- off studs.
- Unplug electrical connectors -2 and 3-; to do so, release catch and open retaining clip at connector.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Observe steps required after re-connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.

CAUTION

Risk of malfunctions if control unit is not activated correctly.

- It is essential to perform the following work exactly as specified.

- The guided function “Basic setting, inertial sensors” must always be performed after removing and installing the airbag control unit - J234- .
- If you have replaced the old airbag control unit - J234- with a new one, the basic setting is performed as part of initial operation with the program “0015 - Replace airbag control unit”.
- If you have removed and then re-installed the same airbag control unit - J234- perform the “Basic setting, inertial sensors” as follows:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .
- Switch on ignition.
- Select and start **Diagnosis** mode.
- Select **Test plan** tab.



- Choose **Select own test** and select following options one after the other:

- ◆ Systems with diagnostic capability

- ◆ 0015 - Airbag - J234

- ◆ 0015 - Airbag, functions

- ◆ 0015 - Basic setting

- ◆ 0015 - Basic setting, inertial sensors

- Start selected program and follow instructions on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit", page 111](#)



5 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter", page 115](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter", page 116](#)

⇒ ["5.3 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter, 48 V N751", page 117](#)

5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter

1 - Main fuse holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

2 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

3 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

4 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

5 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

6 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

7 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

8 - Bolt

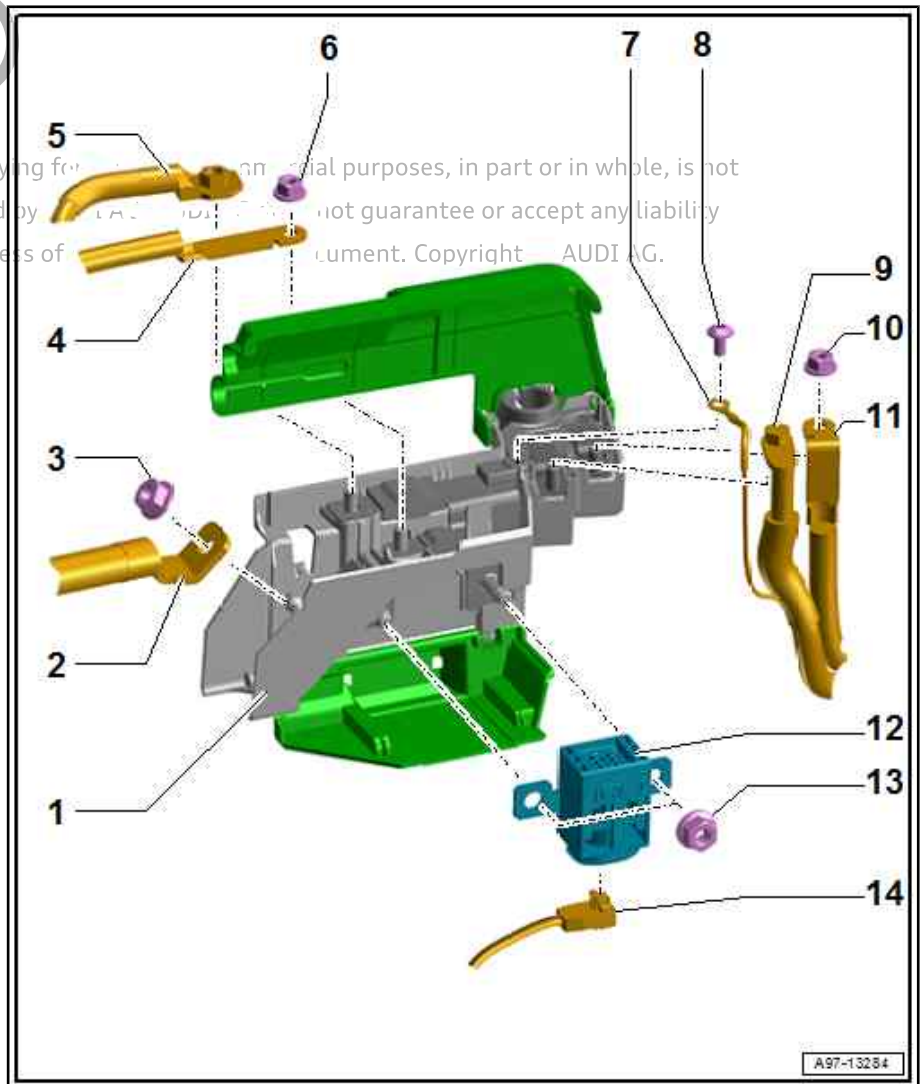
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

9 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

10 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes





11 - Wire

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

12 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 116](#)

13 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 15 Nm

14 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For battery isolation igniter - N253-

5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

- ◆ If a fault in the airbag system is displayed in the dash panel insert after an accident, check whether crash data are stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. If this is the case, check whether the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter - N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed.
 - ◆ Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter - N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed after triggering.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Open cover of luggage compartment side trim (right-side).
- Unfasten retaining strap.



- Release catch and open cover -4- -arrow-.
- Remove nuts -3, 5-.

⚠ CAUTION

**It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury**

- **Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.**

- Remove battery isolation igniter - N253- .
- Release connector locking element with a small flat-bladed screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

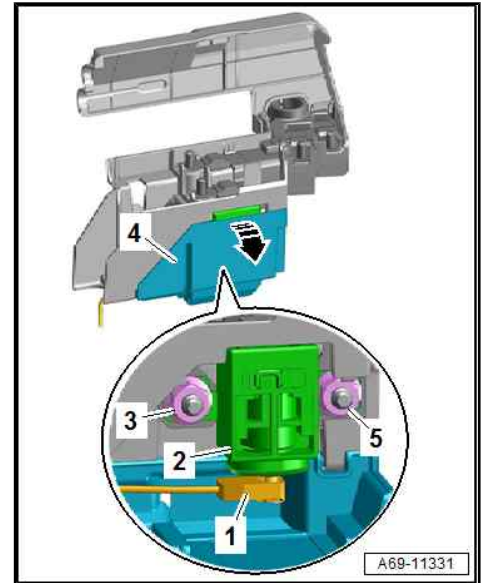
- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter", page 115](#)

5.3 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter, 48 V - N751-

The battery isolation igniter, 48 V - N751- is integrated into the battery, 48 V - A6- and cannot be renewed separately in the event of a fault.

Removing and installing battery, 48 V - A6- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Removing and installing battery .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



6 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ [“6.1 Exploded view - airbag \(driver side\)”, page 118](#)

⇒ [“6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters”, page 118](#)

⇒ [“6.3 Removing and installing connector at airbag”, page 122](#)

6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)

1 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ For driver side airbag igniter - N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 122](#)

2 - Steering wheel

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

3 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

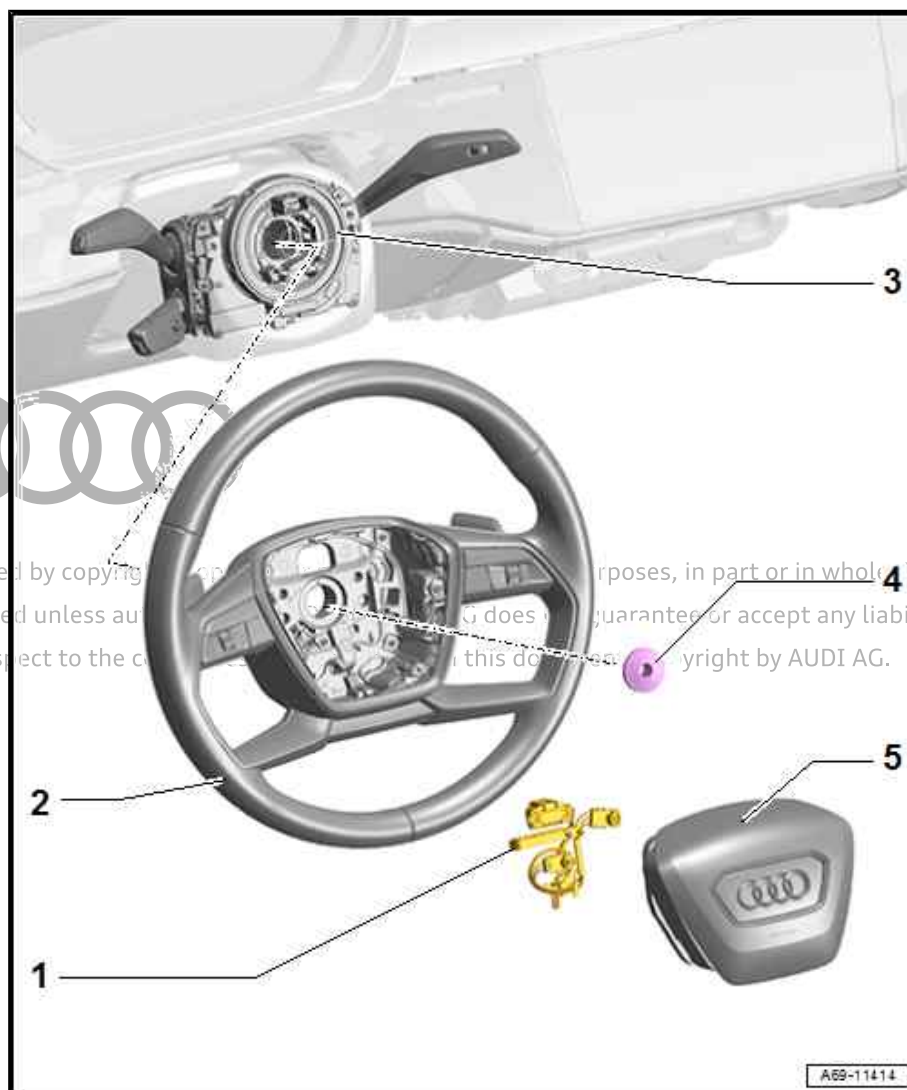
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

5 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ To release, use Torx screwdriver T15 (length approx. 80 mm)
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 118](#)



6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torx screwdriver T15, approx. 80 mm (commercially available)

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



⚠ WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.

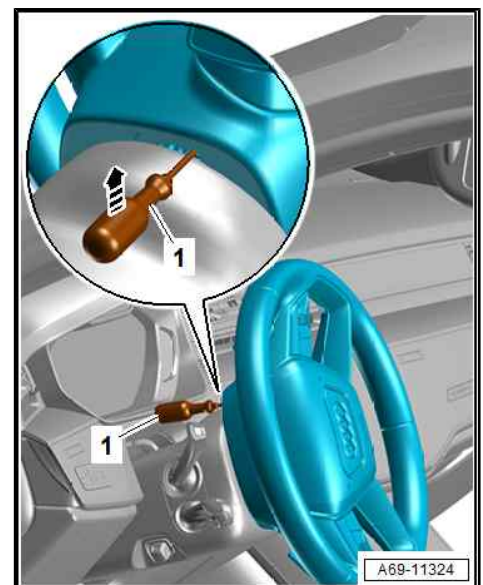
- To be able to move the steering wheel to the removal position on vehicles with control unit for electronic steering column lock - J764- , leave the ignition switched on for the following steps.
- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Turn steering wheel -1- 90° clockwise -arrow A- from straight-ahead position so that opening -arrow B- in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).



Note:

Do not use a flat-bladed screwdriver, otherwise the electrical wiring may be damaged.

- Insert a cross-head screwdriver -1- or Torx screwdriver T15 (approx. 80 mm long) as far as it will go into opening.
- Pull screwdriver firmly upwards -arrow- to release retaining clip for airbag.



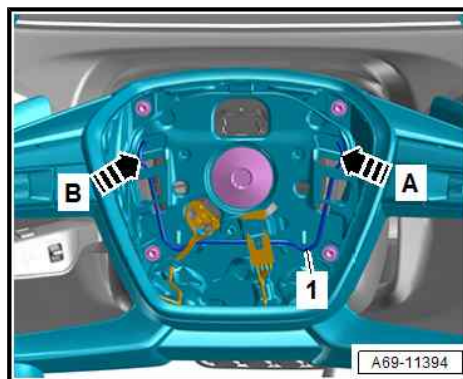


- Press down retaining clip -1- to release airbag catch -arrow B- on steering wheel (shown with airbag removed).

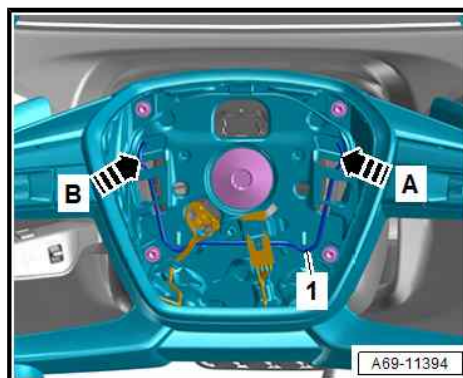
NOTICE

Risk of damage to airbag unit if force is applied.

- **Never attempt to pull out airbag unit by force.**
- If the airbag unit is not released, press it back into the steering wheel and repeat the procedure.
- Turn steering wheel -1- back approx. 180° anti-clockwise -arrow A- so that opening -arrow B- in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).



- Release second catch -arrow A- on steering wheel.
- Leave airbag unit in steering wheel initially.
- Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).



WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.



CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

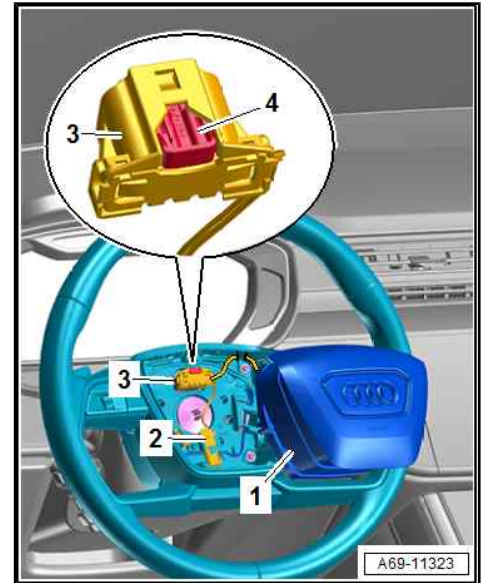
- Pull airbag -1- slightly away from steering wheel.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Pull out connector locking element -4- and unplug connector -3-.

WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered.

Risk of injury

- Set airbag down with impact cushion facing upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Take care not to trap any wires.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

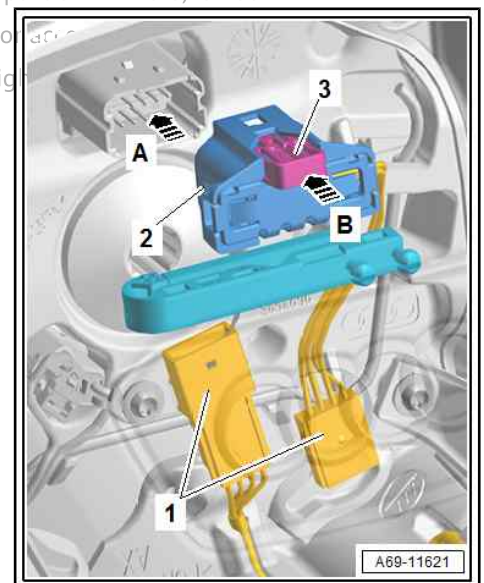
- Plug in electrical connector -1- and secure it in position by pressing it into recesses in steering wheel.
- Plug in electrical connector -2- by pushing it as far as stop onto steering column electronics control unit - J527- -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -3- -arrow B- to lock connector.
- Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.



- As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



6.3 Removing and installing connector at airbag

Removing

- Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ [page 118](#) .

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release locking element -2- for connector -1- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connectors -1, 3- at igniters -N95- and -N490- .
- Release retaining tab and unplug electrical connectors -4-.
- Disengage electrical wiring harness -2- at retainers and detach.

Installing

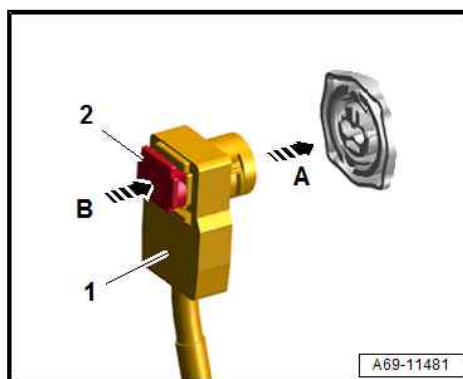
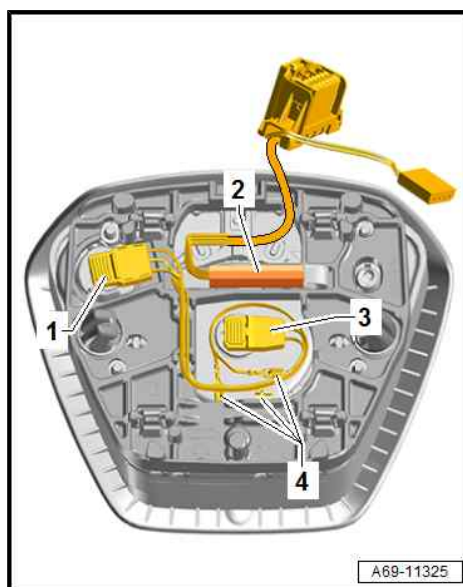
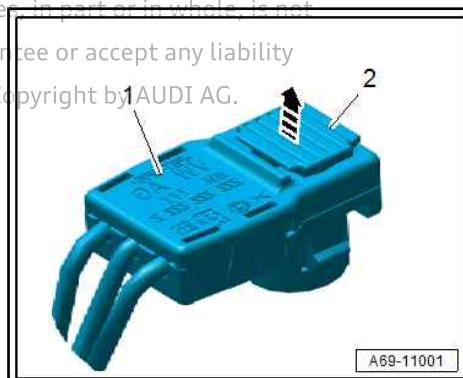
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Attach electrical connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.





7 Airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ [“7.1 Exploded view - airbag \(front passenger side\)”, page 123](#)

⇒ [“7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit \(front passenger side\) with igniters”, page 123](#)

⇒ [“7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side”, page 125](#)

7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)

1 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For NAR version with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

2 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

Protected by copyright. Copying for
personal use is permitted unless authorised by Audi AG.

3 - Front passenger airbag unit - NX3-

☐ Equipment version/rest-of-world version: can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 123](#)

4 - Bolts

- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 8 Nm

5 - Dash panel

- ☐ Renew dash panel after an airbag has been triggered
⇒ [page 205](#)

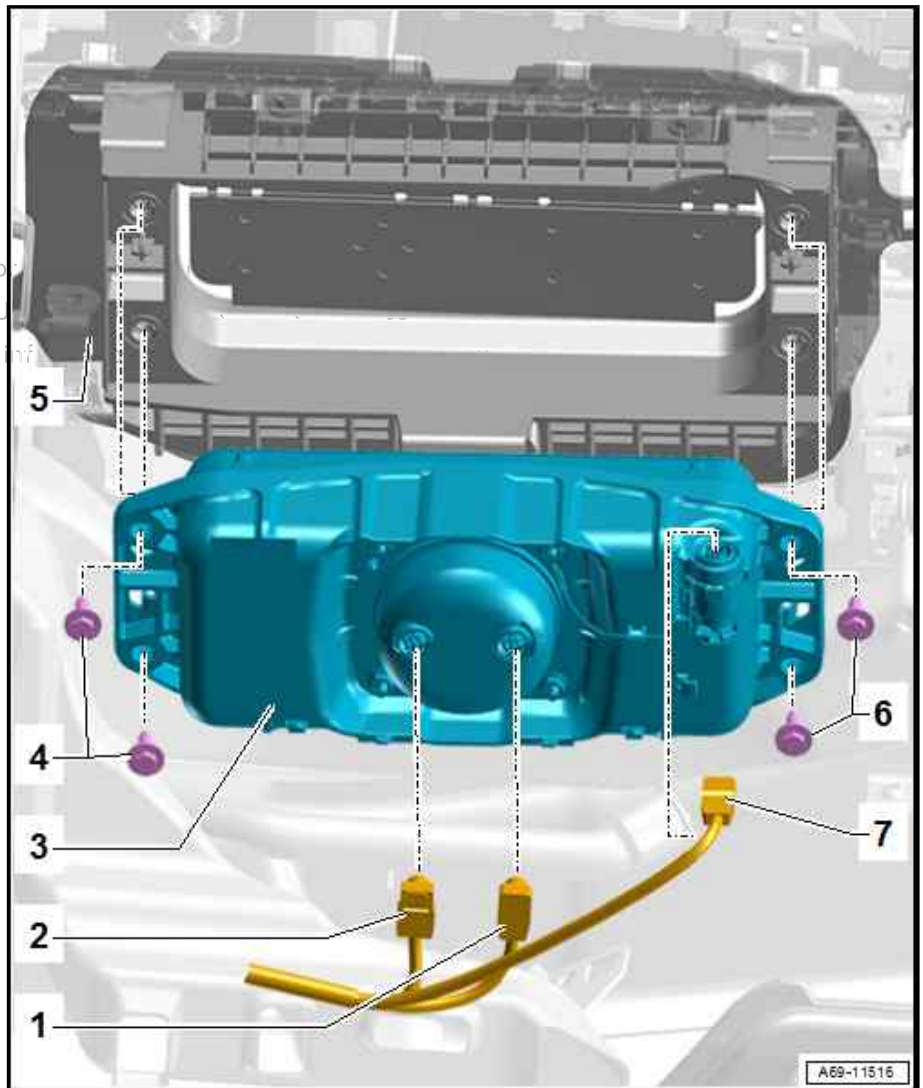
6 - Bolts

- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 8 Nm

7 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-

- ☐ Renew after airbag has been triggered ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors



7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

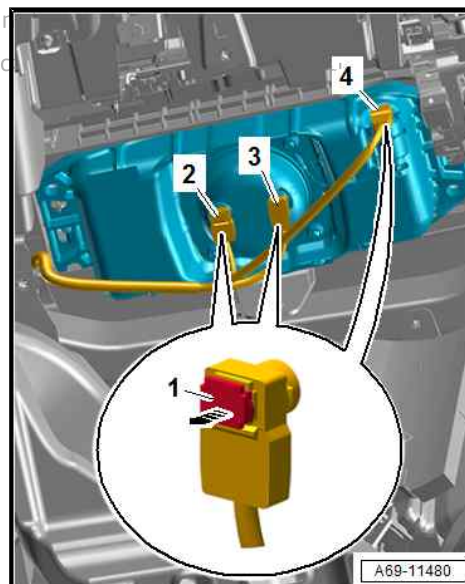
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Remove mounting for control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- and let it hang down with electrical wiring attached ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations infotainment system

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release connector locking element -1- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connectors -2, 3, 4- at igniters -N491- , -N131- and -N132- (if fitted).





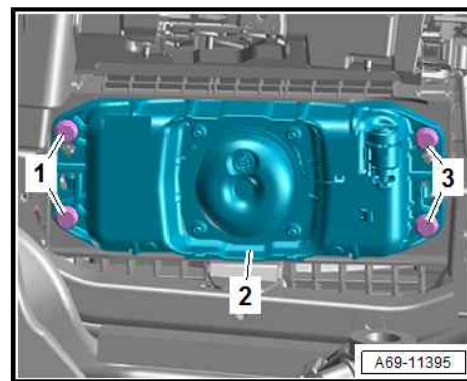
- Secure airbag to prevent it from falling.
- Remove bolts -1, 3-.
- Take out airbag -2- downwards.

! WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered.

Risk of injury

- Set airbag down with impact cushion facing upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Renew electrical connector for igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491- after airbag has been triggered
⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors .

! CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

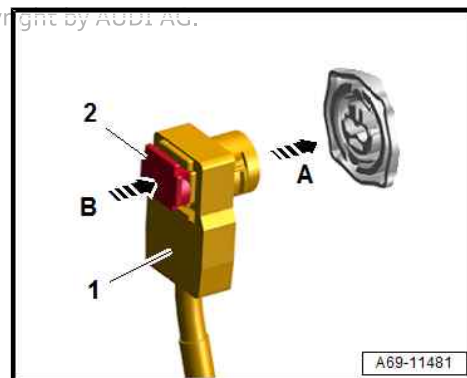
- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

! WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.



- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)", page 123** ,
⇒ **"4.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 192**

7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

- Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side)
⇒ [page 196](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



CAUTION

**It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury**

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, release retaining springs -3 and 5- and press key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- -item 4- out of housing for key-operated switch.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

**It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury**

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- Make sure that key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- engages audibly in housing.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

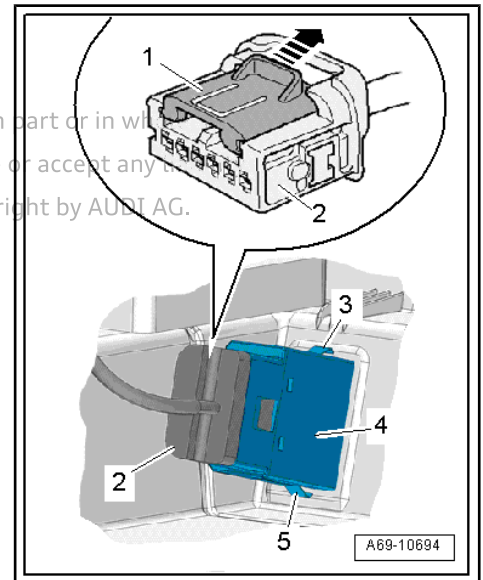
WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.

- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.





8 Side airbags

⇒ ["8.1 Exploded view - side airbag \(front\)", page 128](#)

⇒ ["8.2 Exploded view - side airbag \(rear\)", page 129](#)

⇒ ["8.3 Removing and installing side airbag \(front\) with airbag igniter", page 129](#)

⇒ ["8.4 Removing and installing side airbag \(rear\) with airbag igniter", page 131](#)

⇒ ["8.5 Removing and installing wire for side airbag \(front\)", page 134](#)

8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Side airbag (front)

☐ with

◆ Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-

◆ Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 129](#)

3 - Electrical wire

☐ Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point

☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 134](#)

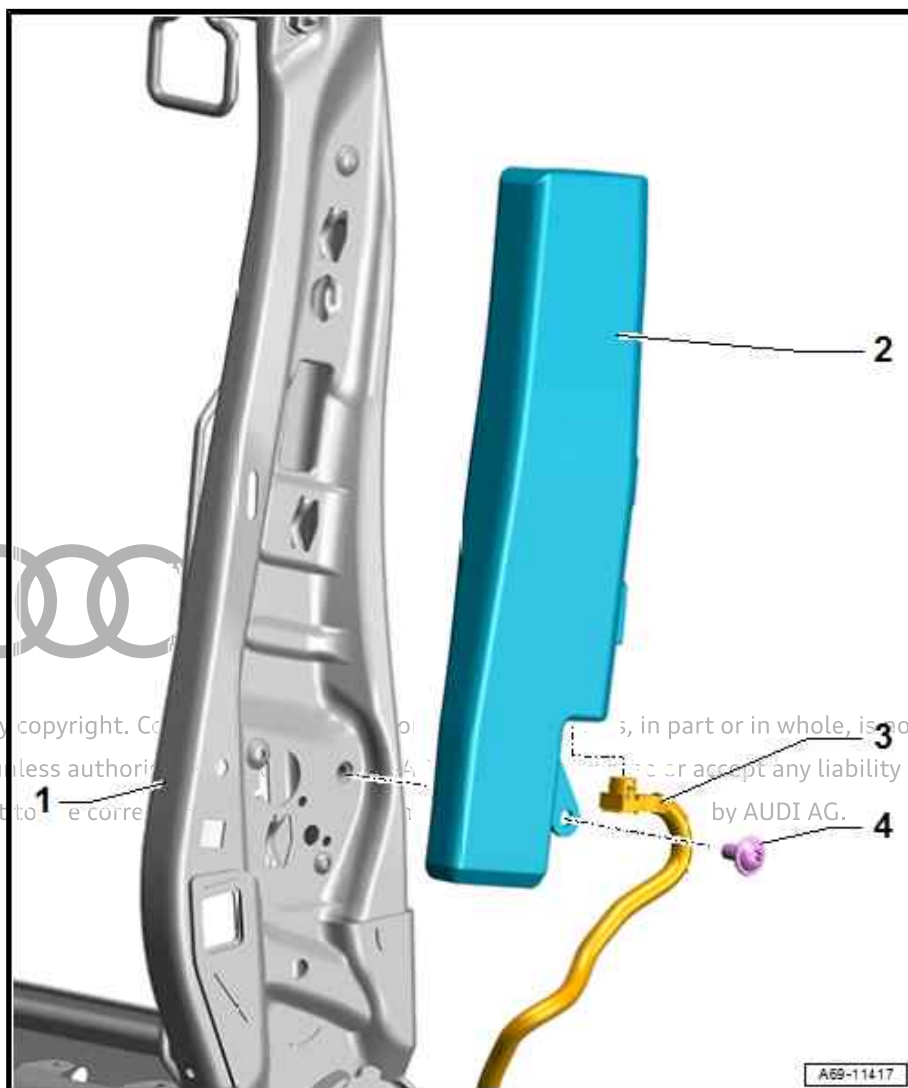
4 - Bolt

☐ Renew after removing

☐ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap

☐ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

☐ 10 Nm





8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)

1 - Side airbag (rear)

- ☐ with

- ◆ Rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ◆ Rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 131](#)

2 - Side padding

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 131](#)

3 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For:

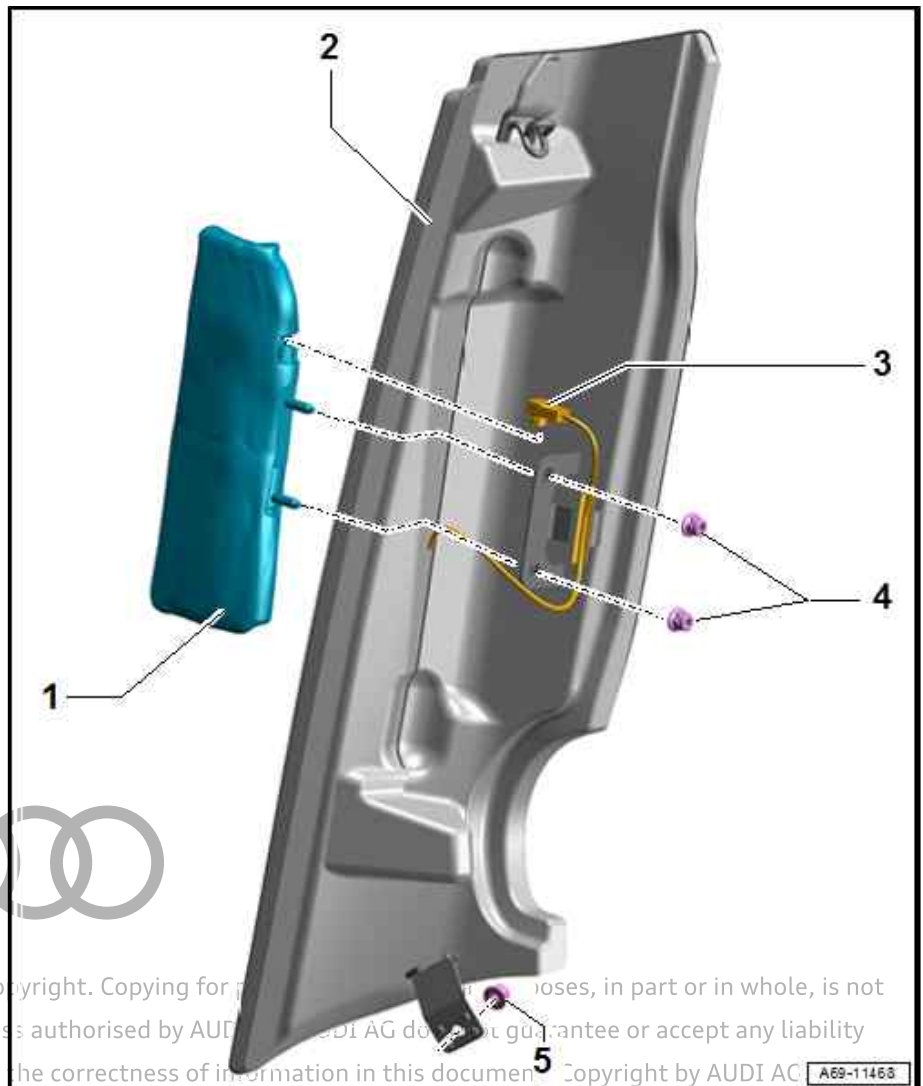
- ◆ Rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ◆ Rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-

4 - Nuts

- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 6 Nm

5 - Nut

- ☐ Tightening torque ⇒
General body repairs,
seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Cov-
ers and padding on rear
seats; Exploded view -
cover and padding



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG A69-11463

8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#).



WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

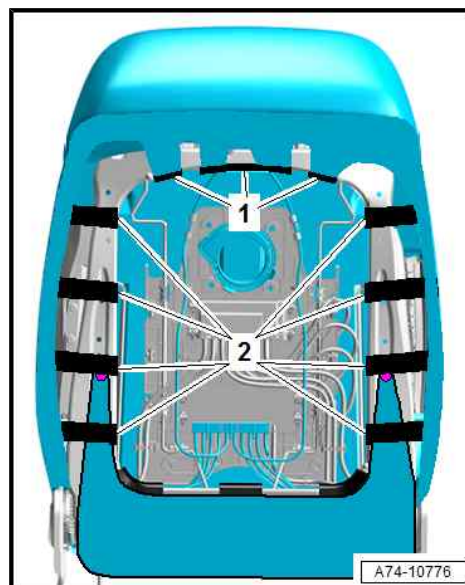
- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing backrest cover panel .

Note:

Remove backrest padding in area of side airbag (sill side) only until side airbag is easily accessible.

- Standard/sports seat: Remove cover and padding from backrest and move clear ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on front seats; Removing and installing backrest cover and padding .
- Convenience seat: Disengage rubber tabs -2- from outer backrest frame in vicinity of side airbag (sill side).



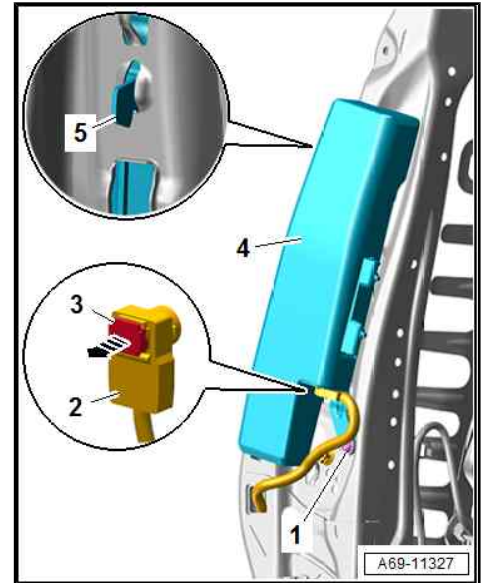


- Press backrest padding (sill side) to the side in vicinity of side airbag.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release connector locking element -3- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -2- at igniter for side airbag.
- In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover and padding forwards as far as possible.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Disengage side airbag -4- with hook -5- from outer backrest frame.
- Remove side airbag downwards from pouch (stitched into cover).



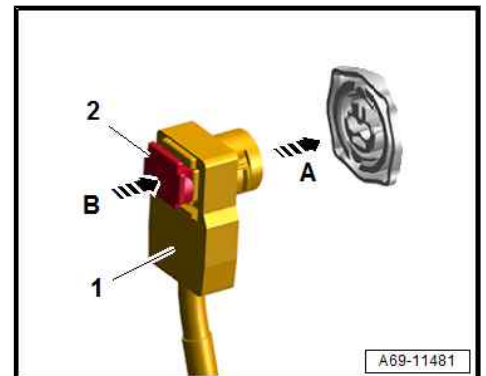
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

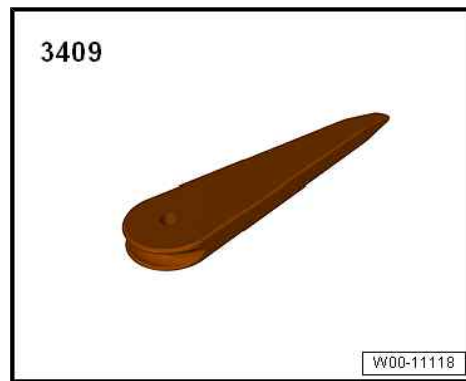
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["8.1 Exploded view - side airbag \(front\)", page 128](#)

8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



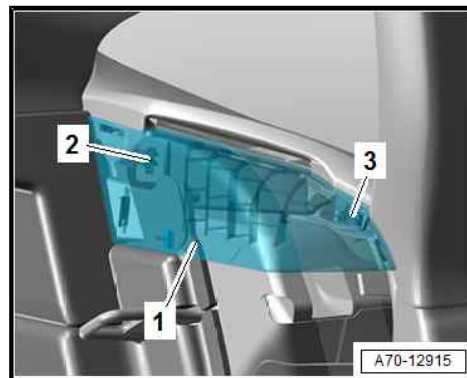
WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

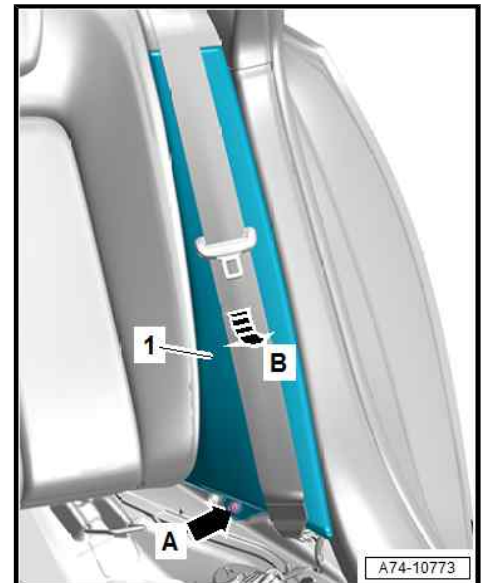
- Fold backrest forwards.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.
- Remove seat bench ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Unscrew nut -arrow A-.
- Hold belt to one side and pull side padding -1- off studs.
- Fold backrest down slightly.
- Pull side padding downwards -arrow B-, swivel forwards slightly and disengage from mounting.
- Disengage side padding from sill panel trim and detach.

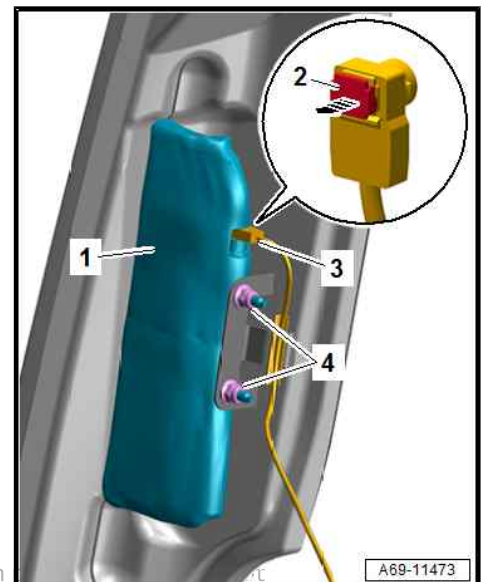


CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Release connector locking element -2- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -3- at igniter for side airbag and move wiring clear.
- Set down side padding on a soft surface.
- Remove nuts -4-.
- Take rear side airbag -1- out of mounting.
- If fitted, remove side airbag from pouch stitched into cover.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is prohibited unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

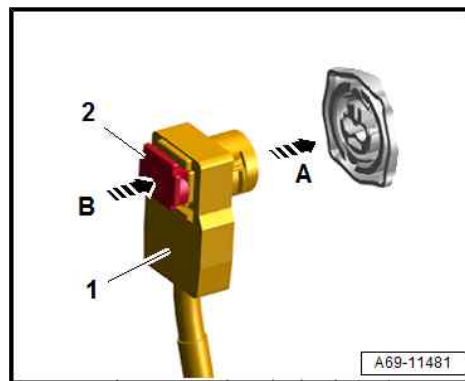
CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- **After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.**

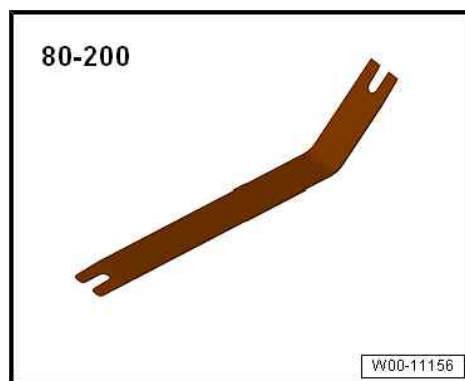
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)", page 129

8.5 Removing and installing wire for side airbag (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing backrest cover panel .
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat backrest .

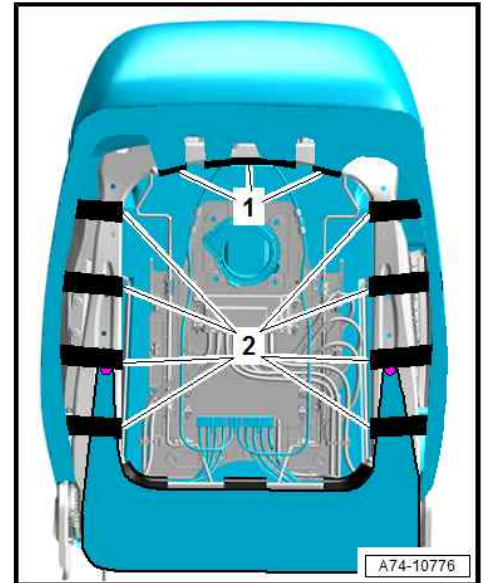
Note:

Remove backrest padding in area of side airbag (sill side) only until connector for side airbag is easily accessible.

- Standard/sports seat: Remove cover and padding from backrest and move clear ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on front seats; Removing and installing backrest cover and padding .



- Convenience seat: Disengage rubber tabs -2- from outer backrest frame in vicinity of side airbag (sill side).



- Press backrest padding (sill side) to the side in vicinity of side airbag.

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Release connector locking element -2- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.
- Unclip wire for side airbag at outer backrest frame and move clear.
- Carefully pull wire for side airbag out of outer backrest frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

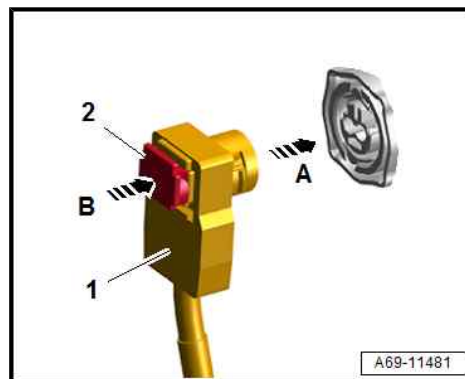
- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



Produced by Audi AG. All rights reserved. Audi AG is not responsible for any part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



9 Curtain airbags

⇒ [“9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag”, page 137](#)

⇒ [“9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter”, page 137](#)

9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ Secured to curtain airbag with securing clip
- ☐ 4.5 Nm

2 - Curtain airbag

- ☐ with
- ◆ Driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ◆ Front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 137](#)

3 - Retaining clip

- ☐ Only supplied together with
⇒ [Item 2 \(page 137\)](#)
- ☐ Remove with adjusting pliers - VAS 211 001-

4 - Coloured line

- ☐ Designed to prevent twisting
- ☐ Must be visible all along airbag after installation

5 - Clip

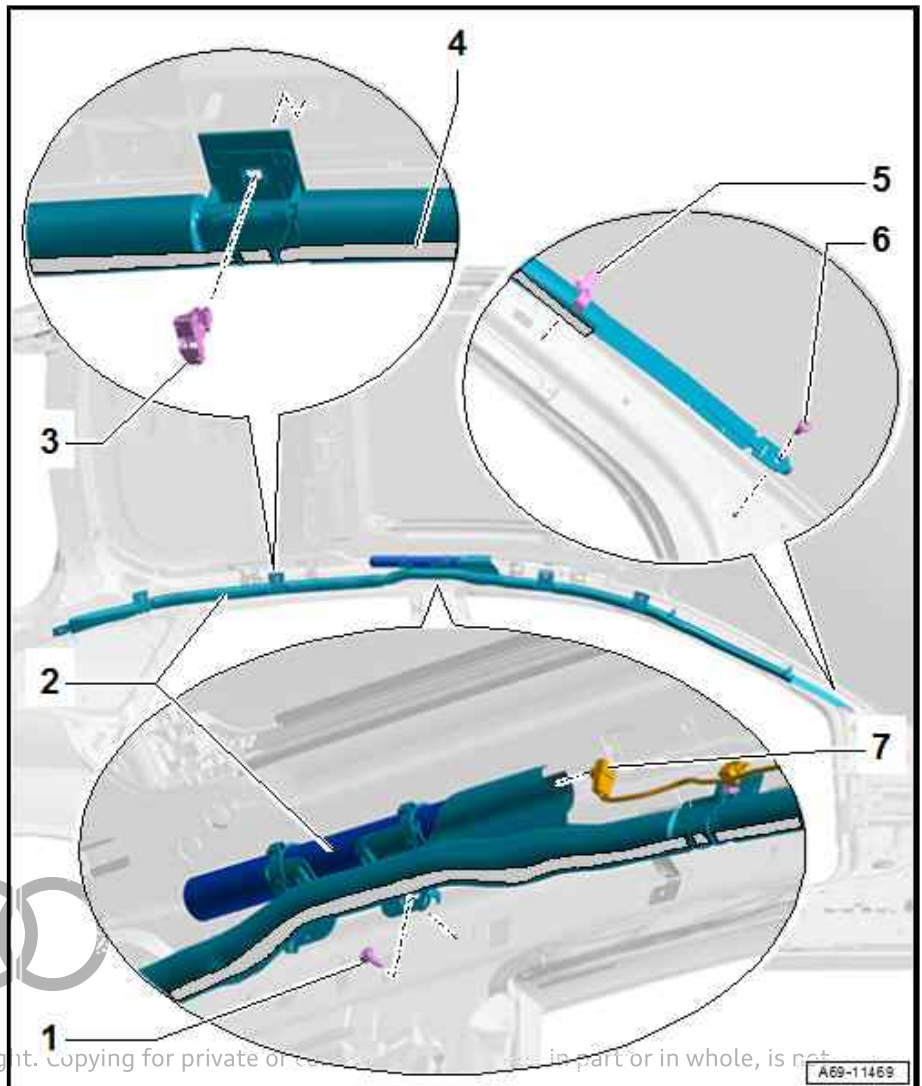
- ☐ 2x

6 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 4.5 Nm

7 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For:
 - ◆ Driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
 - ◆ Front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

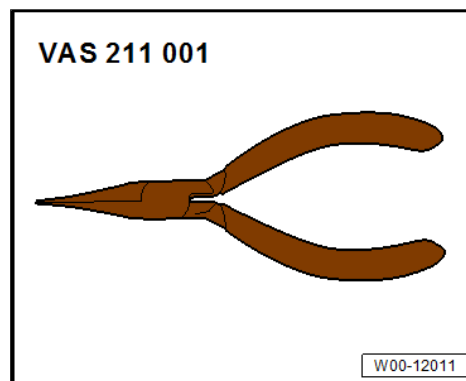


9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Adjusting pliers - VAS 211 001-



Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



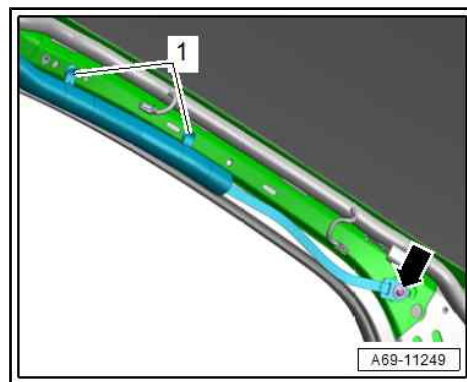
WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

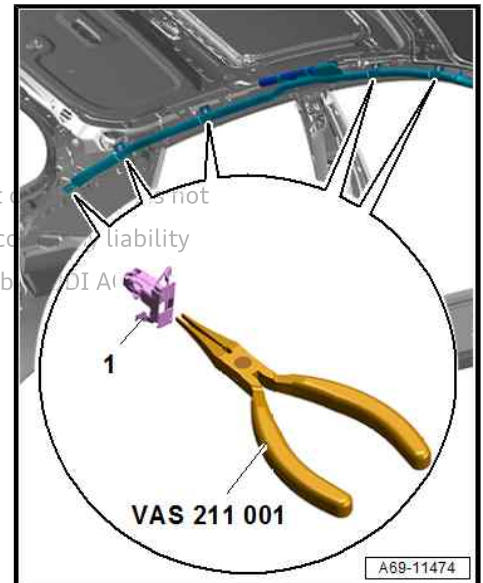
- Lower moulded headliner ⇒ [page 285](#) and lay it down on seats; headliner does not have to be removed.
- Unscrew bolt -arrow- for tether for curtain airbag from A-pillar.
- Remove clips -1- from A-pillar.





- Unclip retaining clips for curtain airbag from body using adjusting pliers - VAS 211 001- .
- To do so, insert tips of pliers in openings, compress catches of retaining clips -1- for curtain airbag and pull out retaining clips.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

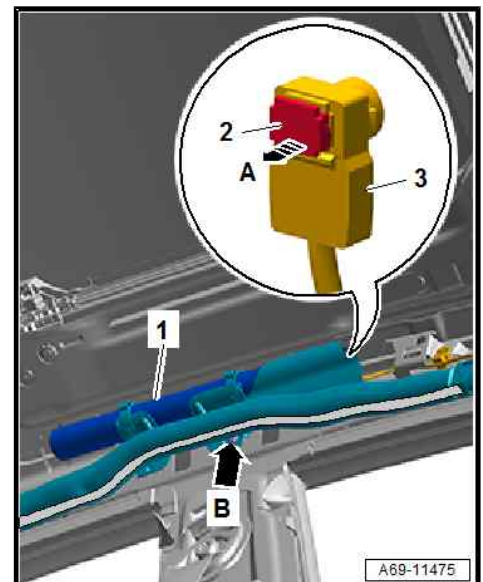
- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Release connector locking element -2- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow A-.
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.
- Unscrew bolt -arrow B- with retaining element.
- Take curtain airbag -1- out of mounting (front).
- Pull curtain airbag out of mounting on body towards front and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- After a curtain airbag has been triggered, the corresponding rear mid-range loudspeaker 2 -R340- / -R341- must be renewed ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .



⚠ CAUTION

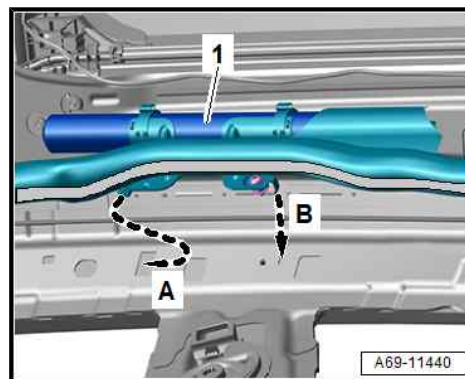
It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

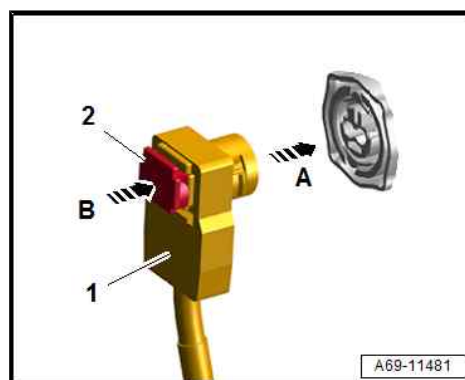
- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



- Engage curtain airbag -1- at rear in mounting on body -arrow A-.
- Engage curtain airbag at front in mounting -arrow B- and secure.



- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- Check that coloured line is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



⚠ WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.

- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag", page 137](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



10 Knee airbags

⇒ ["10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag", page 141](#)

⇒ ["10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter", page 142](#)

10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag

⇒ ["10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag \(driver side\)", page 141](#)

⇒ ["10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag \(front passenger side\)", page 142](#)

10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)

1 - Knee airbag (driver side)

- ☐ With driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 142](#)

2 - Nuts

- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 8 Nm

3 - Bracket

- ☐ For knee airbag

4 - Bolts

- ☐ 3 Nm

5 - Speed nuts

- ☐ Insert into mounting points on dash panel cross member

6 - Speed nuts

- ☐ Insert into mounting points on dash panel cross member

7 - Bolts

- ☐ 3 Nm

8 - Bracket

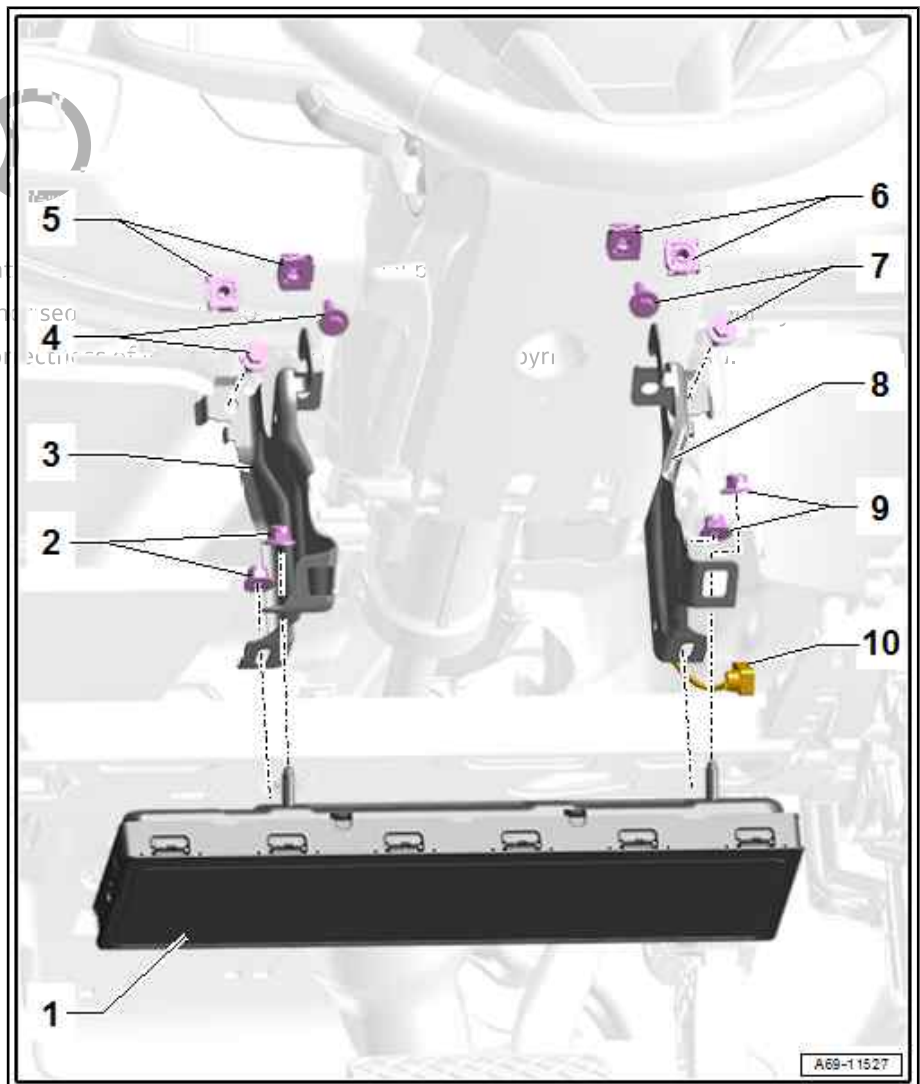
- ☐ For knee airbag

9 - Nuts

- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 8 Nm

10 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-





10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)

1 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)

- ☐ With front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 144](#)

2 - Bracket

- ☐ For knee airbag

3 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 8 Nm

4 - Insert for glove box

5 - Glove box

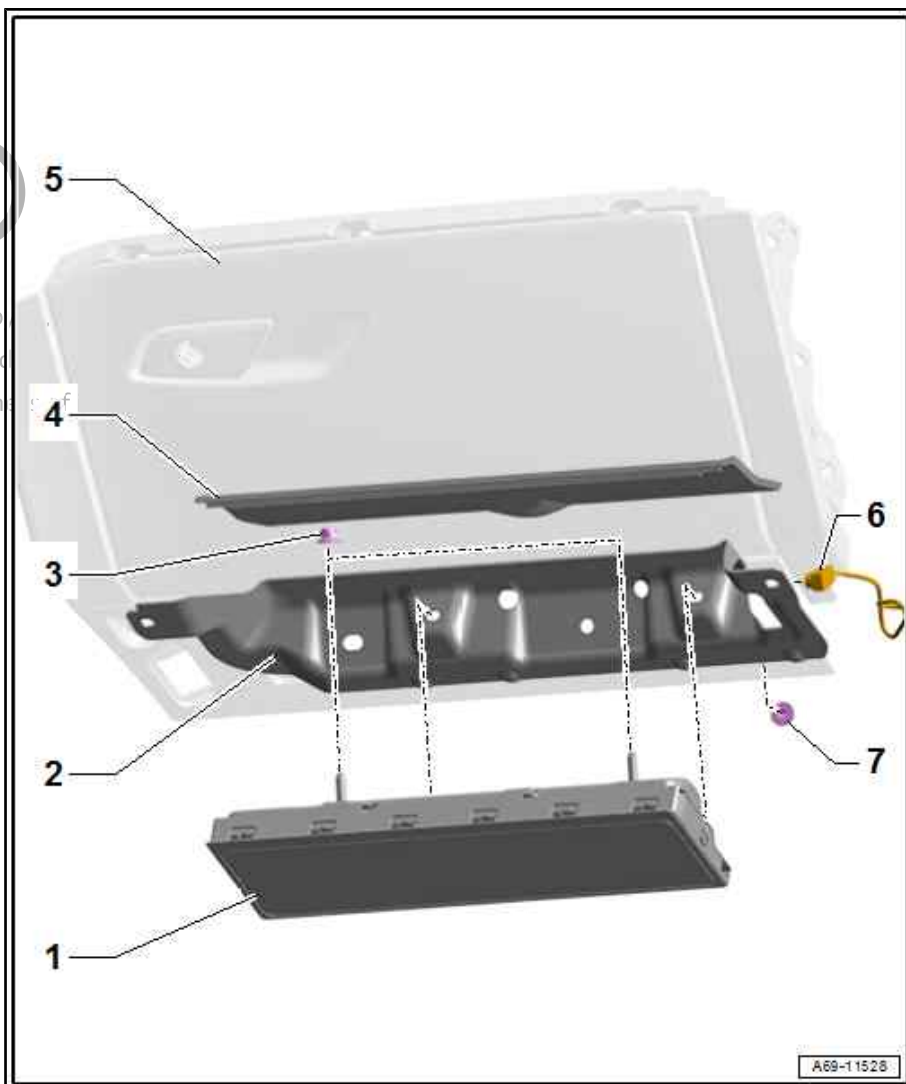
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 25](#)

6 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-

7 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ 8 Nm



10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter

⇒ ["10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter \(driver side\)", page 142](#)

⇒ ["10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter \(front passenger side\)", page 144](#)

10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



⚠ WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

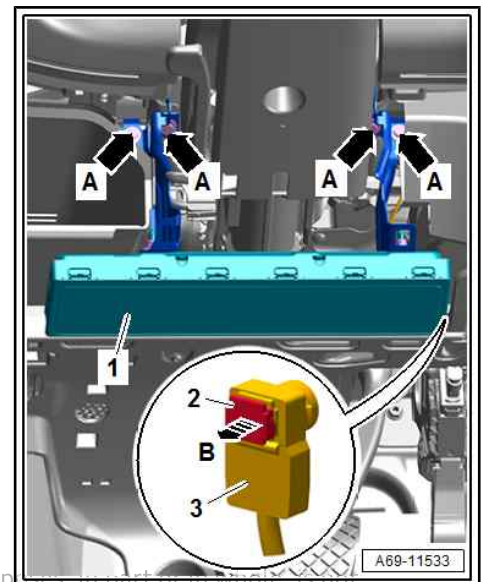
- Move steering wheel upwards and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 19](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows A-.
- Disengage knee airbag -1- with brackets from cross member.
- Detach knee airbag with brackets and carefully pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector.

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release connector locking element -2- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow B-.
- Unplug electrical connector -3- at igniter for knee airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing bracket:

- Set knee airbag down on a soft surface with impact cushion facing upwards.
- Remove nuts -arrows-.
- Detach brackets -1, 2-.

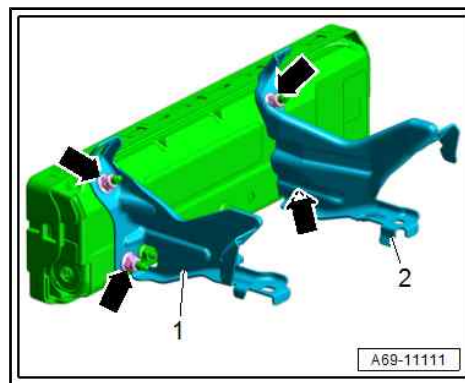


WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered.

Risk of injury

- Set airbag down with impact cushion facing upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

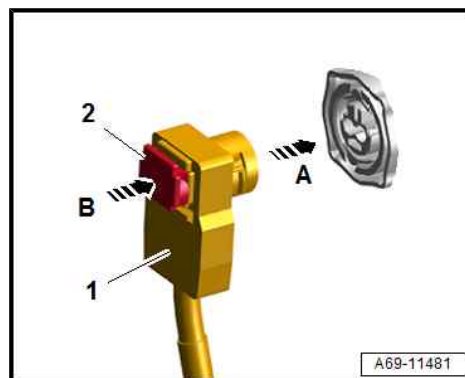
- Attach electrical connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.



NOTICE

Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.

- After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag \(driver side\)", page 141](#)

10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



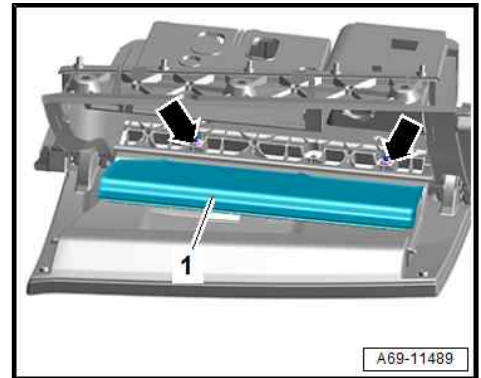
⚠ WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

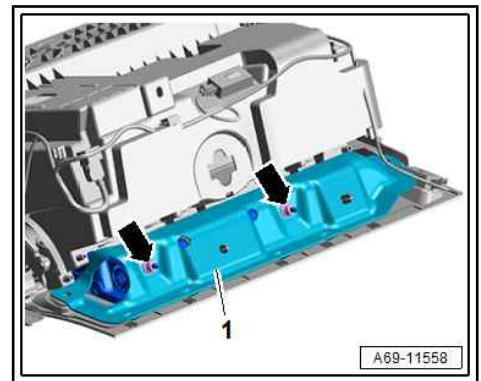
Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Open glove box lid, lift insert -1- for glove box with a flat-bladed screwdriver and remove it.
- Remove nuts -arrows-.



- Remove nuts -arrows-.
- Detach bracket -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



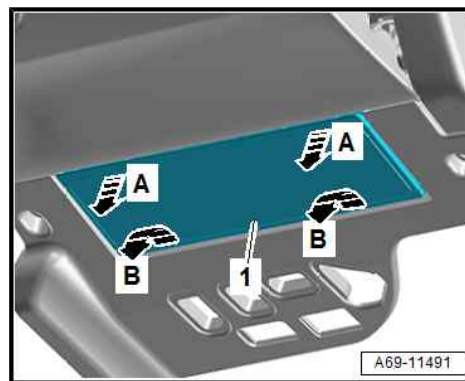
- Lower knee airbag -1- slightly and disengage it from inside of glove box -arrows A-.
- Swivel knee airbag downwards, disengage it from glove box -arrows B- and detach it.

WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered.

Risk of injury

- Set airbag down with impact cushion facing upwards.



Installing

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Install glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.

- After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag \(front passenger side\)"](#), [page 142](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability



11 Crash sensors for airbags

⇒ ["11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 147](#)

⇒ ["11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283", page 148](#)

⇒ ["11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180", page 152](#)

⇒ ["11.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256 / G257", page 154](#)

11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

1 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284-

- ☐ Fitting location
- ◆ All vehicles except RS 6: on right of connecting brace beneath headlight
- ◆ RS 6: on top right of lock carrier
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 148](#)

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ☐ Fitting location: in door
- ☐ Safety requirements
⇒ [page 6](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 152](#)
- ☐ Make sure seal is properly seated; renew crash sensor if seal is damaged or deformed
- ☐ Retaining tabs must engage audibly

4 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on passenger side - G257-

- ☐ Fitting location: behind sill panel trim
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 154](#)

5 - Bolt

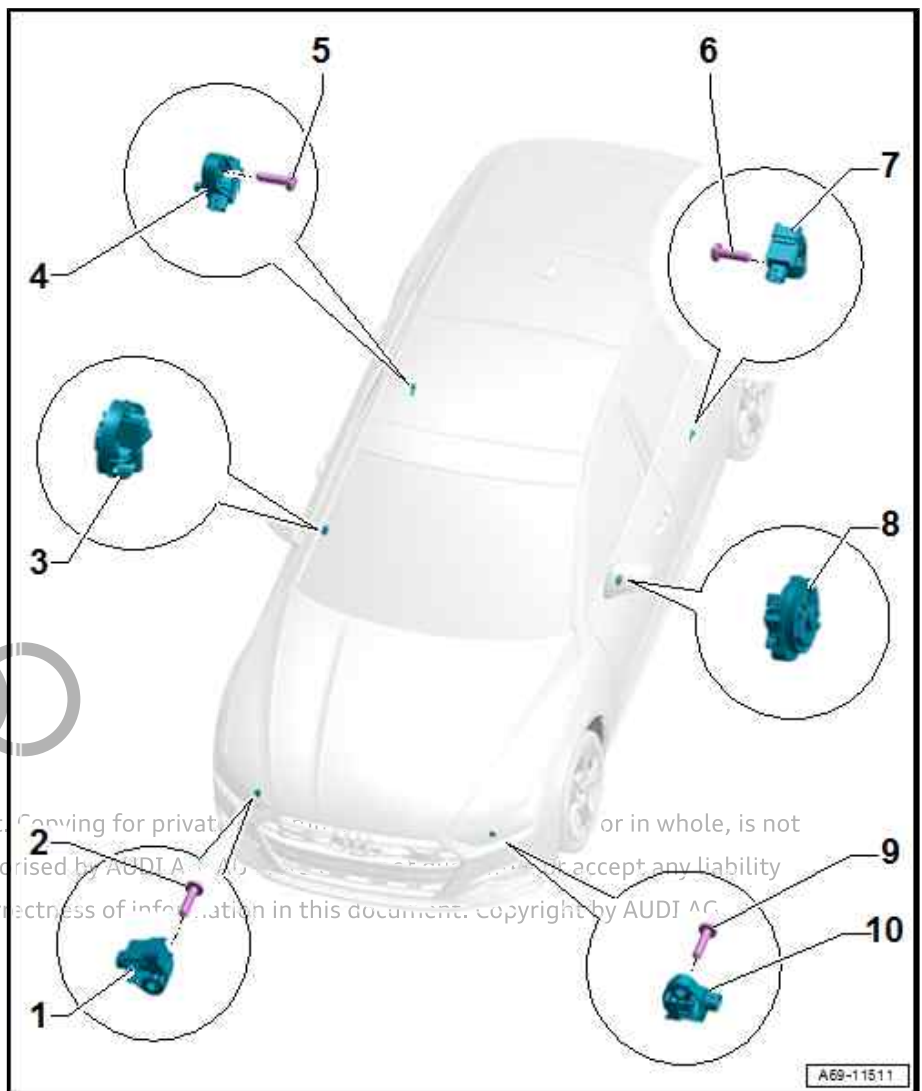
- ☐ 9 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

7 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- ☐ Fitting location: behind sill panel trim
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 154](#)





8 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ☐ Fitting location: in door
- ☐ Safety requirements ⇒ [page 6](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 152](#)
- ☐ Make sure seal is properly seated; renew crash sensor if seal is damaged or deformed
- ☐ Retaining tabs must engage audibly

9 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

10 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ☐ Fitting location
- ◆ All vehicles except RS 6: on left of connecting brace beneath headlight
- ◆ RS 6: on top left of lock carrier
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 148](#)

11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

⇒ "11.2.1 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 - all vehicles except RS 6", page 148

⇒ "11.2.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 - RS 6", page 150

11.2.1 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- - all vehicles except RS 6

The front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284- is removed and installed in the same way.

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#)
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

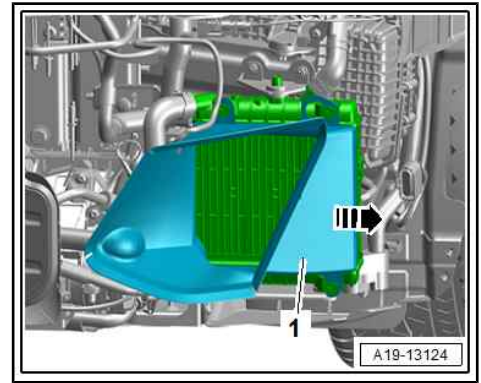
Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

- Remove air intake grille in bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Exploded view - bumper cover .



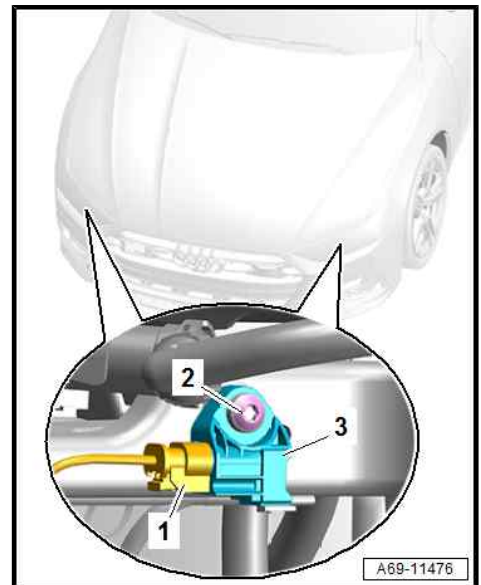
- Vehicles with 2.9 ltr. engine and auxiliary radiator: Remove bumper cover ➤ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover .
- Detach air duct -1- -arrow-.
- Vehicles with 3.0 ltr. engine and auxiliary radiator: Remove wheel housing liner (front) ➤ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front) .



⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Remove bolt -2- and detach crash sensor -3- for front airbag from lock carrier.
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.



- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

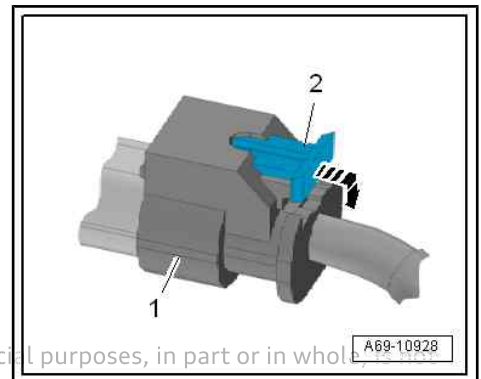
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

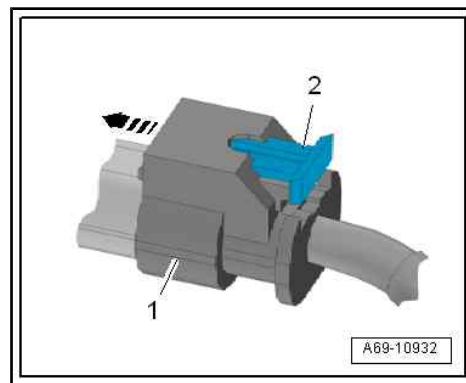
- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



! WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- **After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.**

- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

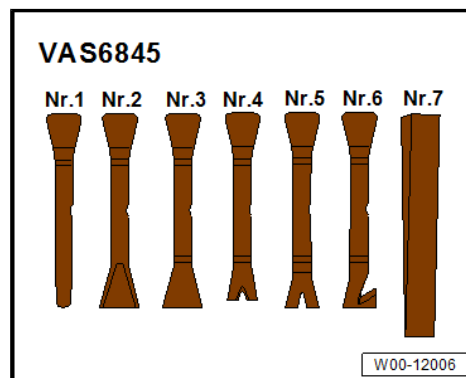
⇒ **"11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 147**

11.2.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- - RS 6

The front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284- is removed and installed in the same way.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .



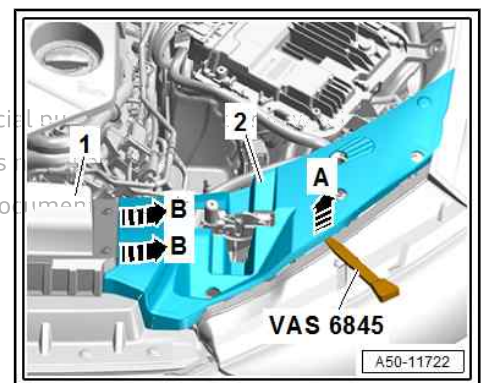
WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

- Unclip headlight cover -2- at position shown using scraper from -VAS 6845- -arrow A-.
- Carefully bend headlight cover slightly upwards and pull it out underneath lock carrier cover -1- -arrows B-.
- Carefully swivel headlight cover slightly to side.

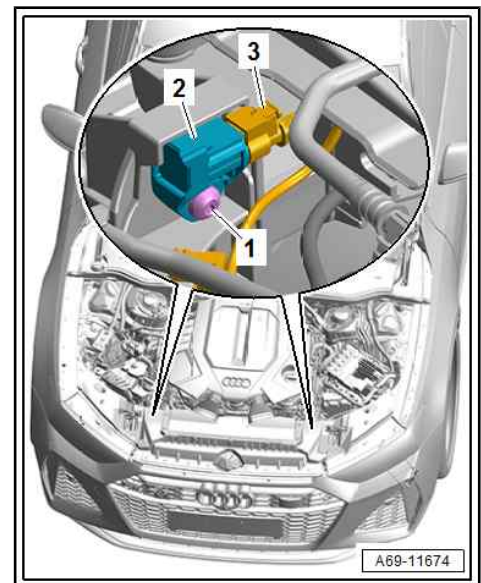


CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for front airbag from lock carrier.
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.





- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

Installing

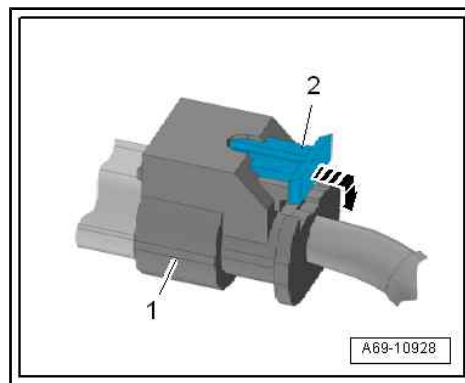
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



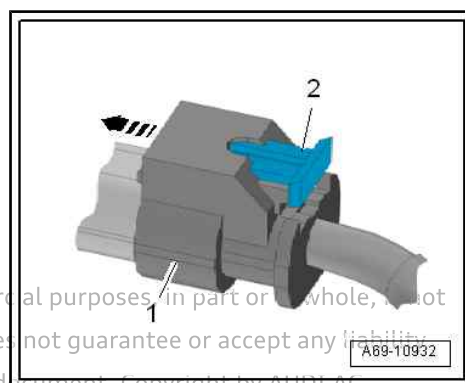
- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery → Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.



- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated → Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 147**

11.3 Removing and installing front side air-bag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ **page 1** .



⚠ WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

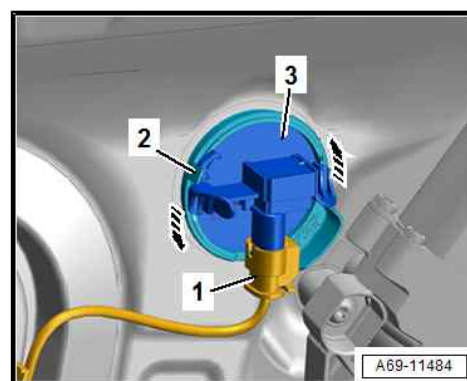
- Remove door trim (front) ⇒ [page 176](#) .

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Pull out and press down connector locking element and unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Release catch -2- and turn crash sensor -3- approx. 45° in anti-clockwise direction -arrows-.
- Disengage crash sensor for side airbag from door and detach.



Installing

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of crash sensor (pressure sensor) malfunction caused by leaks.

- Make sure that door is properly sealed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with

⚠ CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Engage crash sensor for side airbag in door.
- Turn locking mechanism for crash sensor in clockwise direction.
- Retaining tabs must engage audibly.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



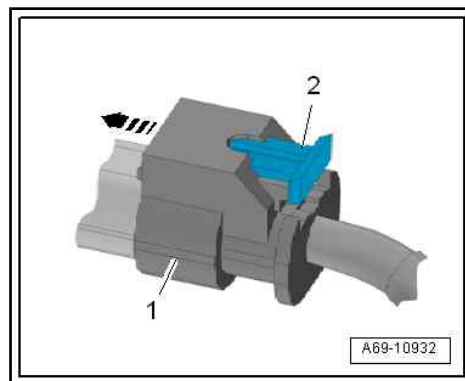
- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

! WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.



- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

11.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor -G256- / -G257-

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .

! WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

Risk of injury

- Check whether airbag warning lamp is on or is flashing.
- If airbag warning lamp is on or flashing, event memory must be read out.
- If event memory shows entry »Short to positive«, battery must be disconnected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Always follow instructions in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester if there is an entry in the event memory.
- If airbag warning lamp does not light up or flash or if there is no event memory entry »Short to positive«, switch off ignition and wait 10 seconds with ignition key outside vehicle.

- Remove sill panel trim ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Fold open insulating mat above crash sensor.

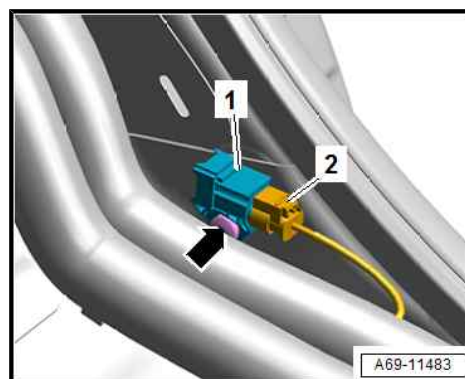
! CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

- Remove bolt -arrow- and detach crash sensor -1- for side airbag from body.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.





- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

Installing

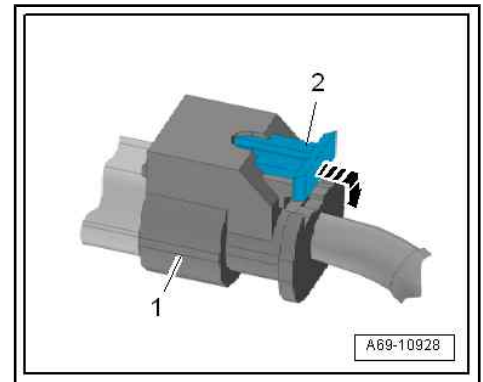
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

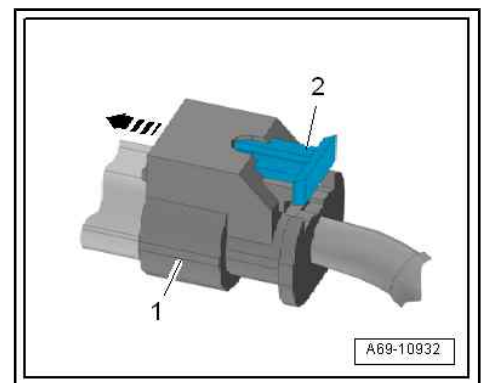
It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If battery was disconnected, observe measures required after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



WARNING

Risk of airbag being triggered

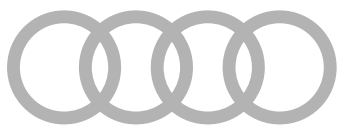
Risk of injury

- After assembly, you may only switch on the ignition (using key or button) when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.

- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 147](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



12 Seat position sensor

⇒ "12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor", page 156

⇒ "12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor",
page 156

12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor

1 - Wiring harness

- ☐ Seat position sensor/
seat occupied sensor/
belt switch
- ☐ Clipped into seat pan
- ☐ Black connector, con-
nector point in vehicle
floor under seat
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ "12.2 Removing and
installing seat position
sensor", page 156

2 - Seat occupied sensor on front passenger side - G128-

- ☐ Passenger side only
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ page 159
- ☐ Press into seat pan until
it engages audibly

3 - Plug-in connector

- ☐ For belt buckle

4 - Seat rail

- ☐ Tunnel side

5 - Seat position sensor

- ◆ Driver side seat position
sensor - G553-

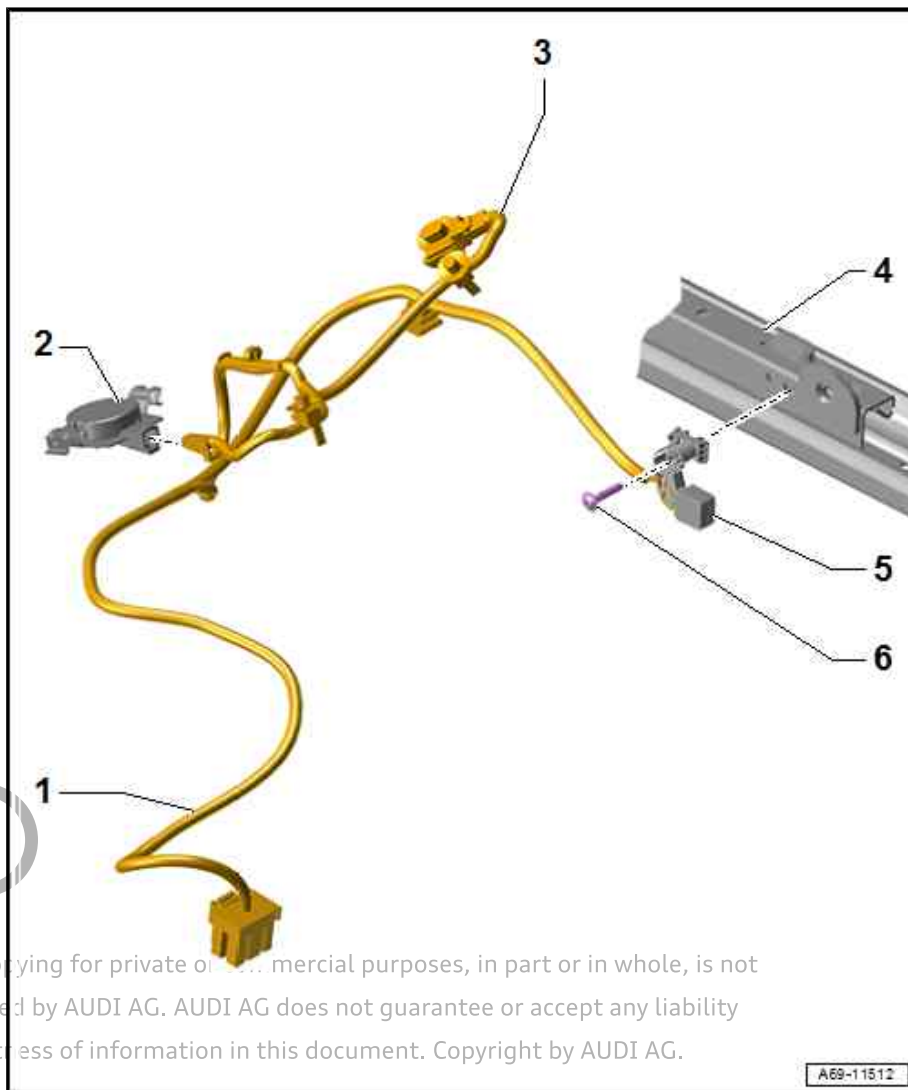
- ◆ Front passenger side seat
position sensor - G554-

- ☐ Shown for passenger
side
- ☐ Removing and instal-
ling, adjusting
⇒ page 156

- ☐ Checking ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.6 Nm



12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

Replacement seat position sensors are available with wiring harness and electrical connector. The following wires with connectors are incorporated into the wiring harness:

- ◆ Driver side seat position sensor - G553- : wire with connector for belt buckle coupling



- ◆ Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554- : wire with connector for belt buckle coupling, seat occupied sensor and seat occupied recognition control unit (country-specific version)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Setting gauge - 3371- or

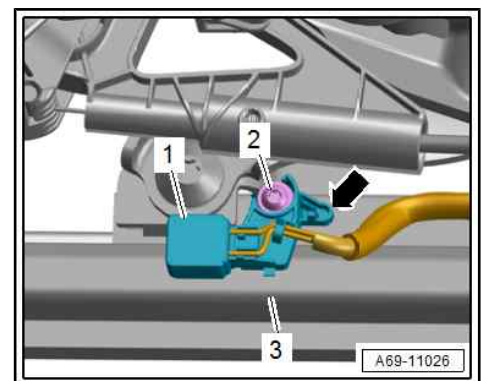


- ◆ Setting gauge - VAS 6448-



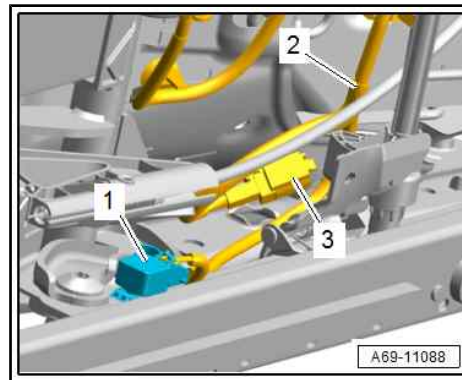
Removing

- Disconnect modular wire routing ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72; Front seats; Dismantling and assembling seat pan .
- Open up corrugated tube, take out wire for seat position sensor -G553- / -G554- together with electrical connector and move clear.
- Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring from lower seat pan frame.
- Unscrew bolt -2- and unclip and disengage seat position sensor -1- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.



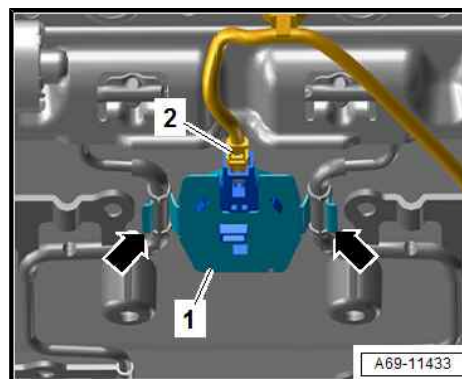


- Move clear and unplug electrical connector -3- for belt buckle.
- Detach seat position sensor -1- with wires -2-.



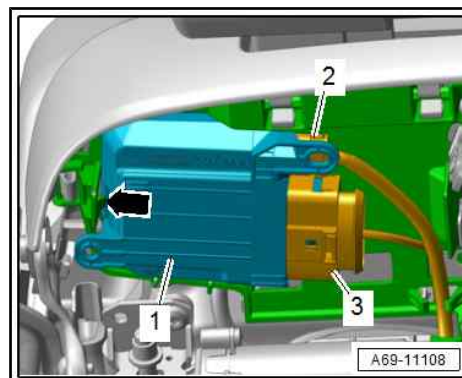
Front passenger seat - rest-of-world vehicles:

- Unplug electrical connector -2- at seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128- -item 1-.



Front passenger seat - NAR vehicles:

- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector -2- at control unit.



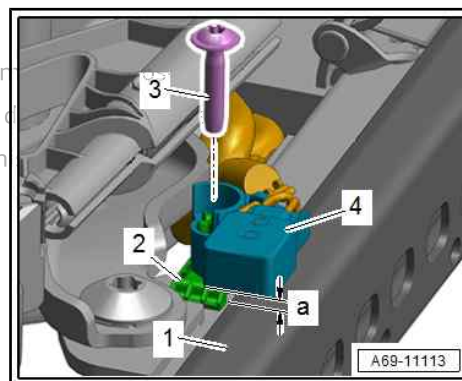
Installing and adjusting

- Hook retainer -2- into seat rail (top) and clip in.
- Slide seat position sensor -4- onto retainer and position at distance -a- = 4.0 mm from seat rail (bottom) -1-.
- To do so, place setting gauge - 3371- / 4 mm or -VAS 6448- / 4 mm between seat position sensor and seat rail (bottom), and tighten bolt -3-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

- Checking seat position sensor ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor", page 156](#)





13 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ ["13.1 Exploded view - seat occupied sensor", page 159](#)

⇒ ["13.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor on front passenger side G128", page 159](#)

⇒ ["13.3 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor \(rear\) G177 / G178 / G1010", page 160](#)

13.1 Exploded view - seat occupied sensor

1 - Seat occupied sensor on front passenger side - G128-

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 159](#)
- ❑ Clip into seat frame so that it engages audibly

2 - Rear seat occupied sensor on passenger side - G178-

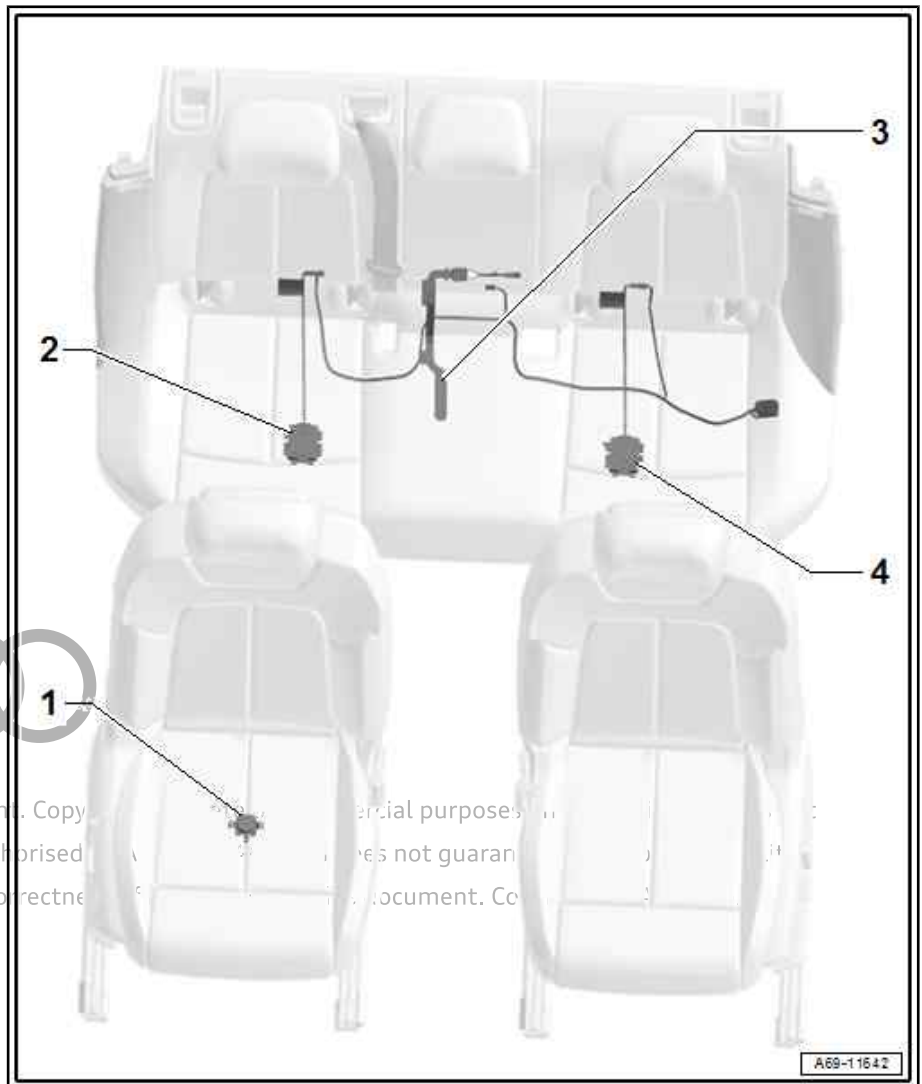
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 160](#)
- ❑ Clip into seat frame so that it engages audibly

3 - Rear seat occupied sensor, centre - G1010-

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 160](#)
- ❑ Seat-occupied sensor is bonded onto padding

4 - Rear seat occupied sensor on driver side - G177-

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 160](#)
- ❑ Clip into seat frame so that it engages audibly



13.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor on front passenger side - G128-

Note:

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

Removing

- Move passenger seat to highest, rearmost position.

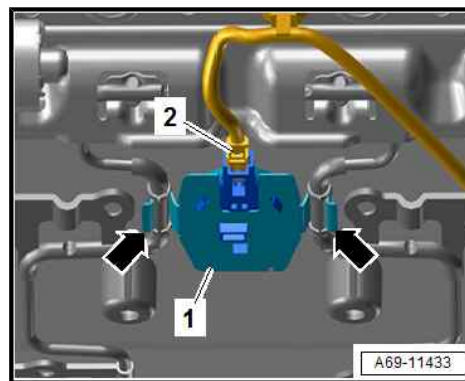


- Unplug electrical connector -2- for seat occupied sensor.
- Unclip mounting from seat pan -arrows-, press seat padding upwards slightly and detach seat occupied sensor -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



13.3 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (rear) -G177- / -G178- / -G1010-

Removing

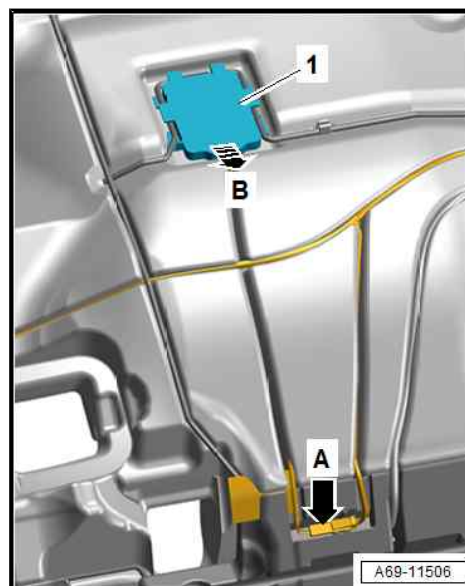
- Remove seat bench ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats .
- Set down seat bench on a clean surface.

Outer seat occupied sensor:

- Move electrical connector -arrow A- for seat occupied sensor clear and unplug.
- Unclip seat occupied sensor -1- from seat frame -arrow B- and detach.

Seat occupied sensor (centre):

- Remove seat bench cover and padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Removing and installing cover and padding .
- Separate seat bench cover and padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Separating cover and padding .

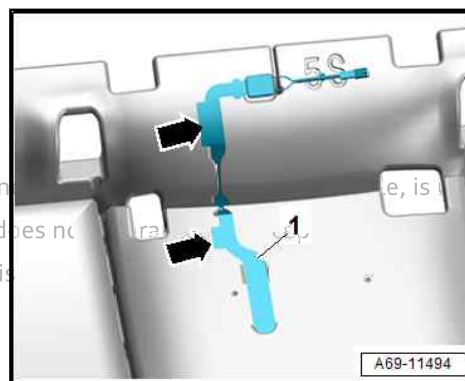


- Unplug electrical connector for seat occupied sensor.
- Carefully unfasten seat occupied sensor -1- from adhesive -arrows- on padding and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.





14 Seat occupied recognition system

⇒ ["14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system", page 161](#)

⇒ ["14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor", page 162](#)

14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system

1 - Wiring harness

- ☐ Seat position sensor/ seat occupied sensor/ belt switch
- ☐ Only supplied together with
⇒ [Item 8 \(page 162\)](#)
- ☐ Clip into seat pan
- ☐ Black connector, connector point in vehicle floor under seat
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor", page 156](#)

2 - Wiring harness

- ☐ For seat heating element with seat occupied sensor
- ☐ Only supplied together with
⇒ [Item 6 \(page 161\)](#)
- ☐ Clip into seat pan
- ☐ Connector point in vehicle floor under seat
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor", page 162](#)

3 - Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 162](#)

4 - Bolt

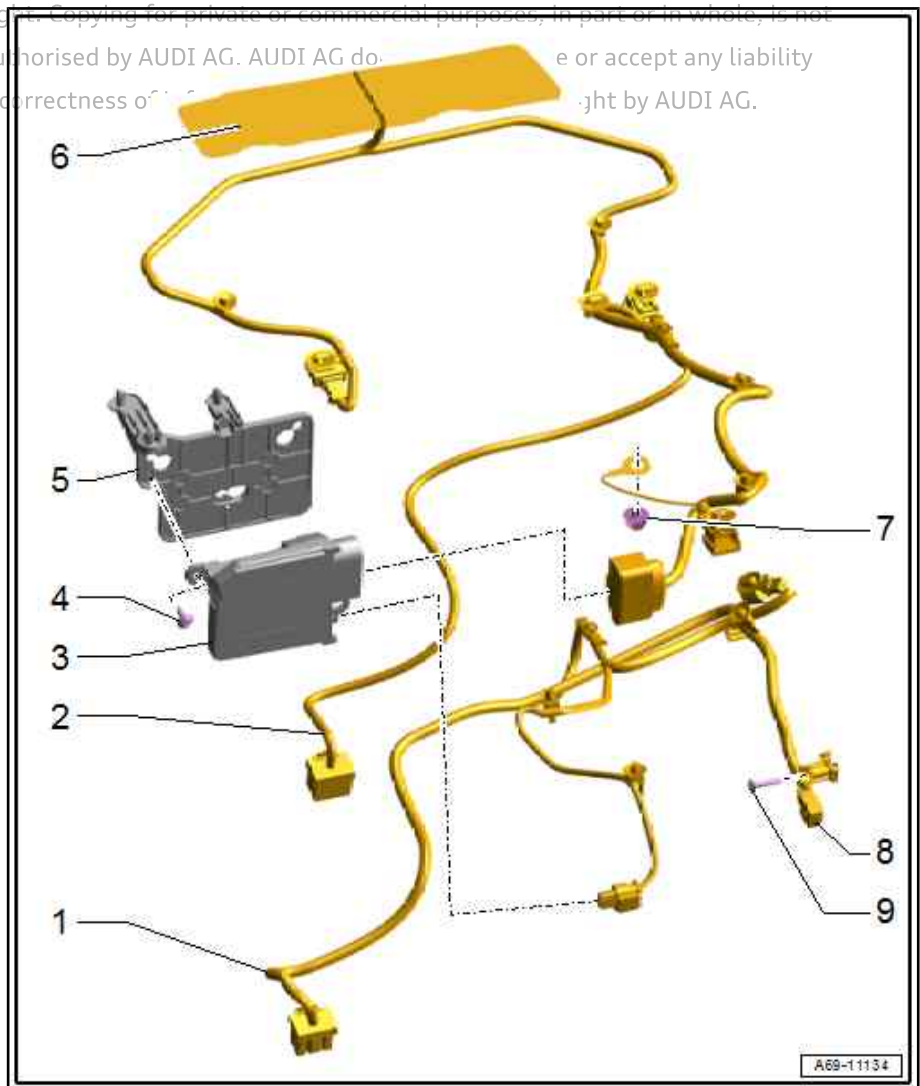
- ☐ Different versions
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

5 - Retainer for control unit

- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Clip into seat pan

6 - Heating element with seat occupied recognition, front passenger side - ZX14-

- ☐ with
- ◆ Heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ◆ Seat occupied sensor on front passenger side - G128-





- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Only available together with padding and ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 161\)](#)
- ☐ Seat occupied sensor is bonded onto padding
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 162](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Nut

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

8 - Seat position sensor

- ◆ Driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ◆ Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
 - ☐ Only supplied together with ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 161\)](#)
 - ☐ Shown for passenger side
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 156](#)
 - ☐ Checking ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

9 - Bolt

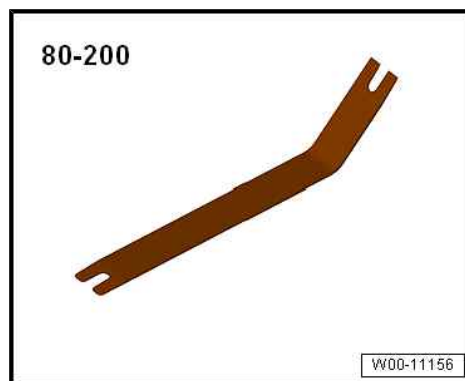
- ☐ Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 156\)](#)

14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor

- ◆ The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger seat.
- ◆ All components of the service kit for the seat occupied recognition system must always be installed.
- ◆ In other words, the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- and the padding with seat occupied sensor from the service kit for the seat occupied recognition system complement each other and must therefore always be installed together.
- ◆ It is not permitted to exchange either the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- or the padding with seat occupied sensor for a similar component for a different vehicle.
- ◆ Components included in service kit ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

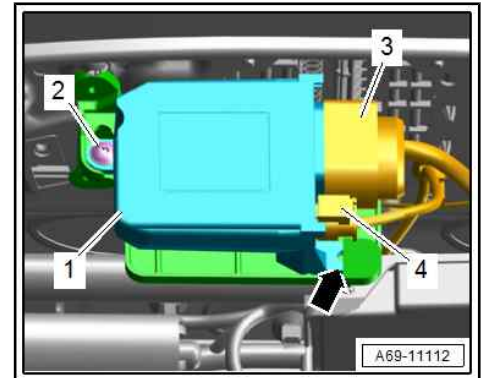
- Remove front passenger seat ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat .



- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Attaching front seat to seat repair stand .
- Remove backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat backrest .
- If fitted, remove control unit for seat functions ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components .
- If fitted, remove compressor for pneumatic seat ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seat pneumatic system; Exploded view - pneumatic system .

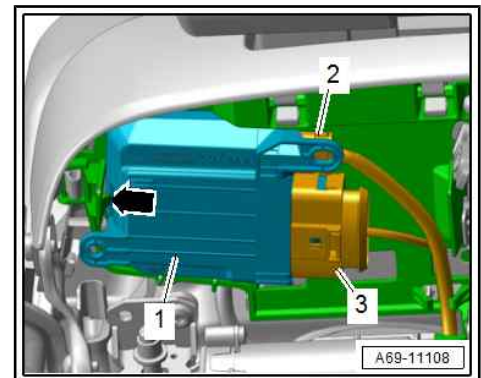
Standard seat/sports seat/super sports seat:

- Remove bolt -2-.
- Disengage control unit -1- from retainer -arrow-.
- Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -3 and 4- at control unit.



Convenience seat:

- Release control unit from fastener -arrow-.
- Disengage control unit -1- from bracket.
- Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -2 and 3- at control unit.
- Move electrical wiring clear.
- Remove bracket for trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Exploded view - seat pan .





All seats (continued):

- Disconnect modular wiring ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Exploded view - front seat .
- Open up corrugated tube and move wiring clear.
- Remove nut -arrow A- and move wiring clear.
- Unplug electrical connectors -arrows B- and move wiring clear.
- Unclip wiring harness from seat pan and move clear.
- Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on front seats; Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding .
- If necessary, separate seat pan cover and padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on front seats; Separating seat pan cover and padding .

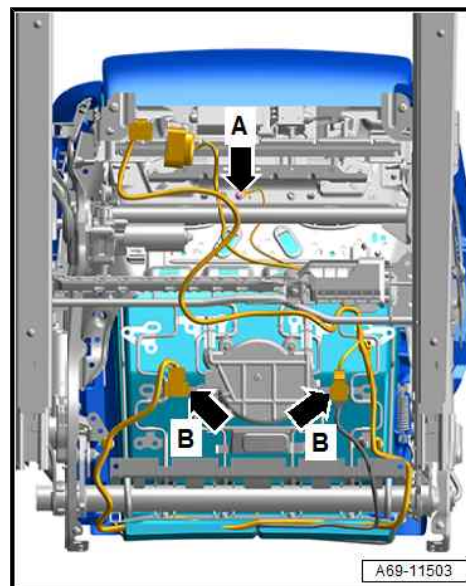
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- The basic setting of the seat occupied recognition control unit has to be performed when a new service kit is installed
⇒ [page 6](#) .
- Finally, select “Airbag” function in “Guided Fault Finding” mode using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 161](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



15 Pedestrian protection

⇒ ["15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection", page 165](#)

⇒ ["15.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection G570 / G571", page 167](#)

⇒ ["15.3 Removing and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection G579", page 168](#)

⇒ ["15.4 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693", page 169](#)

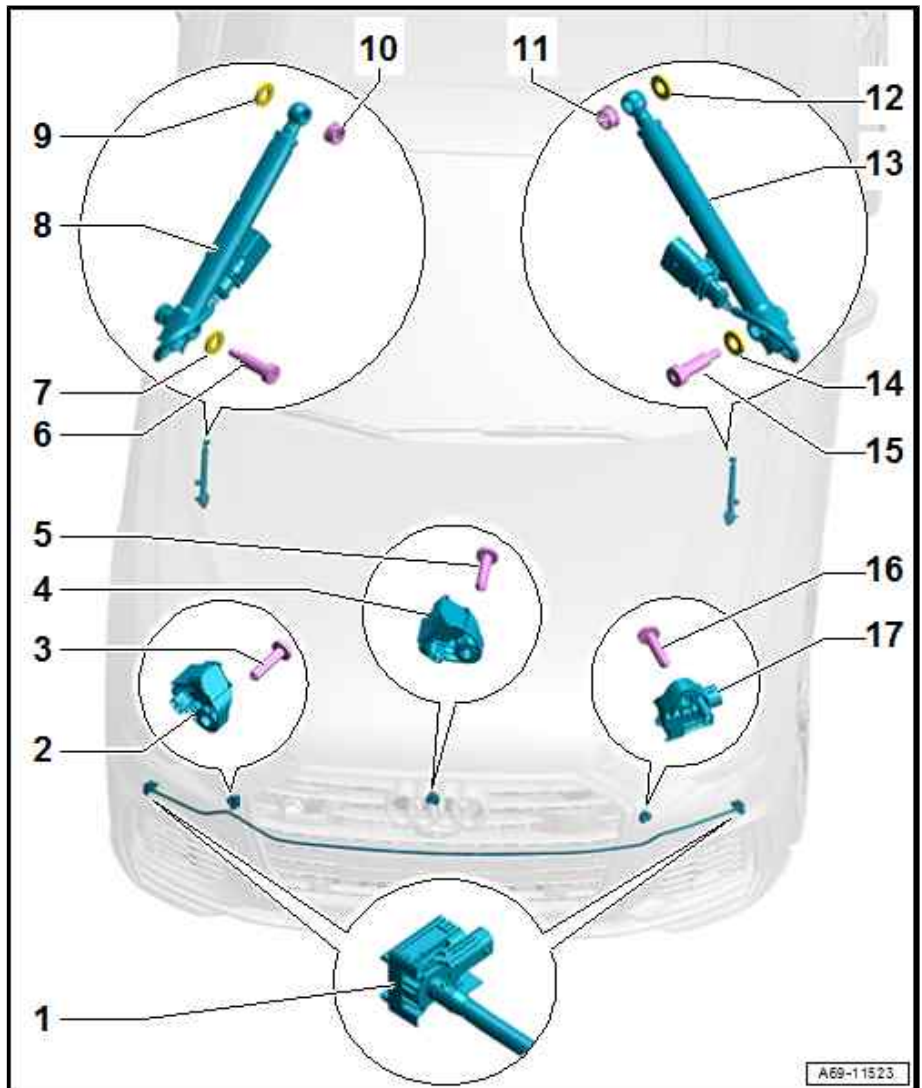
⇒ ["15.5 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered", page 170](#)

⇒ ["15.6 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599", page 170](#)

15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection

1 - Front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579-

- ◆ LHD vehicles, left side (as seen in direction of travel): driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851-
- ◆ LHD vehicles, right side (as seen in direction of travel): front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G852-
- ◆ RHD vehicles, right side (as seen in direction of travel): driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851-
- ◆ RHD vehicles, left side (as seen in direction of travel): front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G852-
- ❑ Fitting location: in moulded foam insert on impact bar
- ❑ Must be renewed if:
 - ◆ Moulded foam insert is visibly damaged
 - ◆ Impact bar is visibly deformed
 - ◆ Bumper cover is severely deformed/visibly damaged
 - ◆ Pressure hose is damaged



A69-11523

Protected by copyright. Any reproduction for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ Do not kink or crimp pressure hose

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 168](#)



2 - Crash sensor for pedestrian protection system (right-side as seen in direction of travel)

- ◆ Left-hand drive vehicles: front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571-
- ◆ Right-hand drive vehicles: driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570-
 - ☐ On bumper cover
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 167](#)

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

4 - Centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

- ☐ On lock carrier cover
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 169](#)

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 4 Nm

7 - Seal

8 - Trigger for pedestrian protection system (right-side as seen in direction of travel)

- ◆ LHD vehicles: trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-
- ◆ RHD vehicles: trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-
 - ☐ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 170](#)

9 - Seal

10 - Clip

11 - Clip

12 - Seal

13 - Trigger for pedestrian protection system (left-side as seen in direction of travel)

- ◆ LHD vehicles: trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-
- ◆ RHD vehicles: trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-
 - ☐ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 170](#)

14 - Seal

15 - Bolt

- ☐ 4 Nm

16 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

17 - Crash sensor for pedestrian protection system (left-side as seen in direction of travel)

- ◆ Left-hand drive vehicles: driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570-
- ◆ Right-hand drive vehicles: front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571-
 - ☐ On bumper cover
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 167](#)



15.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection -G570- / -G571-

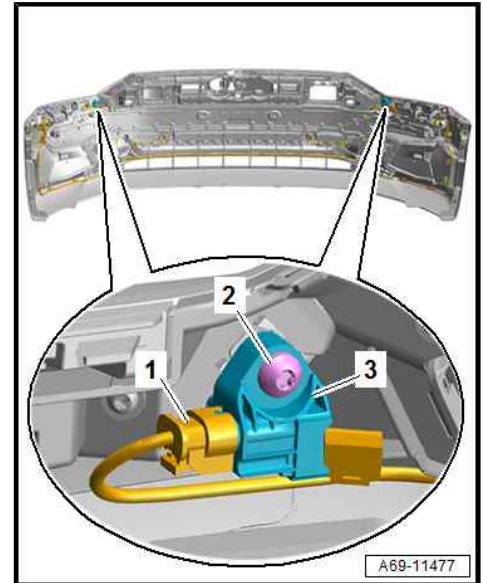
Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover .

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Remove bolt -2- and detach crash sensor for pedestrian protection system -3- from bumper.
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.



- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

Installing

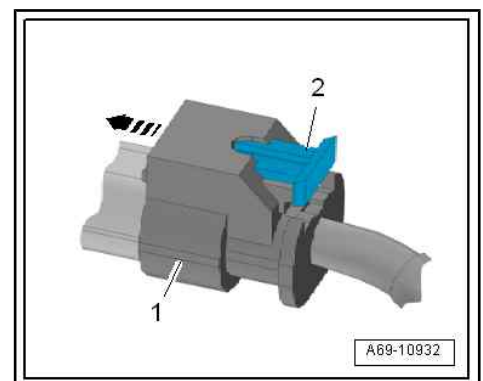
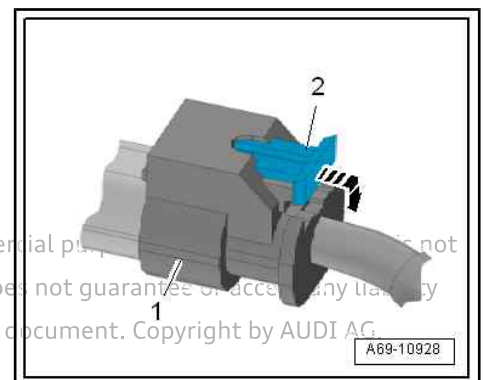
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection", page 165](#)





15.3 Removing and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579-

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 1](#) .
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Remove bumper cover ➔ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover .

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- from crash sensor.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Remove moulded foam insert ➔ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .
- Disengage crash sensor -1- for pedestrian protection at moulded foam insert -3- -arrows- and remove together with pressure hose -2-.

Installing

- Engage crash sensor -1- for pedestrian protection in moulded foam insert -3-.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to pressure hose due to incorrect handling.

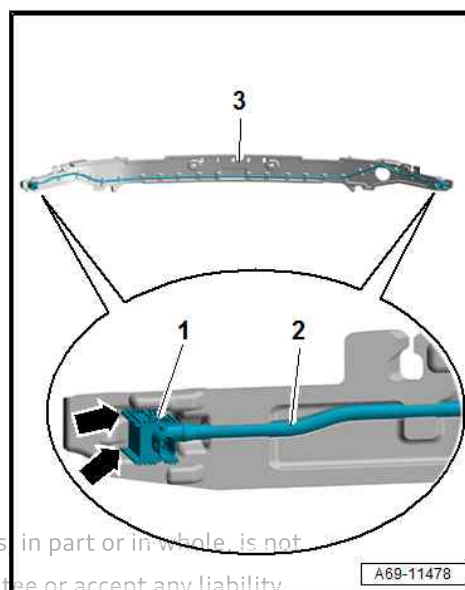
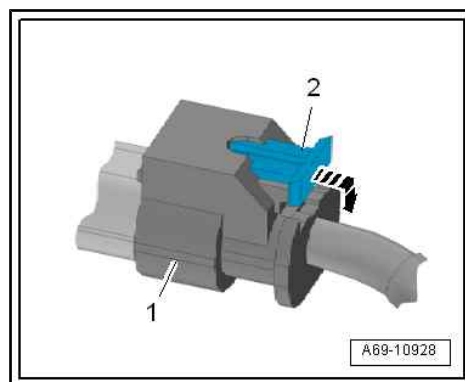
- Do not kink or stretch pressure hose.
- The pressure hose -2- must be inserted so that it is free of tension.
- Install moulded foam insert with crash sensor for pedestrian protection ➔ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front)

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

CAUTION

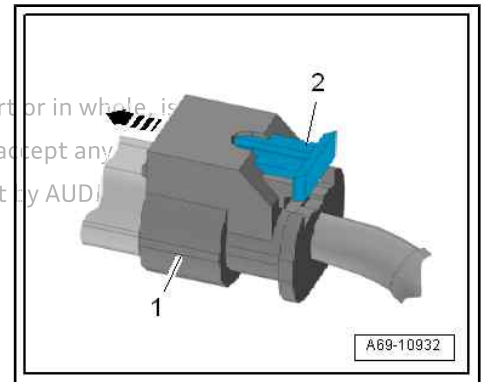
It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.





- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



15.4 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

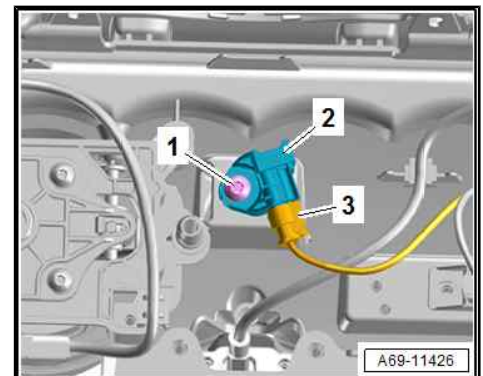
Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Exploded view - bumper cover .

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Unscrew bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- from radiator grille.
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.
- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



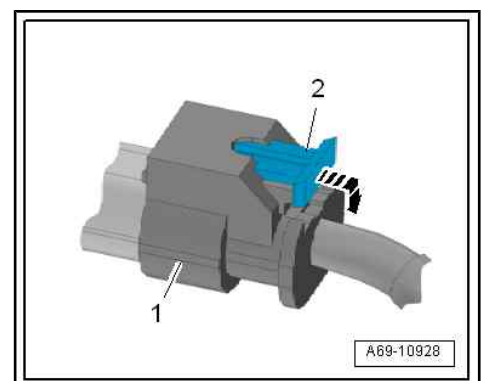
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

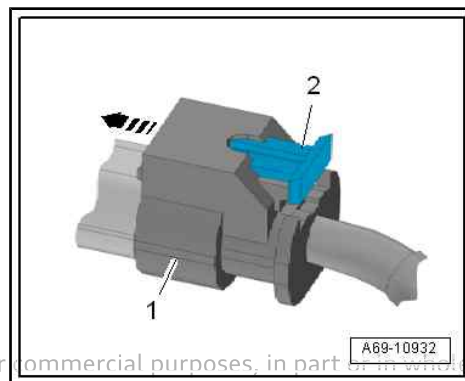
- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.





- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection", page 165



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

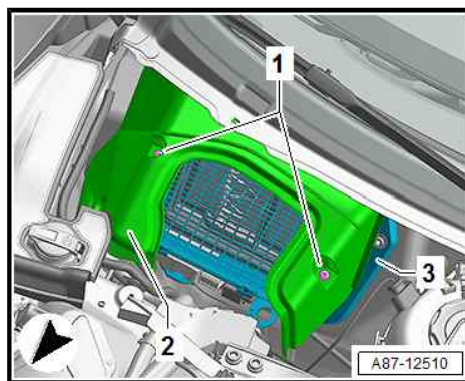
15.5 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered

Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered
⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge

15.6 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection -G598- / -G599-

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 1](#) .
- Switch off ignition and place ignition key outside vehicle; wait for 10 seconds before performing any work on airbag system.
- Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .
- Remove cover (rear) for wing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Wing; Exploded view - wing .
- Passenger side: Remove spreader rivets -1-, swivel water channel -2- upwards and detach it from fresh air intake duct -3-.





- Remove clip -3- with a flat-bladed screwdriver.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Press release catch, unplug electrical connector -2- for trigger for pedestrian protection and move connector clear.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Disengage trigger for pedestrian protection -4- at bonnet hinge and detach it.

Installing

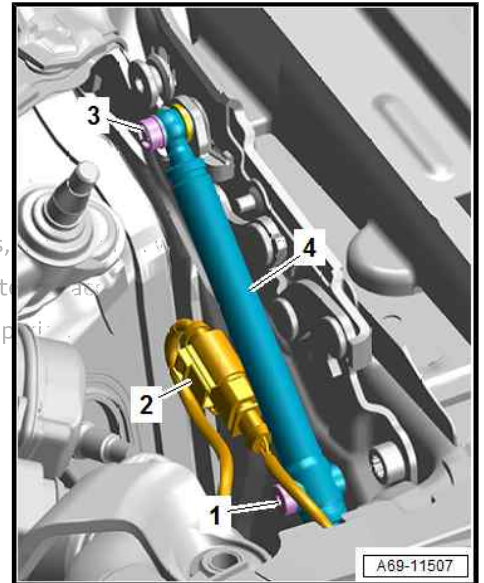
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- Take care not to trap any wires.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["15.1 Overview - pedestrian protection", page 165](#)





70 – Trim, insulation

1 Trim, insulation

⇒ [“1.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim/insulation”, page 172](#)

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim/insulation

1 - Door trim (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 182](#)

2 - Door trim (front)

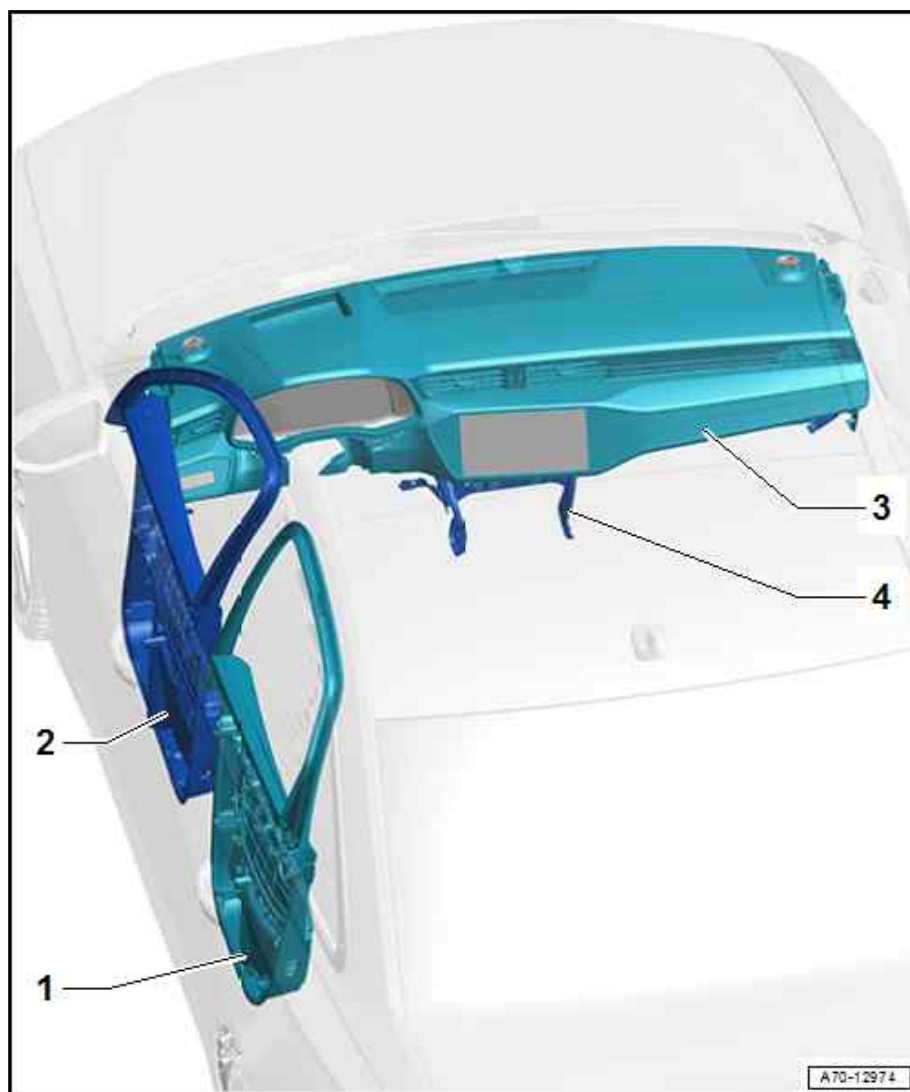
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 173](#)

3 - Dash panel

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 192](#)

4 - Cross member

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 213](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Door trim

→ "2 2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim"

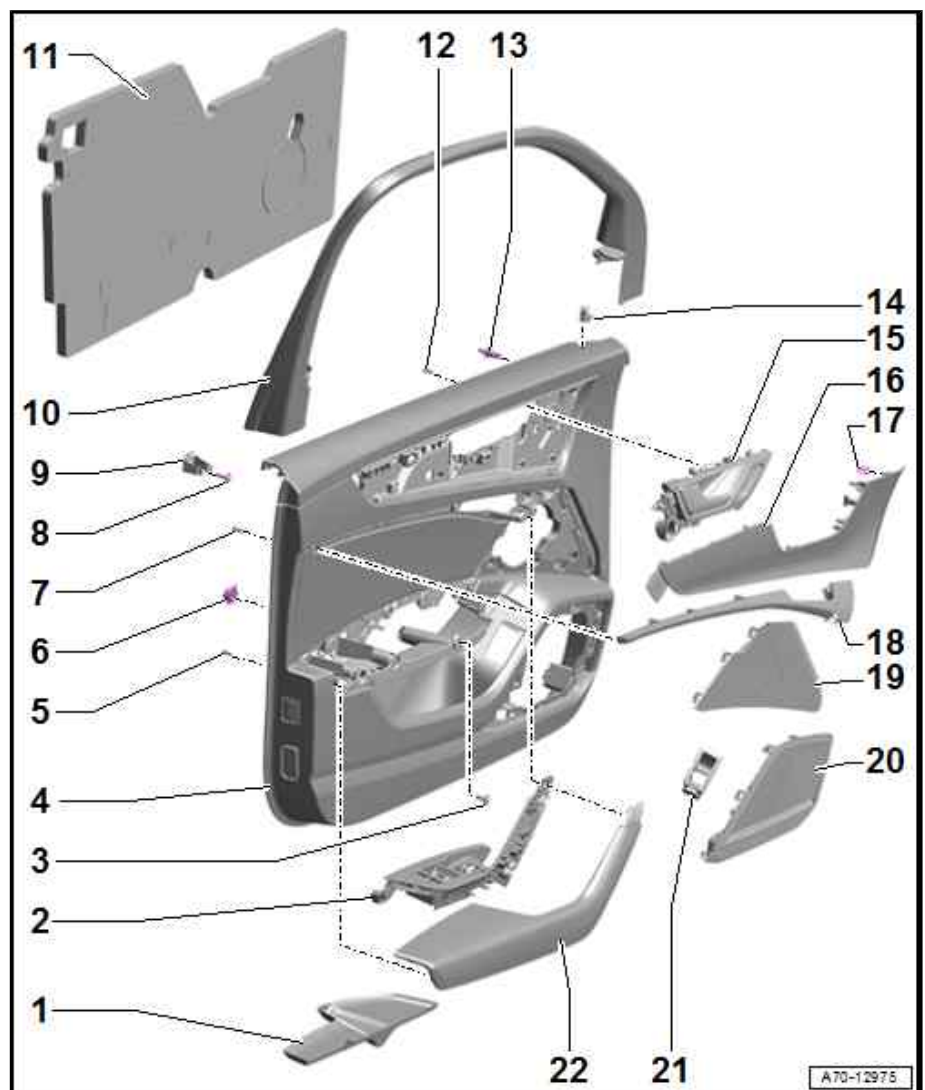
page 174

⇒ **"2.3 Removing and installing trim panel", page 175**

⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing window frame trim", page 179

1 - Lining for door pocket

- 6x
- 1.2 Nm





13 - Stop for door trim

- ☐ 4.5 Nm

14 - Sleeve

- ☐ For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-
- ☐ Driver's door only
- ☐ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

15 - Interior door handle

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 179](#)

16 - Trim panel

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 175](#)

17 - Clip

- ☐ 11x

18 - Trim for door puller

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 178](#)

19 - Mid-range loudspeaker trim

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 174](#)

20 - Bass loudspeaker trim

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 174](#)

21 - Trim

- ☐ For switches
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

22 - Door puller/armrest

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 178](#)

2.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim

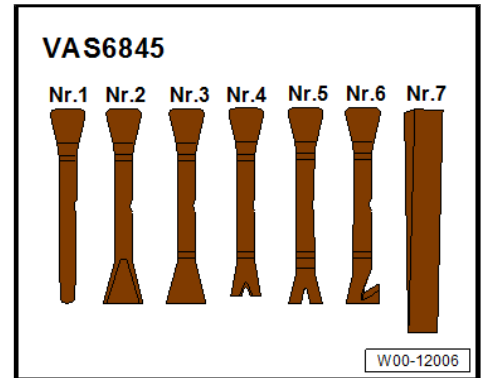
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



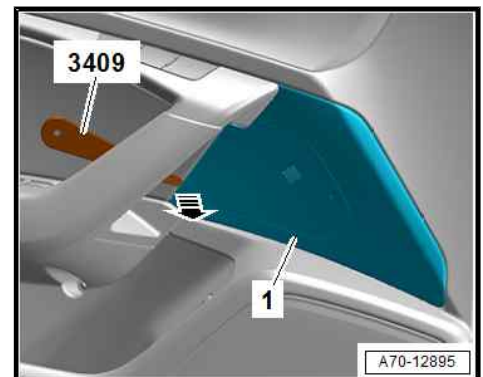


- ◆ Clip release lever no. 4 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



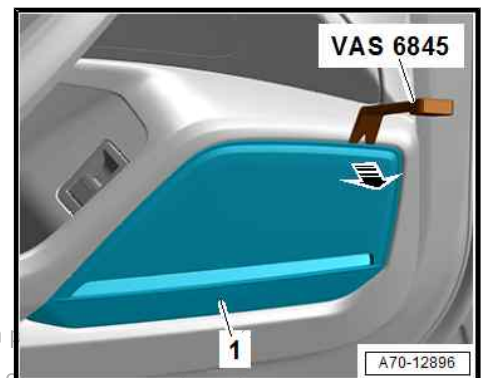
Removing mid-range loudspeaker trim

- Insert removal wedge - 3409- between door trim and mid-range loudspeaker trim.
- Unclip mid-range loudspeaker trim -1- from door trim -arrow- (rotate removal wedge - 3409- around its own axis to do so).
- Unclip remaining retaining catches from door trim and detach loudspeaker trim.



Removing bass loudspeaker trim

- Starting at front, carefully prise bass loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim -arrow- using clip release lever from -VAS 6845- .
- Unclip remaining retaining catches from door trim and detach loudspeaker trim.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for ambient lighting.



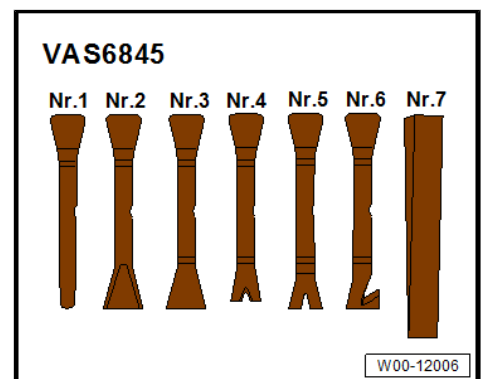
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.3 Removing and installing trim panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-





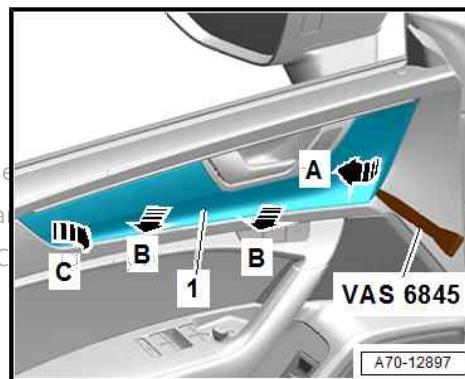
Removing

- Starting at front, unclip trim panel -1- -arrow A- using scraper from -VAS 6845-.

Note:

To ensure that retaining catches at rear of trim panel are not damaged, trim panel must be kept parallel to door trim when removing it.

- Unclip remaining retaining catches -arrows B- and disengage trim panel from door trim.
- Swivel trim panel inwards and pull it out of door trim -arrow C-.
- Unplug any electrical connectors.



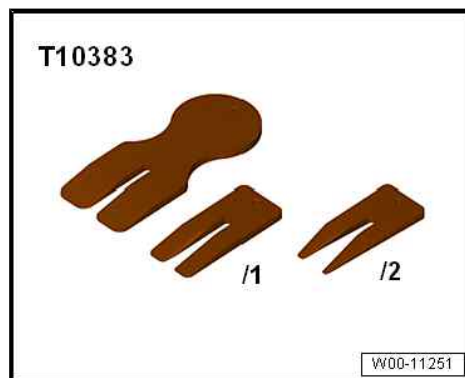
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.4 Removing and installing door trim (front)

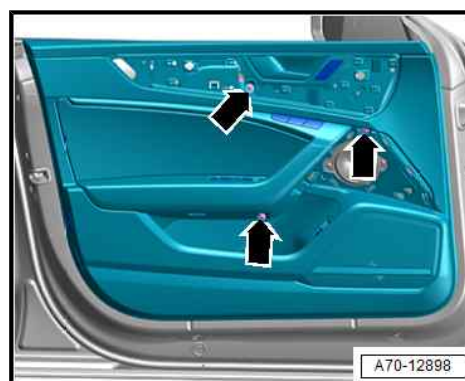
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Wedges - T10383-

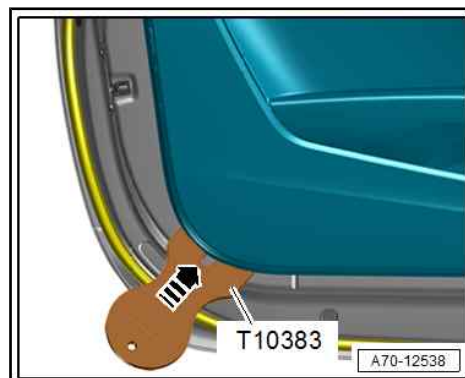


Removing

- Remove trim panel for door trim (front) ⇒ [page 175](#) .
- Remove mid-range loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 174](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

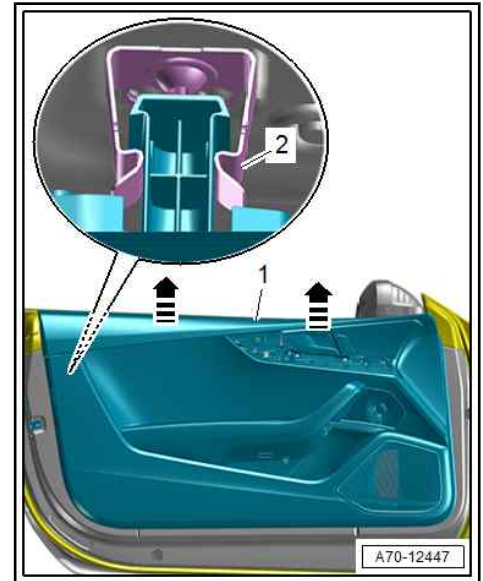


- Starting in bottom rear corner, unclip door trim from door using wedge - T10383- ; to do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips -arrow-.
- Unclip remaining retaining clips along door trim from door.

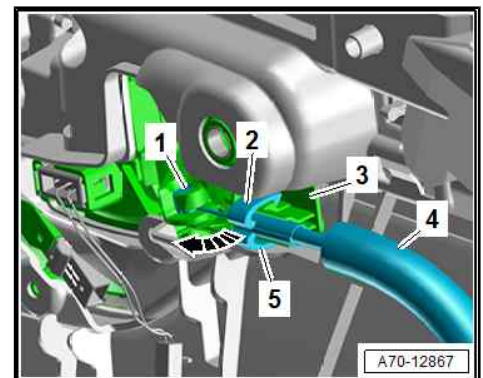




- Pull door trim -1- slightly away from door all around.
- Do not leave retaining clips in door.
- Press door trim upwards and disengage it from door at window slot -arrows-.
- Additionally, press door trim upwards out of clip -2-.

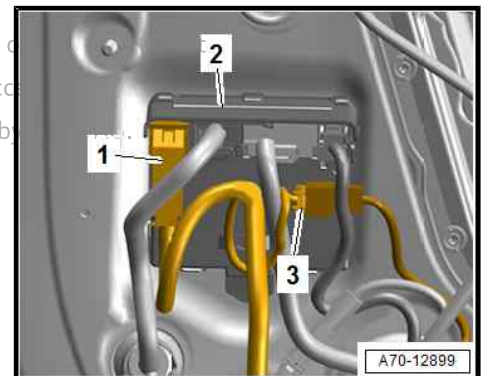


- Unclip Bowden cable -4- carefully from interior door handle -3- -arrow-; this will release fasteners -2, 5-.
- Disengage nipple -1- of Bowden cable at interior door handle.



- Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -1, 3- at door control unit -2-.

Detach door trim.

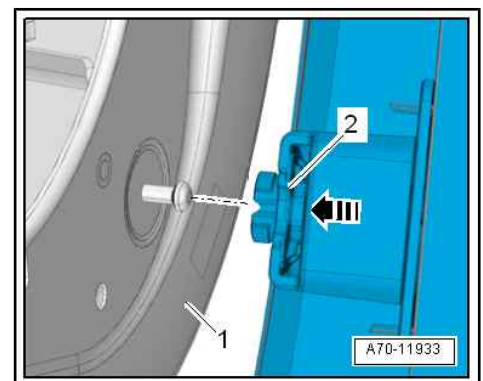


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
- Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 173](#)

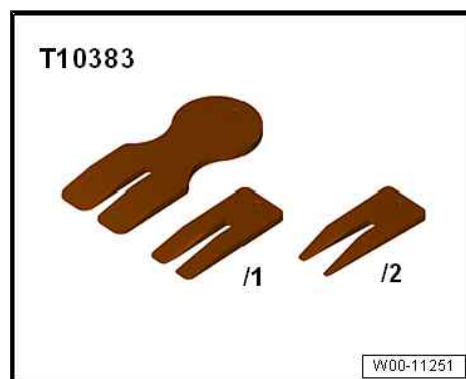




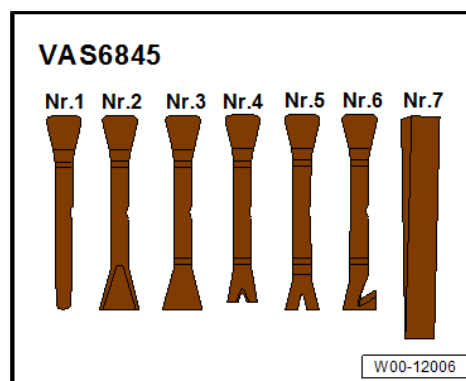
2.5 Removing and installing door puller (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-

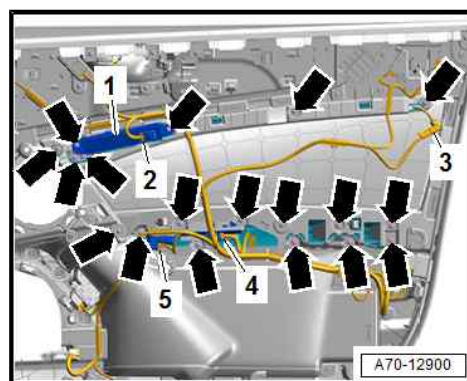


- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



Removing

- Remove door trim ➔ [page 176](#) .
- Set down door trim on a soft surface.
- Disengage and detach insulating mat.
- Unplug electrical connectors -2, 4, 5-.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove light for door ambient lighting -3- from rear of door trim; to do so, release fasteners and pull light off light conductor.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Depending on equipment version: Detach operating unit -1- for memory settings.

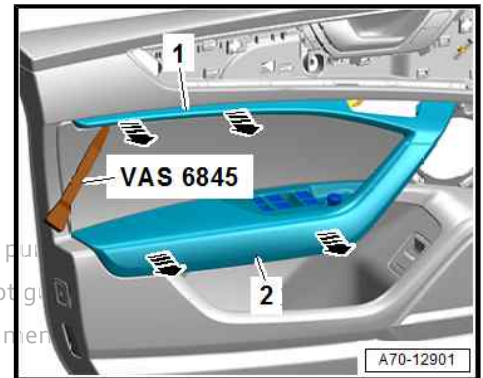


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Unclip trim -1- from door trim -arrows- using scraper from -VAS 6845- .
- Unfasten door puller/armrest -2- from door trim -arrows-.
- Detach door puller/armrest with trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not give any warranty with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

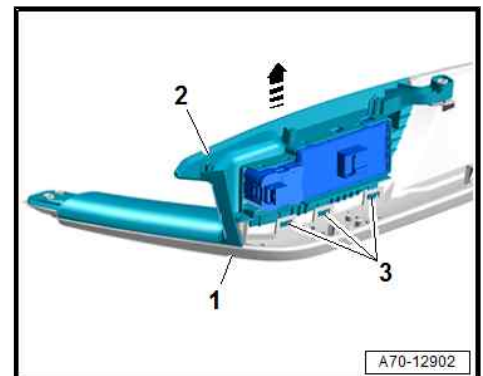


- Carefully unclip switch mounting -2- from door puller -1- -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1- ; release catches -3- with a flat-bladed screwdriver to do so.
- Detach switch mounting.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 173](#)



2.6 Removing and installing interior door handle

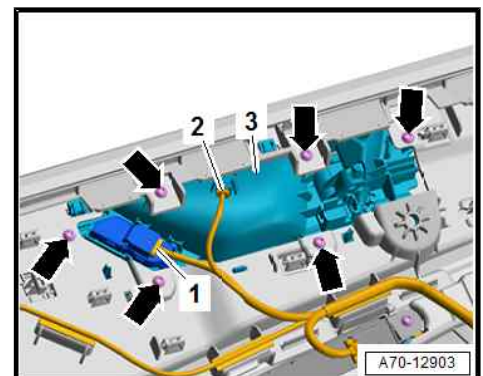
Removing

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 176](#) .
- Set down door trim on a soft surface.
- Disengage insulating mat in vicinity of interior door handle and fold to one side.
- Unplug electrical connectors -1, 2-.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Disengage interior door handle -3- from door trim and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 173](#)

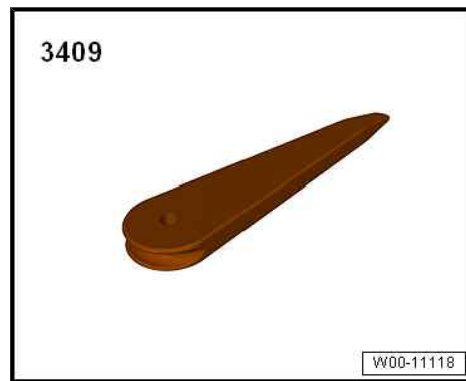


2.7 Removing and installing window frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

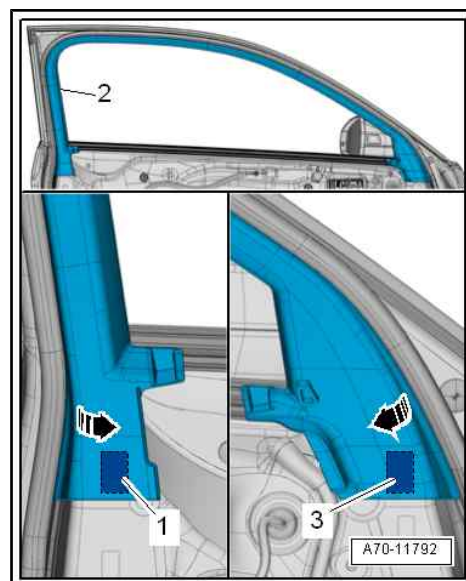


◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



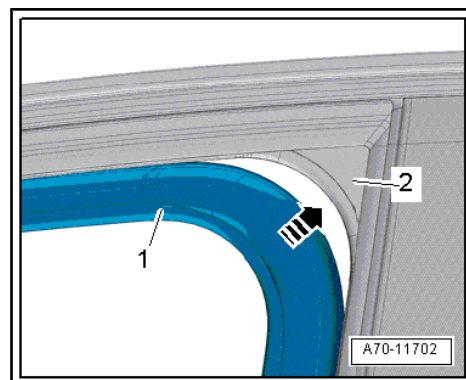
Removing

- Lower door window.
- Remove door trim => [page 176](#) .
- Unfasten ends of trim from adhesive pads -1 and 3- on door using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Working from bottom to top, carefully prise off trim -2- for window frame working along window guide towards rear -arrows-.
- Pull window frame trim downwards off window frame and detach.



Installing

- Insert trim -1- for window frame in window guide -2- at top rear -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

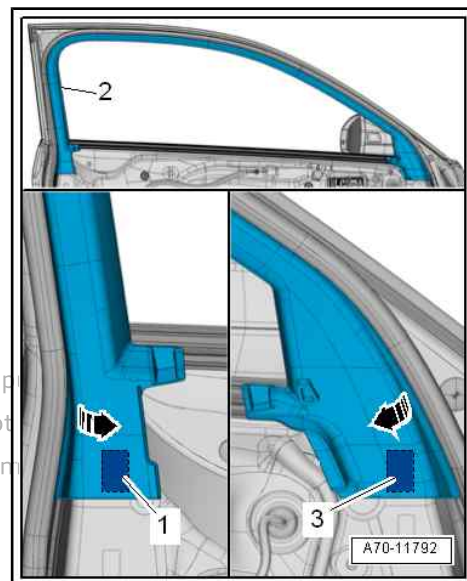


- Install trim -2- for window frame over entire length of window guide.
- Peel protective films off adhesive pads on new part.
- Press trim firmly onto door in area of adhesive pads -1 and 3-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.





3 Door trim (rear)

⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - door trim \(rear\)”, page 182](#)

⇒ [“3.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window”, page 184](#)

⇒ [“3.3 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim”, page 184](#)

⇒ [“3.4 Removing and installing trim panel”, page 185](#)

⇒ [“3.5 Removing and installing door trim \(rear\)”, page 186](#)

⇒ [“3.6 Removing and installing door puller \(rear\)”, page 187](#)

⇒ [“3.7 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 189](#)

⇒ [“3.8 Removing and installing window frame trim”, page 189](#)

⇒ [“3.9 Removing and installing sun blind for door window”, page 190](#)

⇒ [“3.10 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind”, page 191](#)

3.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)

1 - Lining for door pocket

- Insert into door

2 - Switch mounting

- Removing and installing
⇒ [“3.6 Removing and installing door puller \(rear\)”, page 187](#)

3 - Bolt

- 3x
- 2.5 Nm

4 - Door trim

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 186](#)

5 - Clip

- 7x or 8x
- Insert in trim

6 - Bolt

- 11x or 12x
- 1.2 Nm

7 - Bolt

- 4x
- 1.2 Nm

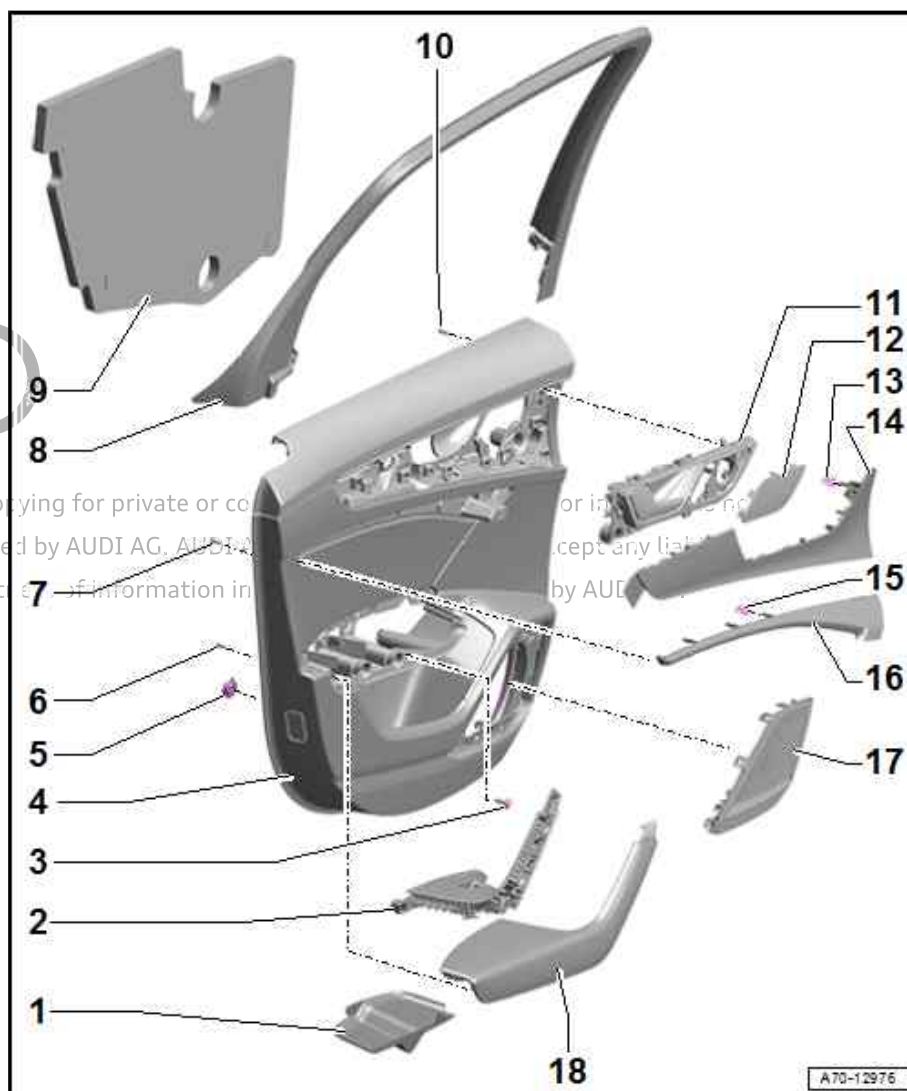
8 - Window frame trim

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 189](#)

9 - Insulating mat

10 - Bolt

- 7x or 9x





- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 189](#)

12 - Treble loudspeaker trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 184](#)

13 - Clip

- ❑ 9x

14 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 185](#)

15 - Clip

- ❑ 3x

16 - Trim for door puller

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [“3.6 Removing and installing door puller \(rear\)”, page 187](#)

17 - Bass loudspeaker trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 184](#)

18 - Door puller/armrest

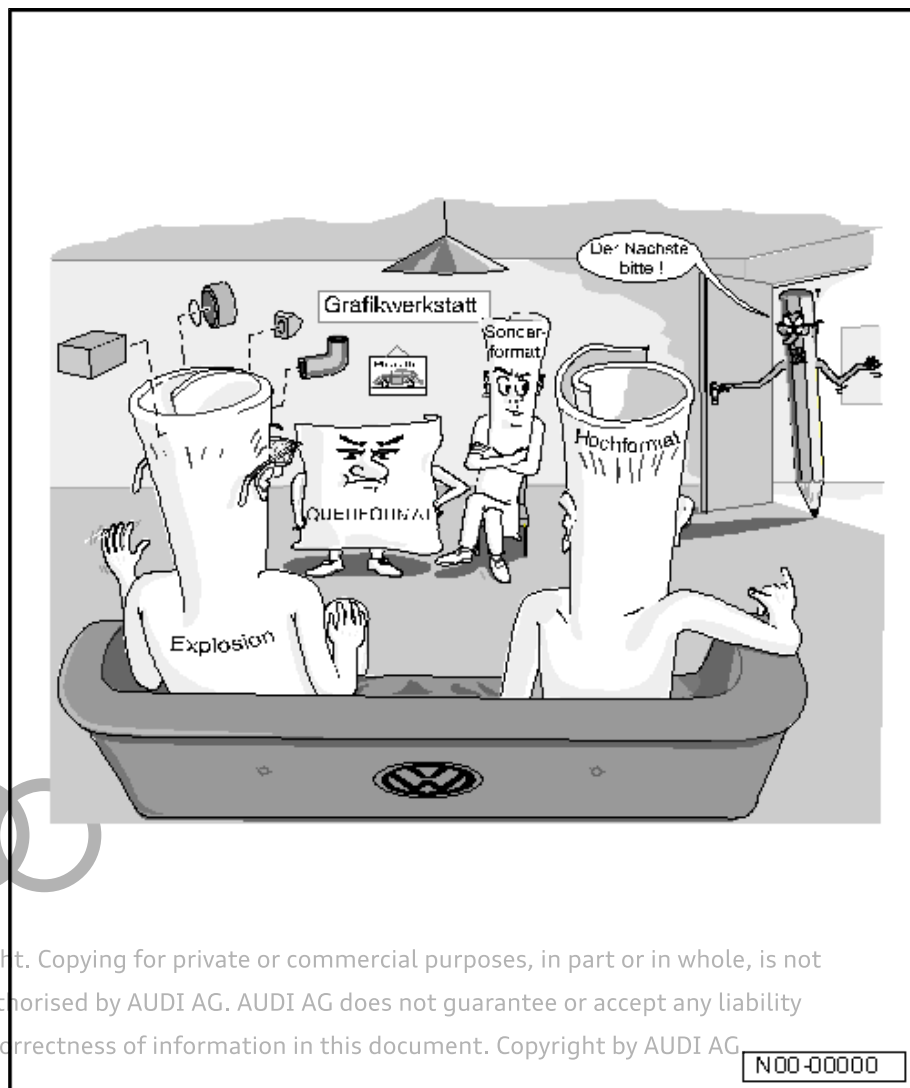
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 187](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window

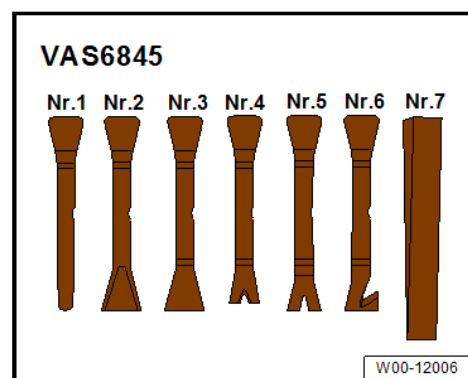
- 1 - Bolt**
 - ☐ 4x
 - ☐ 1.2 Nm
- 2 - Cover for sun blind**
 - ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 190](#)
- 3 - Bolt**
 - ☐ 2x
 - ☐ 1.7 Nm
- 4 - Retainer**
 - ☐ For sun blind
 - ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 191](#)
- 5 - Sun blind**
 - ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
 - ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 190](#)
- 6 - Bolt**
 - ☐ 3x
 - ☐ 1.2 Nm
- 7 - Door trim (rear)**
 - ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 186](#)



3.3 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

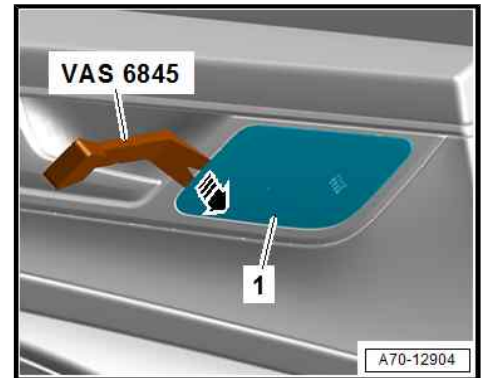
- ◆ Clip release lever no. 4 from scraper set - VAS 6845-





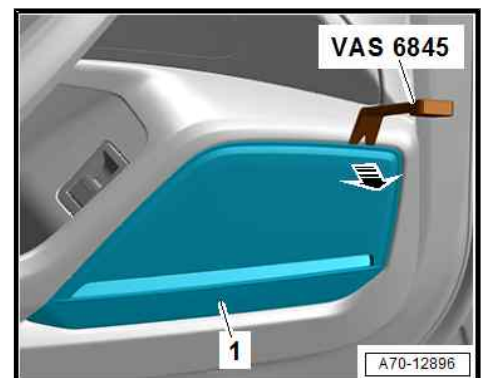
Removing treble loudspeaker trim

- Carefully prise treble loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim -arrow- using clip release lever from -VAS 6845- .
- Unclip remaining retaining catches from door trim and detach loudspeaker trim.



Removing bass loudspeaker trim

- Starting at front, carefully prise bass loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim -arrow- using clip release lever from -VAS 6845- .
- Unclip remaining retaining catches from door trim and detach loudspeaker trim.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for ambient lighting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

3.4 Removing and installing trim panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Removing

- Starting at front, unclip trim panel -1- -arrow A- using scraper from -VAS 6845- .

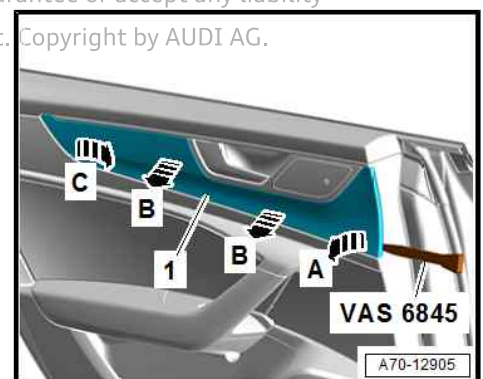
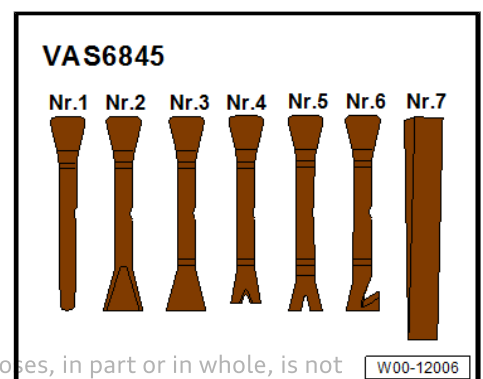
Note:

To ensure that retaining catches at rear of trim panel are not damaged, trim panel must be kept parallel to door trim when removing it.

- Unclip remaining retaining catches -arrows B- and disengage trim panel from door trim.
- Swivel trim panel inwards and pull it out of door trim -arrow C-.
- Unplug any electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

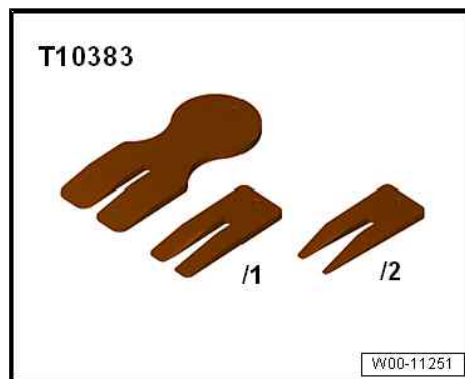




3.5 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

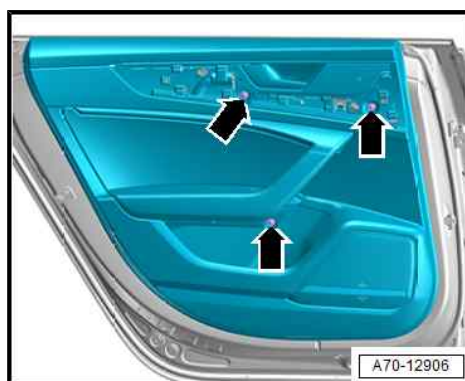
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Wedges - T10383-

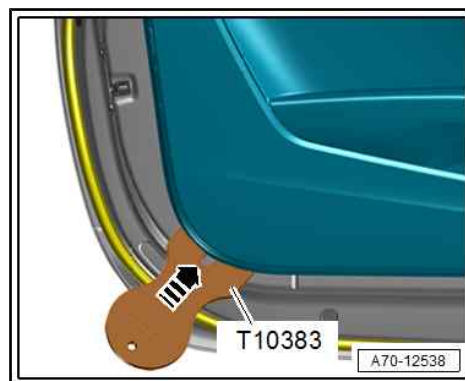


Removing

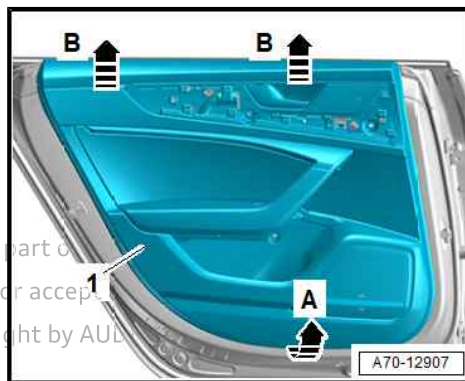
- Remove trim panel ⇒ [page 185](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.



- Starting in bottom rear corner, unclip door trim from door using wedge - T10383- ; to do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips -arrow-.
- Unclip remaining retaining clips along door trim from door.

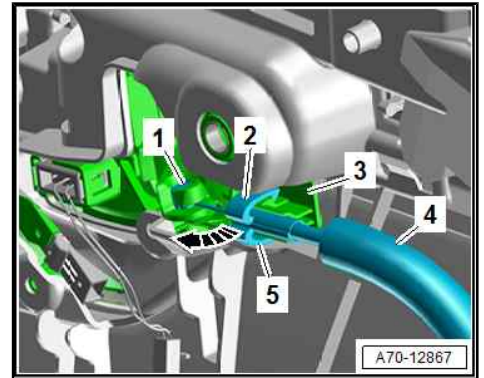


- Pull door trim -1- slightly away from door all around -arrow A-.
- Do not leave retaining clips in door.
- Press door trim upwards and disengage it from door at window slot -arrows B-.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.

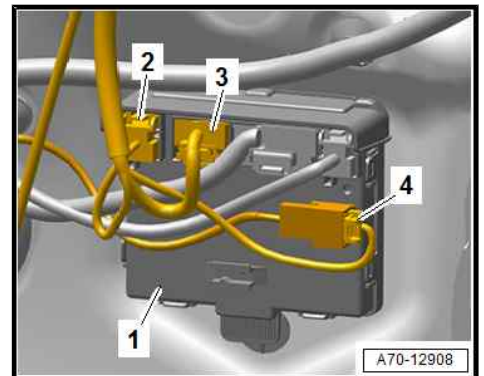




- Unclip Bowden cable -4- carefully from interior door handle -3- -arrow-; this will release fasteners -2, 5-.
- Disengage nipple -1- of Bowden cable at interior door handle.



- Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -2, 3, 4- at door control unit -1-.
- Detach door trim.

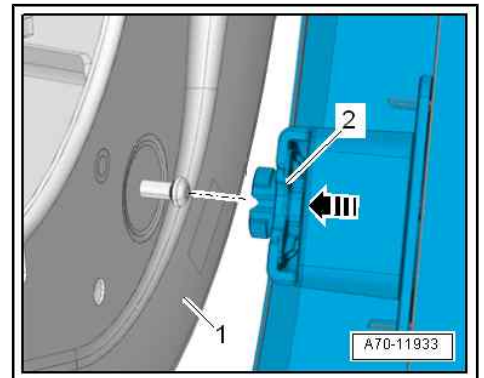


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
- Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points.

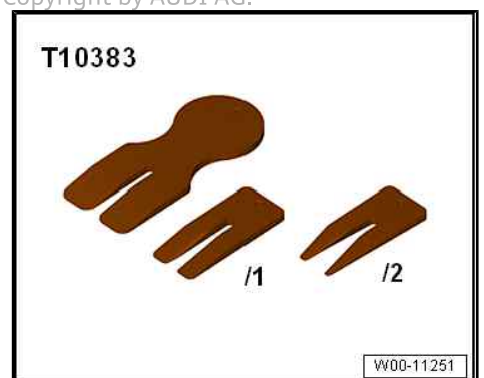
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 182



3.6 Removing and installing door puller (rear)

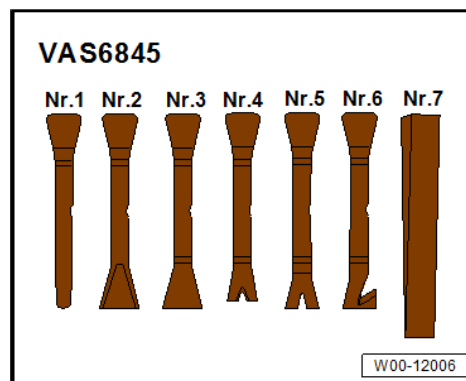
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-





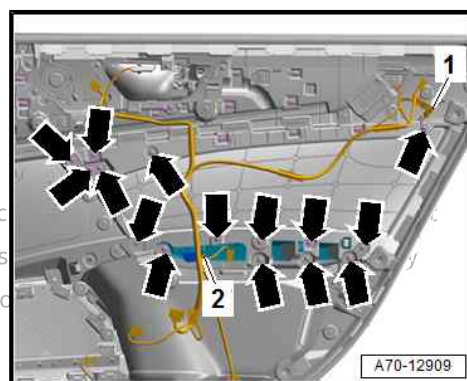
- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



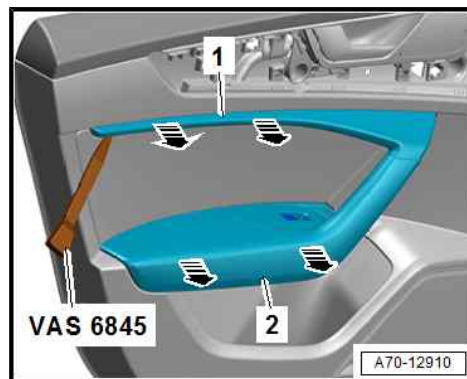
Removing

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 186](#) .
- Set down door trim on a soft surface.
- Disengage and detach insulating mat.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove light for door ambient lighting -1- from rear of door trim; to do so, release fasteners and pull light off light conductor.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Unclip trim -1- from door trim -arrows- using scraper from -VAS 6845- .
- Unfasten door puller/armrest -2- from door trim -arrows-.
- Detach door puller/armrest with trim.

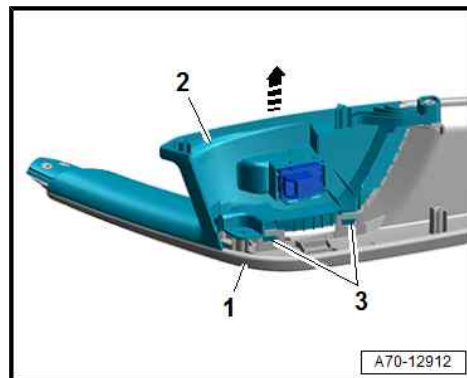


- Carefully unclip switch mounting -2- from door puller -1- -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1- ; release catches -3- with a flat-bladed screwdriver to do so.
- Detach switch mounting.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - door trim \(rear\)", page 182](#)





3.7 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 186](#) .
- Set down door trim on a soft surface.
- Disengage insulating mat in vicinity of interior door handle and fold to one side.
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

Note:

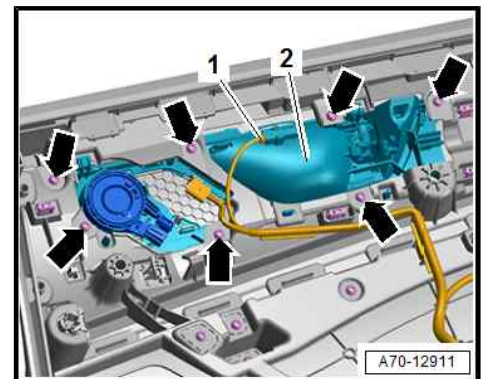
7 or 9 bolts, depending on country-specific version (illustration shows version for rest-of world/NAR)

- Disengage interior door handle -2- from door trim and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

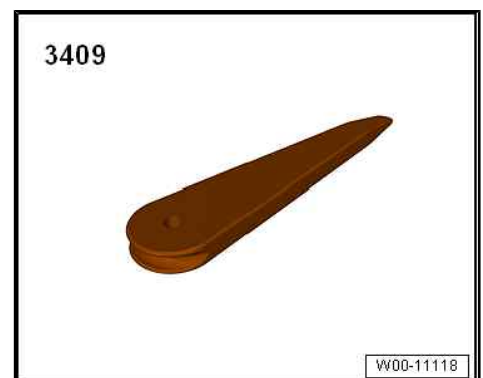
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - door trim \(rear\)", page 182](#)



3.8 Removing and installing window frame trim

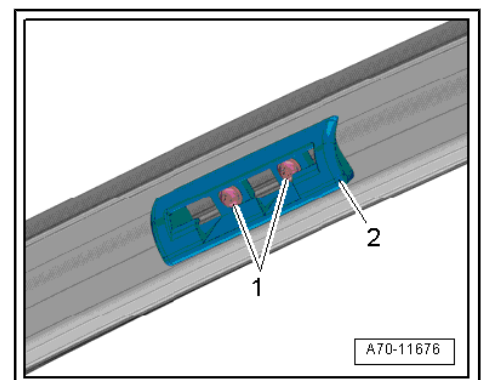
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

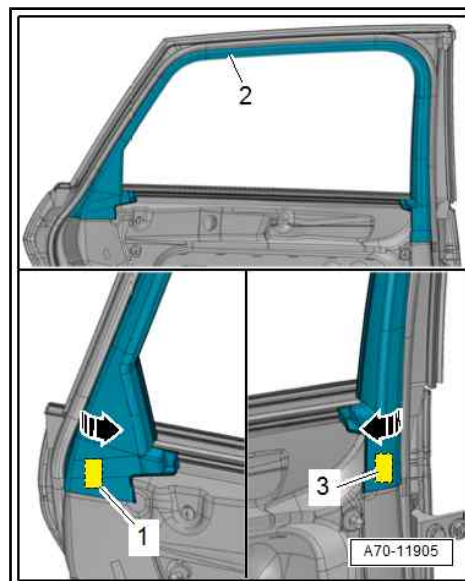
- Lower door window.
- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 186](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove bolts -1- and detach securing lug -2- from window frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

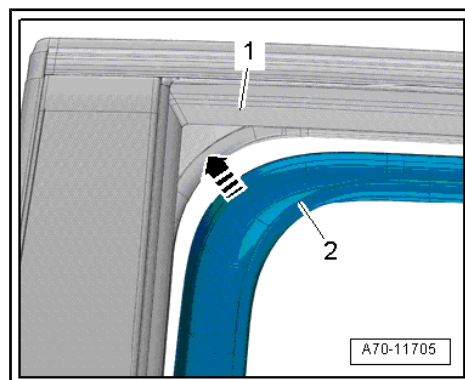


- Unfasten ends of trim from adhesive pads -1 and 3- on door using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Working from bottom to top, carefully prise off trim -2- for window frame working along window guide towards rear -arrows-.
- Pull window frame trim downwards off window frame and detach.



Installing

- Insert trim -2- for window frame in window guide -1- (top front) -arrow-.

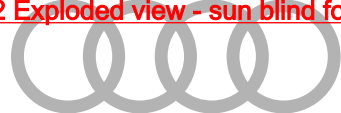
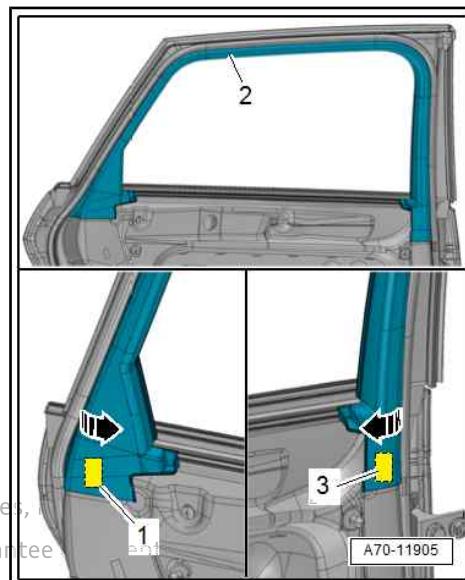


- Install trim -2- for window frame over entire length of window guide.
- Peel protective films off adhesive pads on new part.
- Press trim firmly onto door in area of adhesive pads -1 and 3-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window", page 184](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.9 Removing and installing sun blind for door window

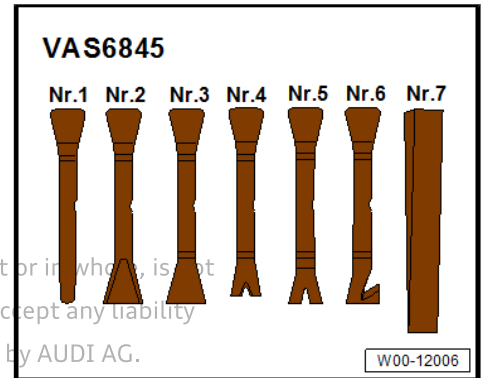
Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Clip release lever no. 4 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

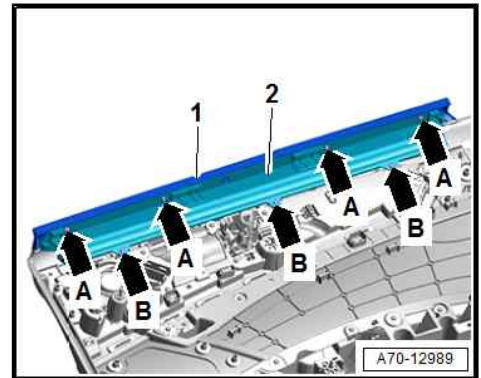


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove door trim (rear) ➔ [page 186](#) .
- Set down door trim on a soft surface.
- Remove bolts -arrows A-.
- Unclip cover -1- using clip release lever from -VAS 6845- .
- Pull sun blind out slightly, detach cover and feed lug for sun blind through.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows B-.
- Disengage sun blind -2- from door trim and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

➔ ["3.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window", page 184](#)

3.10 Removing and installing retainer for sun blind

Removing

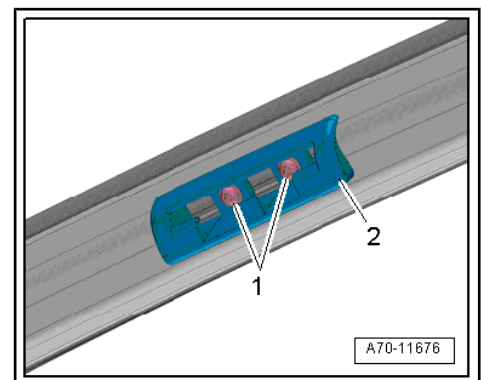
- Lower door window.
- Remove bolts -1- and detach retainer -2- from window frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

➔ ["3.2 Exploded view - sun blind for door window", page 184](#)





4 Dash panel

⇒ [“4.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 192](#)

⇒ [“4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover \(side\)”, page 196](#)

⇒ [“4.3 Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert”, page 197](#)

⇒ [“4.4 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 197](#)

⇒ [“4.5 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel”, page 199](#)

⇒ [“4.6 Removing and installing carrier for trim panel for dash panel”, page 204](#)

⇒ [“4.7 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 205](#)

⇒ [“4.8 Removing and installing cover for dash panel/head-up display”, page 209](#)

⇒ [“4.9 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting”, page 209](#)

⇒ [“4.10 Removing and installing outer dash panel vent”, page 210](#)

⇒ [“4.11 Removing and installing centre vent”, page 211](#)

⇒ [“4.12 Removing and installing defroster vent \(front centre\)”, page 211](#)

4.1 Exploded view - dash panel

- ◆ Exploded view - dash panel attachments and cover
⇒ [page 192](#)
- ◆ Exploded view - dash panel attachments and trim panel
⇒ [page 194](#)

Exploded view - dash panel attachments and cover



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Dash panel cover (side)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 196](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in mounting
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Loudspeaker mounting

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 209](#)

4 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

5 - Loudspeaker trim (driver side)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 197](#)

- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Clip

- ☐ 7x
- ☐ Insert in cover for head-up display
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Cover for head-up display

- ☐ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 209](#)

8 - Centre loudspeaker trim

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 197](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Spring clip

- ☐ 16x
- ☐ Insert in defroster vent
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

10 - Defroster vent (front centre)

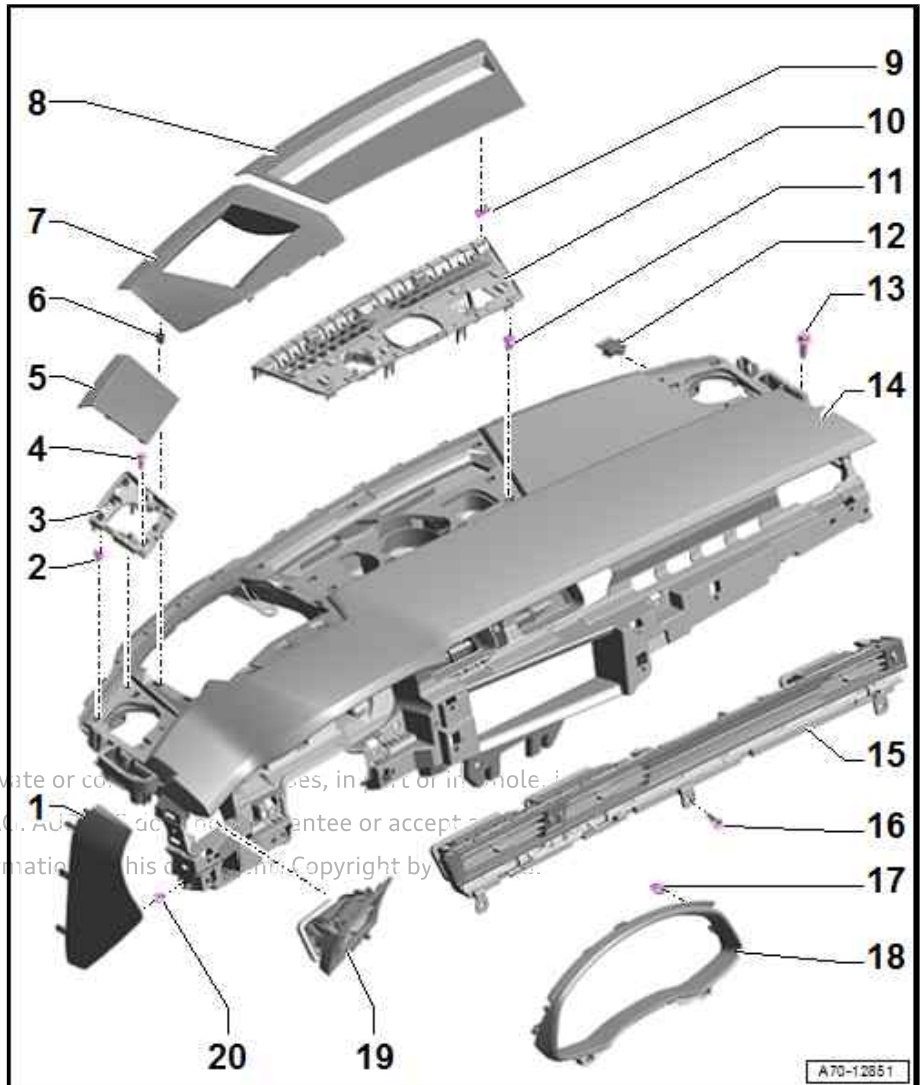
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 211](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

11 - Clip

- ☐ 9x
- ☐ Insert in defroster vent
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

12 - Rubber buffer

- ☐ 3x





- ☐ Insert in mounting for dash panel on windscreen frame (bottom)

13 - Bolt

- ☐ 11x
- ☐ 3 Nm

14 - Dash panel

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 205](#)

15 - Centre vent/outer dash panel vent (passenger side)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 211](#)

16 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 3 Nm

17 - Clip

- ☐ 5x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

18 - Trim for dash panel insert

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 197](#)

19 - Outer dash panel vent (driver side)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 210](#)

20 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in dash panel
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Exploded view - dash panel attachments and trim panel



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Trim panel (bottom) for dash panel (driver side)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ➤ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ➤ [page 201](#)

2 - Trim panel (centre) for dash panel (driver side)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ➤ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ➤ [page 202](#)

3 - Trim panel (side) for dash panel

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ➤ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ➤ [page 199](#)

4 - Spring clip

- ☐ Insert in trim panel
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Trim panel (top) for dash panel (driver side)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ➤ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ➤ [page 200](#)

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 3 Nm

7 - Carrier for trim panel (driver side)

- ☐ Removing and installing ➤ [page 204](#)

8 - Clip

- ☐ Insert in carrier
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

9 - Carrier for trim panel (passenger side)

- ☐ Removing and installing ➤ [page 204](#)

10 - Clip

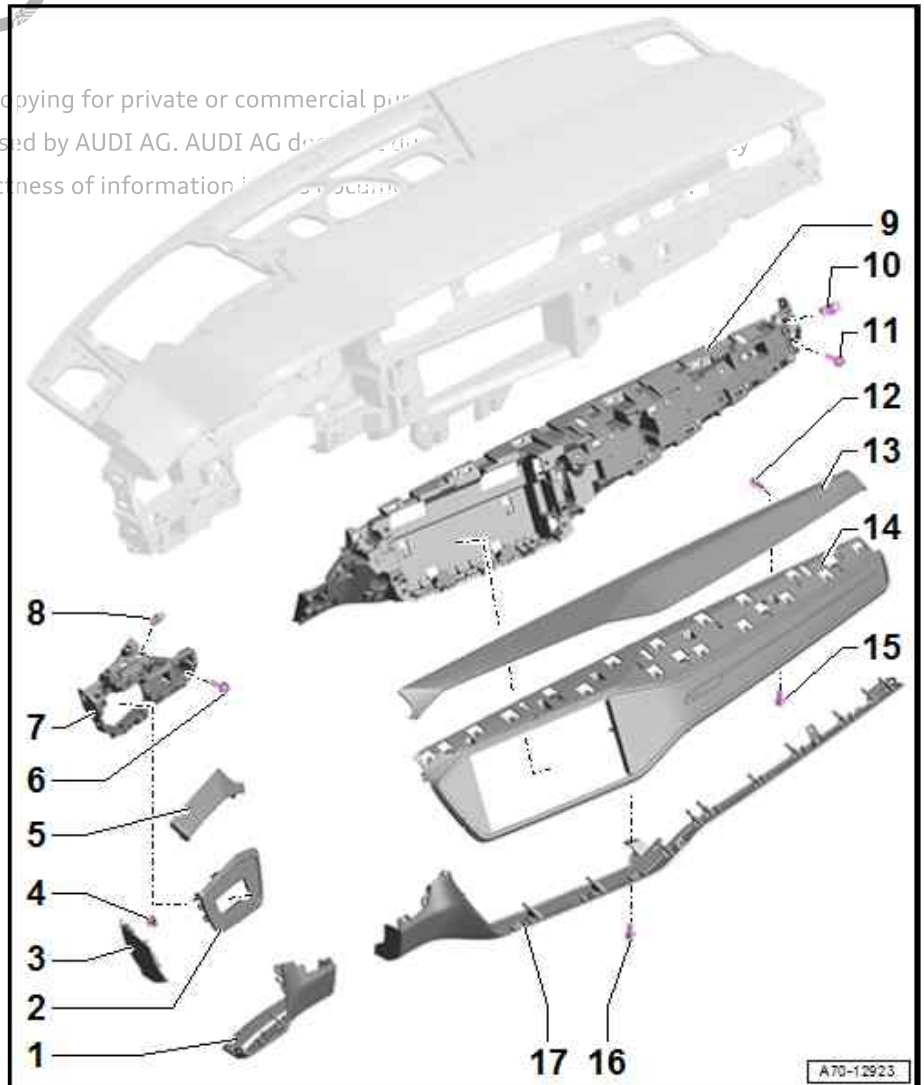
- ☐ Insert in carrier
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

11 - Bolt

- ☐ 7x
- ☐ 3 Nm

12 - Bolt

- ☐ 5x
- ☐ 1 Nm





13 - Trim panel (top) for dash panel (passenger side)

- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 200](#)

14 - Trim panel (centre) for dash panel (passenger side)

- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 203](#)

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3 Nm

17 - Trim panel (bottom) for dash panel (passenger side)

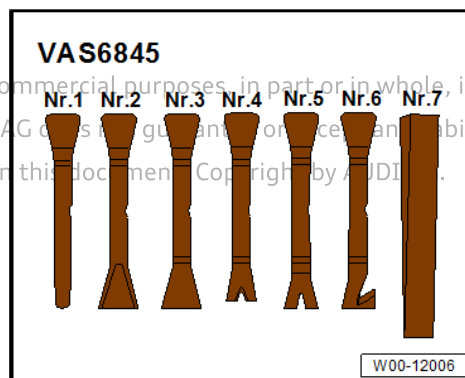
- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 201](#)

4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

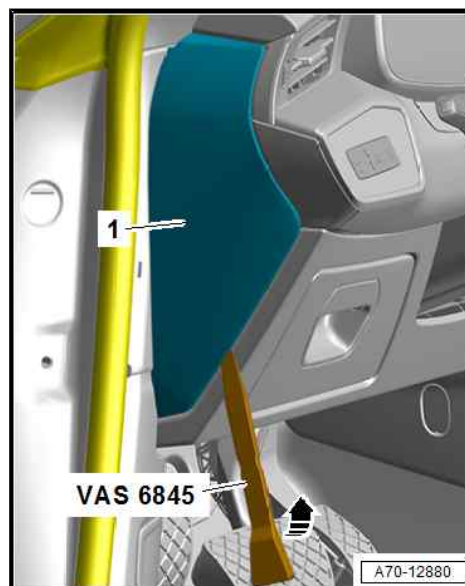


Removing

- Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- -arrow- using scraper from -VAS 6845- .
- Release all other retaining catches, pull dash panel cover towards rear off trim cover for A-pillar and remove dash panel cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

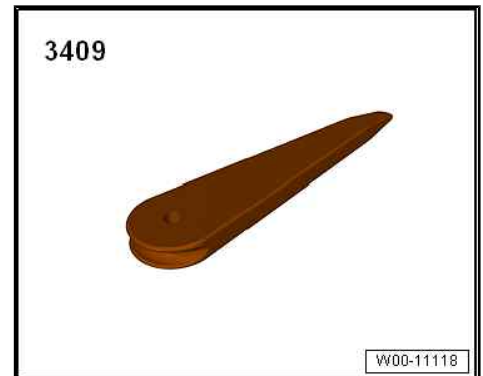




4.3 Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert

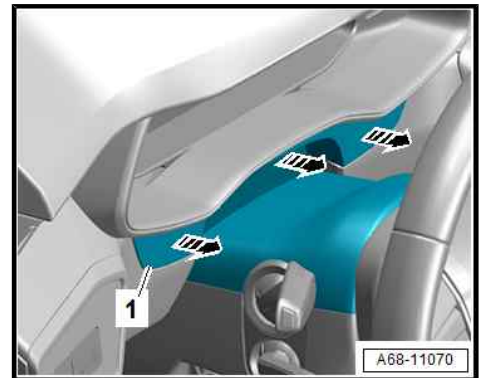
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

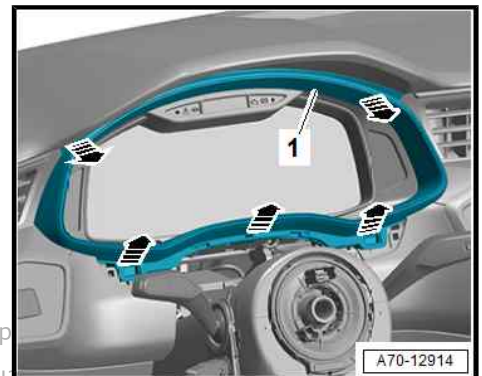
- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Unclip trim cover -1- for steering column trim by hand from dash panel at side and top -arrows-.



- Starting at bottom, unclip trim for dash panel insert -1- from dash panel insert -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Release all other retaining catches and detach trim for dash panel insert.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



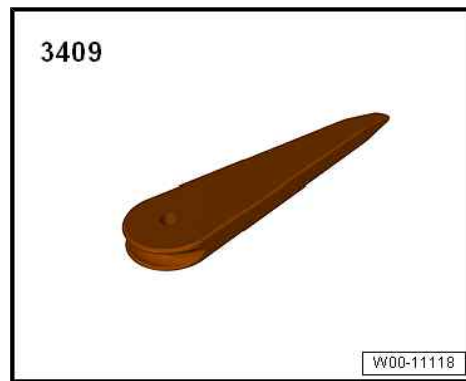
4.4 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

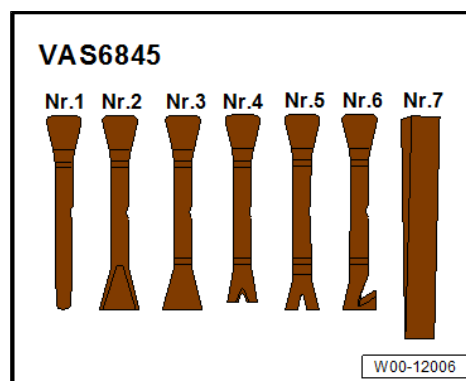
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



◆ Scraper no. 2 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

Removing outer loudspeaker trim



NOTICE

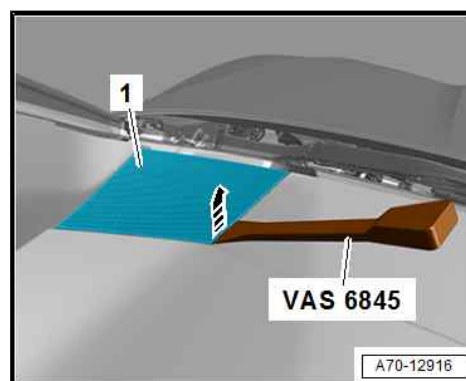
Risk of damage to loudspeaker trim if handled incorrectly.

- Proceed with care when removing and installing loudspeaker trim.
- Carefully disengage loudspeaker trim -1- using scraper no. 2 from -VAS 6845- -arrow-; to do so, insert scraper only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath loudspeaker trim.

Note:

Inserting scraper further would position it beneath mounting. Loudspeaker trim can then not be prised off.

- Release all other retaining catches for loudspeaker trim and detach towards rear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



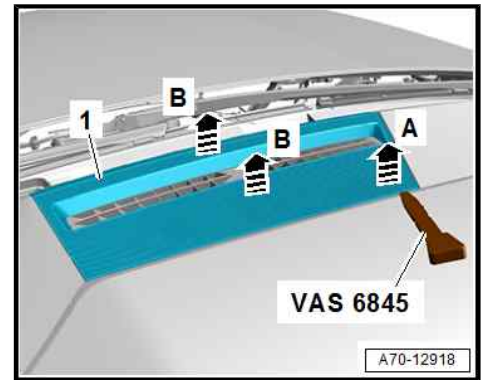
Removing centre loudspeaker trim

- Disengage loudspeaker trim -1- using scraper no. 1 from -VAS 6845- -arrow A-; to do so, insert scraper only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath loudspeaker trim.

Note:

Inserting scraper further would position it beneath mounting. Loudspeaker trim can then not be prised off.

- Release all other retaining catches for loudspeaker trim further along gap.
- To do so, push scraper or a long flat-bladed screwdriver through underneath loudspeaker trim and disengage retaining catches at front -arrows B, C-



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

4.5 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel

⇒ [“4.5.1 Removing and installing trim panel \(side\) for dash panel”, page 199](#)

⇒ [“4.5.2 Removing and installing trim panel \(top\) for dash panel \(driver side\)”, page 200](#)

⇒ [“4.5.3 Removing and installing trim panel \(top\) for dash panel \(passenger side\)”, page 200](#)

⇒ [“4.5.4 Removing and installing trim panel \(bottom\) for dash panel \(driver side\)”, page 201](#)

⇒ [“4.5.5 Removing and installing trim panel \(bottom\) for dash panel \(passenger side\)”, page 201](#)

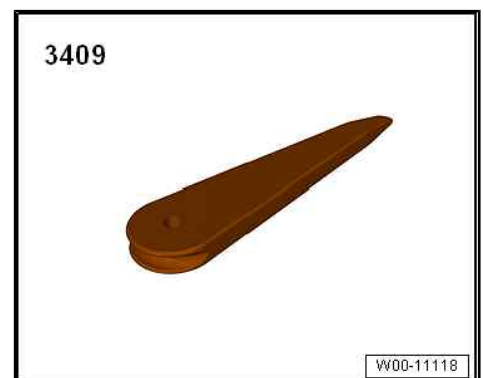
⇒ [“4.5.6 Removing and installing trim panel \(centre\) for dash panel \(driver side\)”, page 202](#)

⇒ [“4.5.7 Removing and installing trim panel \(centre\) for dash panel \(passenger side\)”, page 203](#)

4.5.1 Removing and installing trim panel (side) for dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-





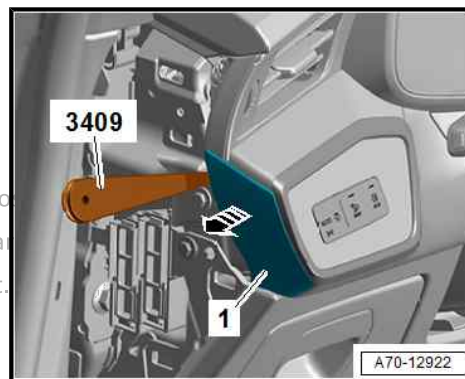
Removing

- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Carefully unclip trim panel -1- with removal wedge - 3409-
-arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



4.5.2 Removing and installing trim panel (top) for dash panel (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

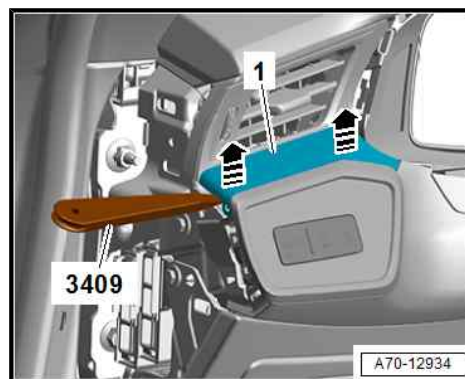


Removing

- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Carefully unclip trim panel -1- with removal wedge - 3409-
-arrows- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



4.5.3 Removing and installing trim panel (top) for dash panel (passenger side)

Removing

- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim panel (centre) for dash panel ⇒ [page 203](#) .

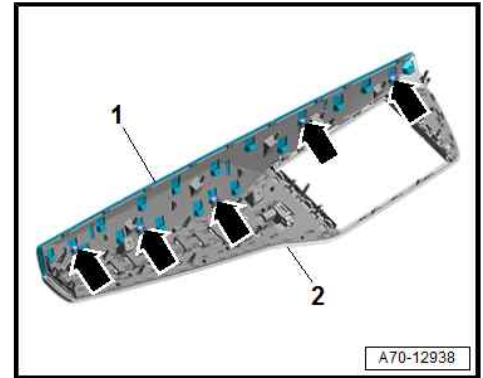


- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Disengage trim panel -1- from trim panel (centre) -2- and detach it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

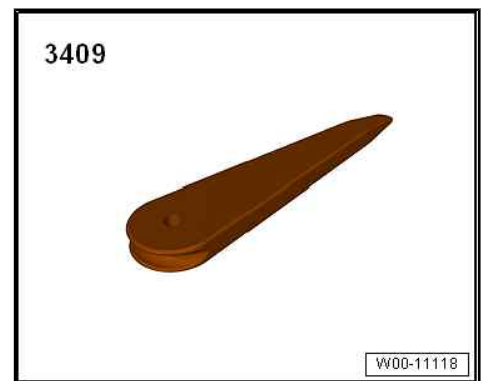
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“4.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 192](#)



4.5.4 Removing and installing trim panel (bottom) for dash panel (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

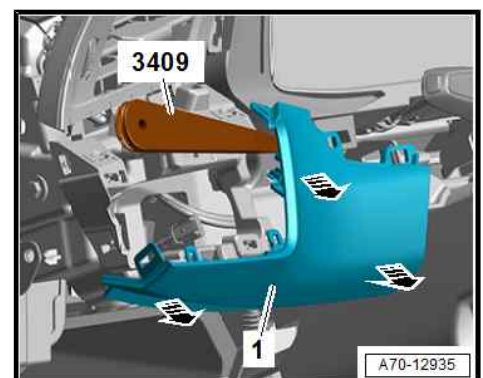


Removing

- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove trim panel (top) for dash panel ⇒ [page 200](#) .
- Remove trim panel (centre) for dash panel ⇒ [page 202](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 19](#) .
- Carefully unclip trim panel -1- towards rear using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



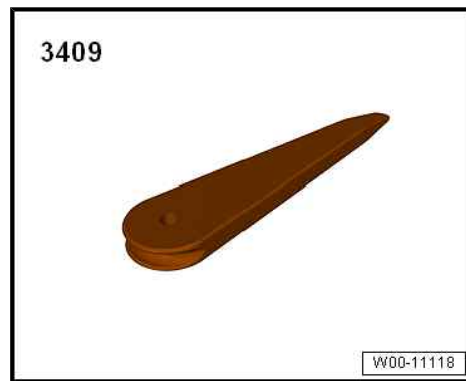
4.5.5 Removing and installing trim panel (bottom) for dash panel (passenger side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



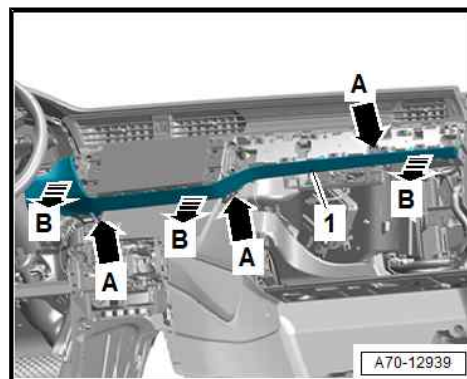
Removing

- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 19](#) .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim panel (centre) for dash panel ⇒ [page 203](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows A-.
- Carefully unclip trim panel -1- towards rear from dash panel -arrows B- using removal wedge - 3409-
- Release all other retaining catches for trim panel and detach it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“4.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 192](#)



4.5.6 Removing and installing trim panel (centre) for dash panel (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

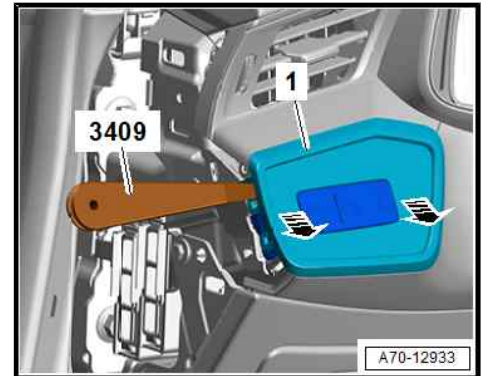
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Unclip trim panel -1- -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



4.5.7 Removing and installing trim panel (centre) for dash panel (passenger side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove bolts -1-.
- Unclip trim panel (centre) -2- with trim panel (top) -3- from dash panel using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Unplug electrical connectors.

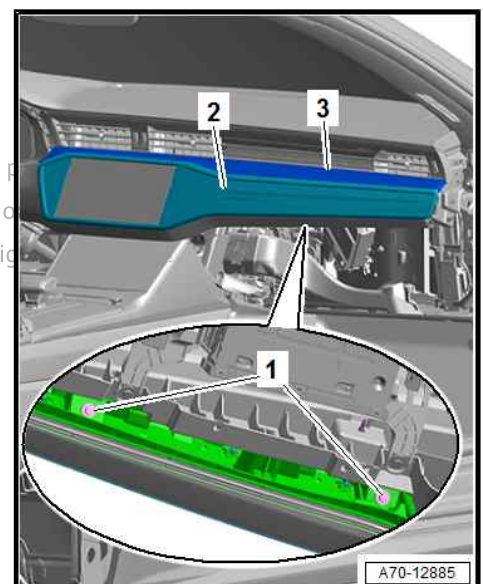
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited without the written permission of Audi AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2019 Audi AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 192](#)





4.6 Removing and installing carrier for trim panel for dash panel

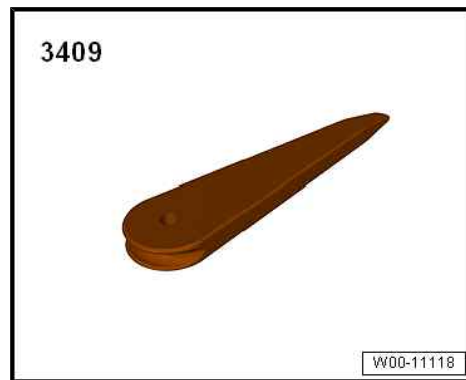
⇒ ["4.6.1 Removing and installing carrier for trim panel \(driver side\)", page 204](#)

⇒ ["4.6.2 Removing and installing carrier for trim panel \(passenger side\)", page 204](#)

4.6.1 Removing and installing carrier for trim panel (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



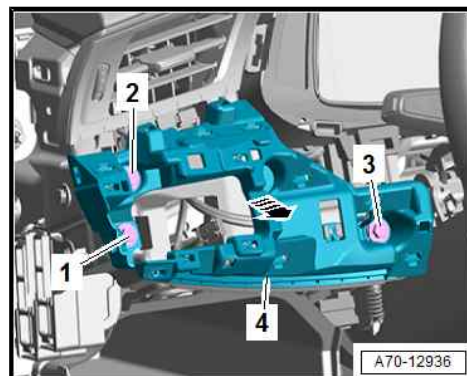
Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove trim panel (top) for dash panel ⇒ [page 200](#) .
- Remove trim panel (centre) for dash panel ⇒ [page 202](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 19](#) .
- Remove trim panel (bottom) for dash panel ⇒ [page 201](#) .
- Remove bolts -1, 2, 3-.
- Unclip carrier for trim panel -4- from dash panel -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 192](#)



4.6.2 Removing and installing carrier for trim panel (passenger side)

Removing

- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .

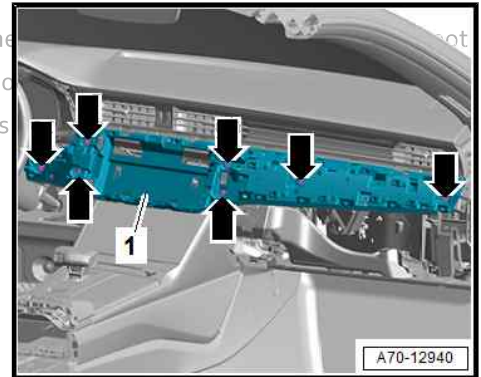


- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 19](#) .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim panel (centre) for dash panel ⇒ [page 203](#) .
- Remove display unit for front information display and operating unit control unit - J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
- Remove trim panel (bottom) for dash panel ⇒ [page 201](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach carrier -1- for trim panel from dash panel.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

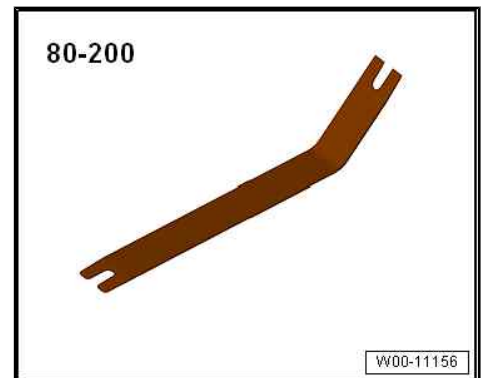
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“4.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 192](#)



4.7 Removing and installing dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ [page 118](#) .
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .
- Remove steering column trim (top) ⇒ [page 21](#) .
- Remove steering column trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 22](#) .
- Remove steering column switch module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527- .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .



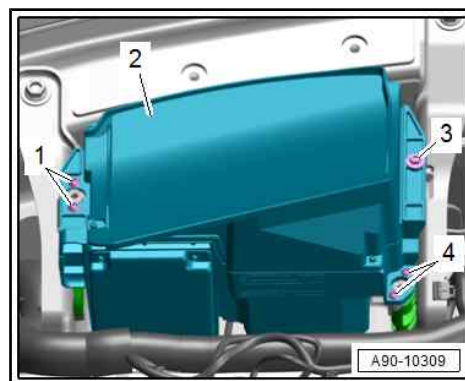
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 19](#) .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove trim panels for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove display unit for front information display and operating unit control unit - J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
- Remove carrier for trim panel for dash panel ⇒ [page 204](#) .
- Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert .
- Remove outer dash panel vent ⇒ [page 210](#) .
- Remove centre vent/outer dash panel vent (passenger side) ⇒ [page 211](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 230](#) .
- Remove loudspeaker trim in dash panel ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- If necessary, remove centre defroster vent (front) ⇒ [page 211](#) .
- Remove loudspeaker (front) in dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove cover for dash panel/head-up display ⇒ [page 209](#) .
- Cover control unit -2- with a soft cloth.



NOTICE

Risk of irreparable damage to control unit for head-up display.

- Only remove bolts from control unit as indicated.
- Never remove bolts for upper section of housing.
- Remove bolts -1, 3, 4-.
- Remove mounting for control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- and let it hang down with electrical wiring attached ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .



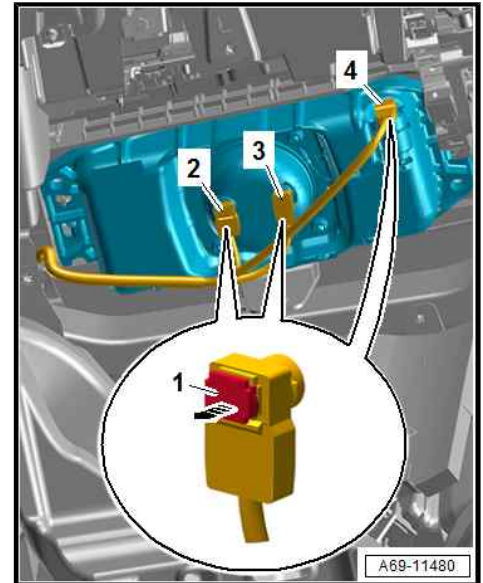
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



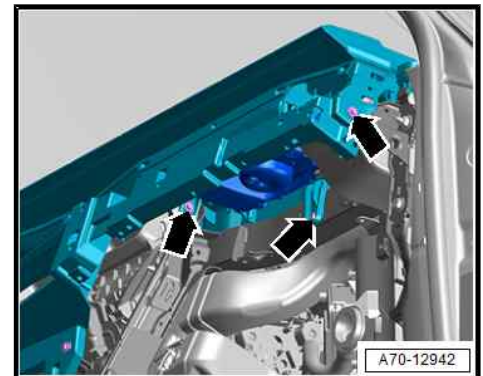
CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury

- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.
- Release connector locking element -1- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connectors -2, 3, 4- at igniters -N491- , -N131- and -N132- (if fitted).

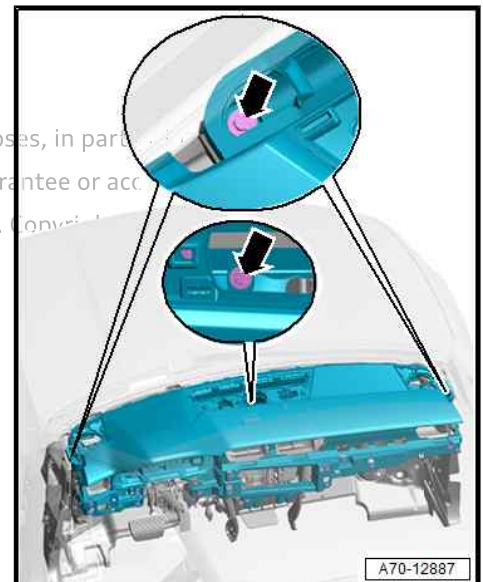


- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at cross member.



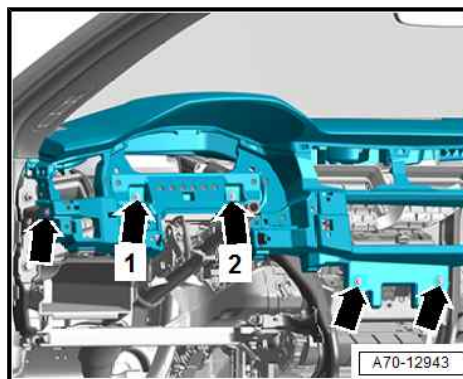
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at cross member.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in particular for reproduction, is prohibited without the prior written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the accuracy of the information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG 2019.

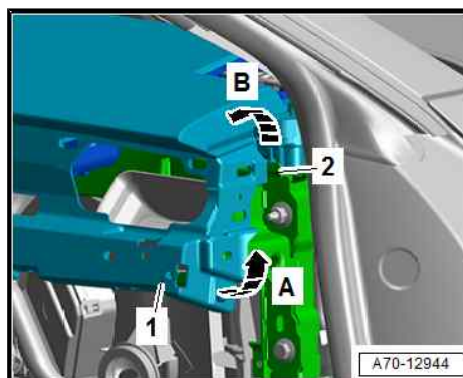




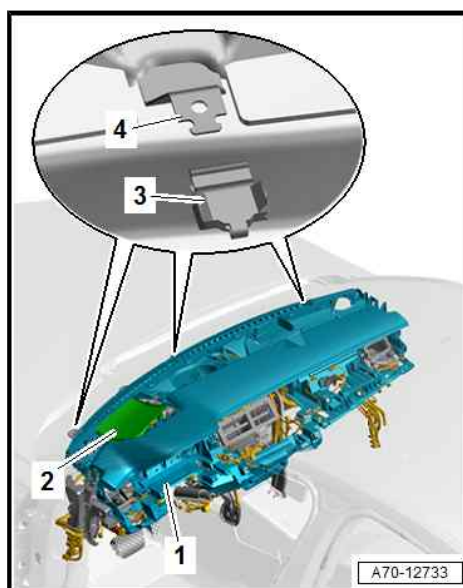
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at cross member.
- Unclip wiring harnesses from dash panel and move them clear.



- Disengage dash panel from cross member -2- on passenger side.
- To do so, take hold of dash panel -1- at position shown, pull it outwards off cross member -arrow A- and lift it upwards -arrow B-.
- Repeat procedure on driver side.



- Lift dash panel -1- slightly and detach carefully from mountings -4- towards rear and from cross member.
- If fitted, release control unit for head-up display -item 2- from its mounting and move it as far as possible towards rear.
- Lift dash panel slightly and detach towards rear, guiding out electrical connectors.
- Take dash panel out of vehicle and set it down on a soft surface.



Installing

- Note assignment of airbag to dash panel ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Fit dash panel in position and guide electrical connectors through opening in dash panel.
- Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the dash panel mountings -4- at the lower windscreen frame.
- When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure mountings for dash panel engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.
- Tighten bolts behind dash panel insert to 3 Nm in the sequence -arrow 1, arrow 2-.

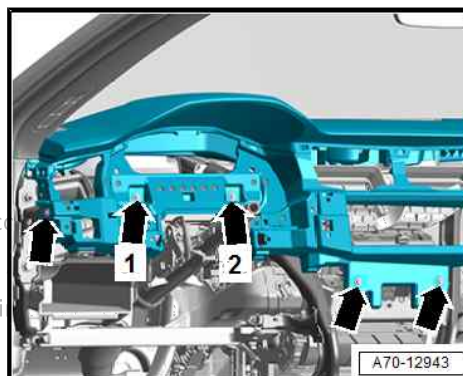
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

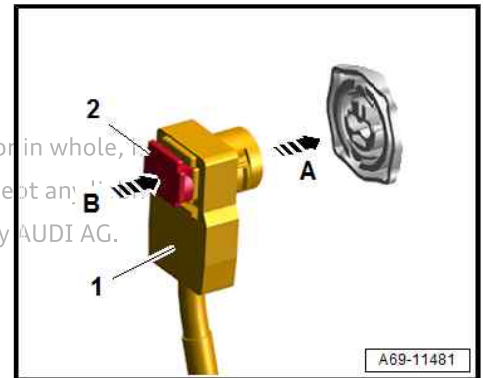
- Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.





- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.
- Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.
- If a fault in the airbag system is displayed after installation in the dash panel insert, the event memory must be interrogated, erased and then re-interrogated ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

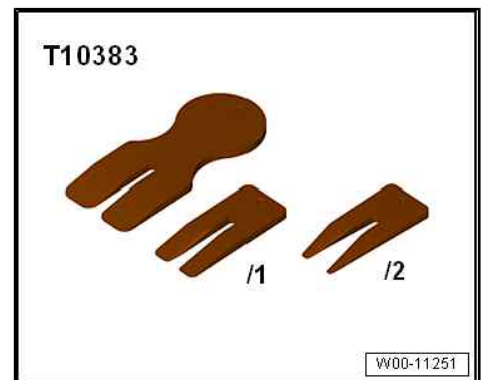
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 192



4.8 Removing and installing cover for dash panel/head-up display

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-

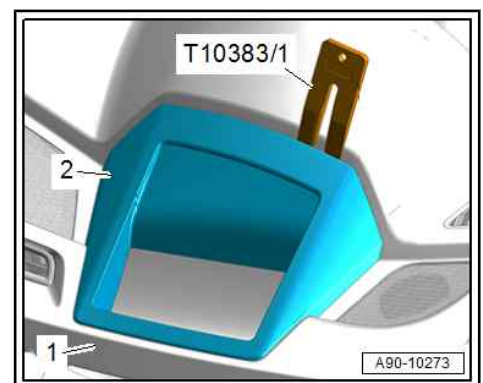


Removing

- Press cover -2- off dash panel -1- using wedge - T10383- .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

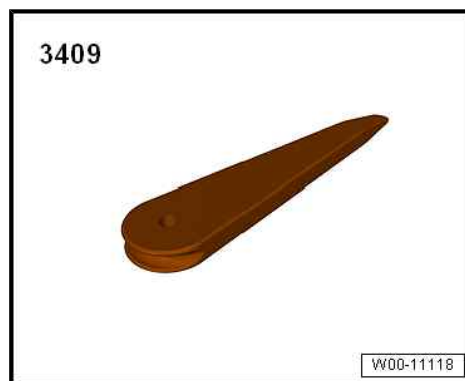


4.9 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

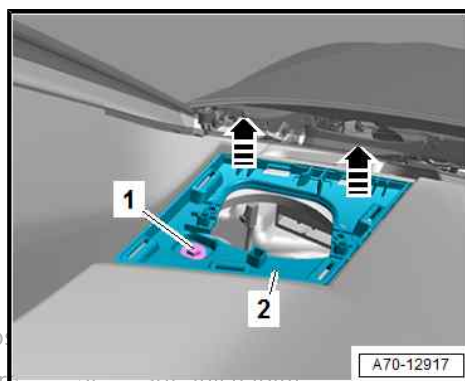


◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Remove loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Disengage mounting -2- for loudspeaker using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 192](#)

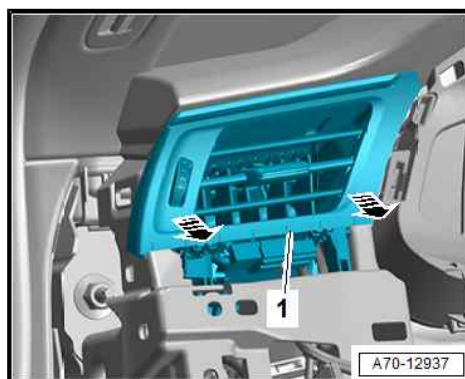
4.10 Removing and installing outer dash panel vent

Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove trim panel (top) for dash panel ⇒ [page 200](#) .
- Remove trim panel (centre) for dash panel ⇒ [page 202](#) .
- Remove trim panel (bottom) for dash panel ⇒ [page 201](#) .
- Remove carrier for trim panel ⇒ [page 204](#) .
- Carefully pull dash panel vent -1- out of dash panel -arrows-.
- Unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



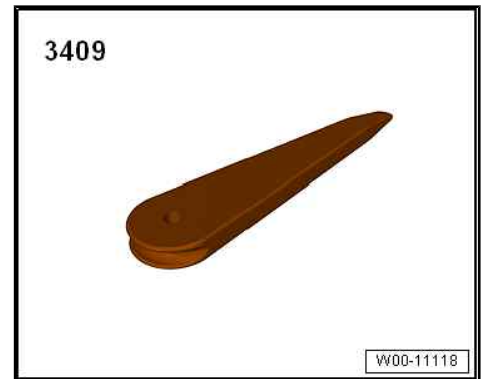


4.11 Removing and installing centre vent

The outer dash panel vent is removed and installed with the centre vent.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



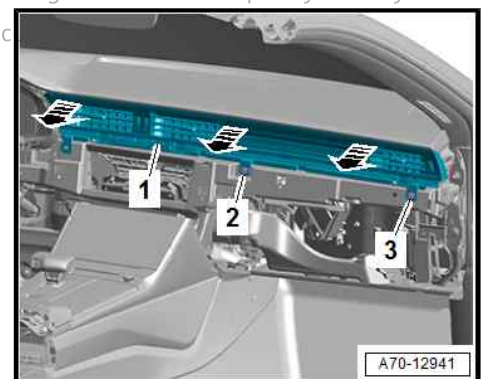
Removing

- Remove trim for dash panel insert ➔ [page 197](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ➔ [page 196](#) .
- Remove glove box ➔ [page 25](#) .
- Remove trim panel (side) for dash panel ➔ [page 199](#) .
- Remove trim panel (centre) for dash panel ➔ [page 203](#) .
- Remove display unit for front information display and operating unit control unit - J685- ➔ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing infotainment system display .
- Remove trim panel (bottom) for dash panel ➔ [page 201](#) .
- Remove carrier for trim panel ➔ [page 204](#) .
- Remove bolts -2, 3-
- Unclip dash panel vent -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.
- Release all other retaining catches, carefully remove dash panel vent and unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ➔ [page 194](#)

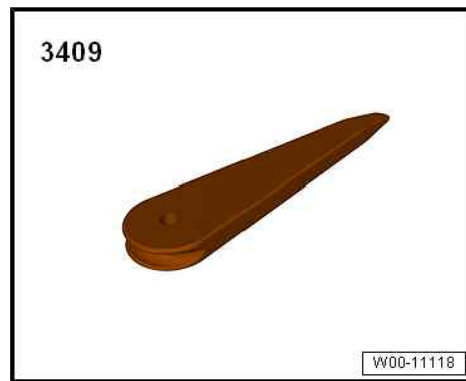


4.12 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

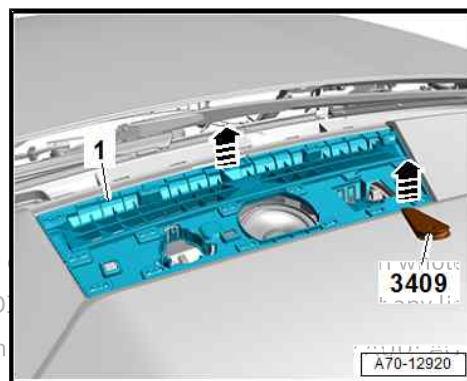


Removing

- Depending on equipment version: Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove dedicated short-range communication aerial - R269- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Aerial systems; Overview of fitting locations - aerial systems .
- Unclip defroster vent -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.
- Release all other retaining catches and remove defroster vent.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD with respect to the correctness of information

is not liability



5 Dash panel cross member

⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member", page 213](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member", page 215](#)

⇒ ["5.3 Removing and installing support for knee bolster", page 219](#)

5.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member

1 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Threads and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection
- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 214](#)

2 - Threaded pin

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 20 Nm

3 - Pop rivet nut with adjuster element

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Riveted to windscreen frame
- ☐ Check that spacer bush of adjuster element can move freely
- ☐ Turn spacer bush down as far as it will go (max. 0.5 Nm)

4 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 214](#)

5 - Securing/compensation element

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Clip into cross member
- ☐ Check that nut of compensation element moves freely
- ☐ Turn nut down as far as it will go until compensation element engages in transport lock

6 - Bolt

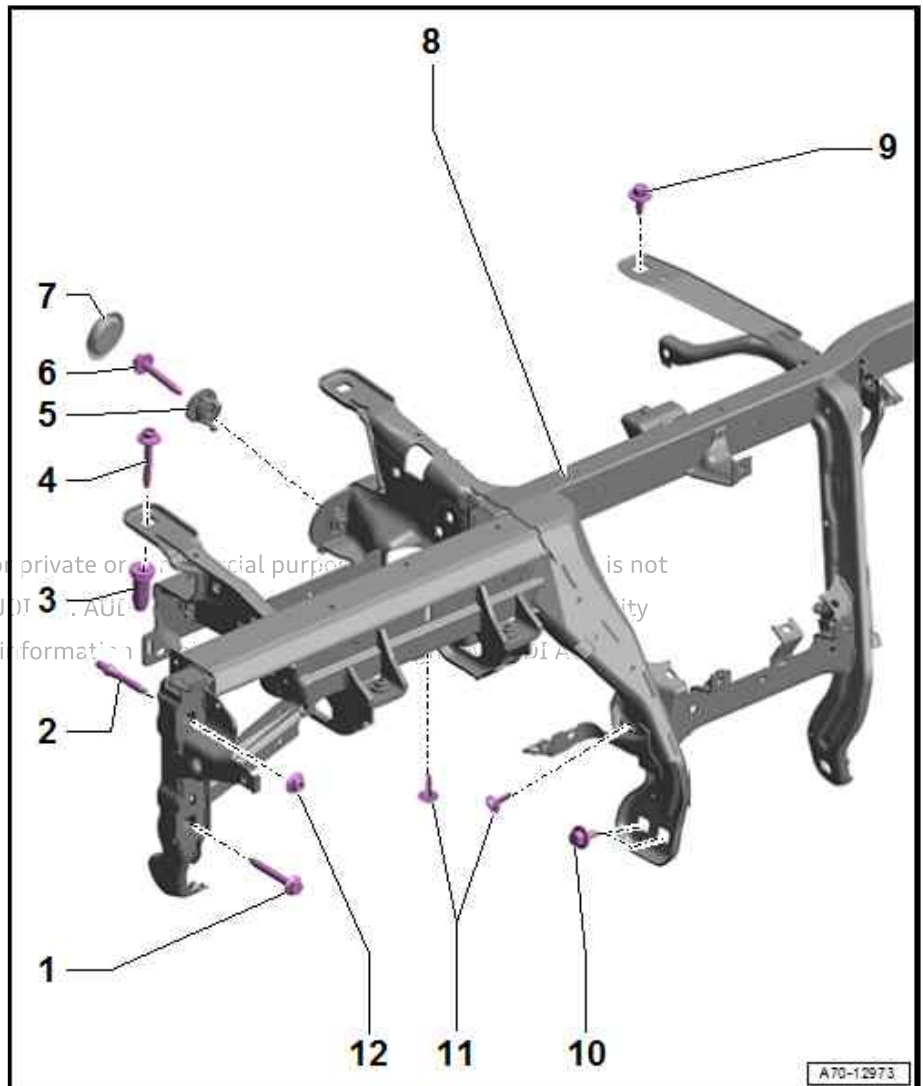
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 214](#)

7 - Plug

- ☐ 2x

8 - Cross member

- ☐ For dash panel
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 215](#)





9 - Bolt

- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 214](#)

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 214](#)

11 - Bolt

- ☐ For heater and air conditioning unit
- ☐ 5x
- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 214](#)

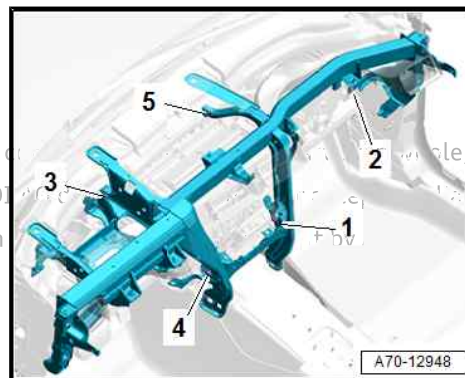
12 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Renew after removing
- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 214](#)

Dash panel cross member to air conditioning unit (front) - tightening torque and sequence

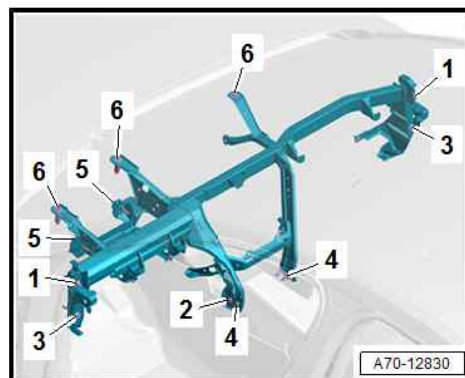
- Tighten bolts to 3.6 Nm in sequence -1 ... 5-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not responsible with respect to the correctness of information.



Dash panel cross member to body - tightening torque and sequence

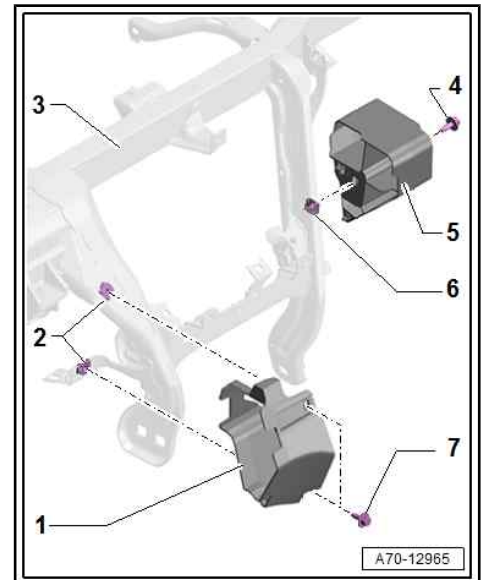
- Tighten bolts to 20 Nm in sequence -1 ... 6-.





Supports for knee bolster - NAR vehicles

- 1 - Support (driver side); removing and installing ⇒ [page 219](#)
- 2 - Speed nuts; insert in cross member
- 3 - Dash panel cross member
- 4 - Bolt, 3 Nm
- 5 - Support (passenger side); removing and installing ⇒ [page 219](#)
- 6 - Speed nut; insert in cross member
- 7 - Bolt, 3 Nm



5.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Bit XZN 10 - T10501-



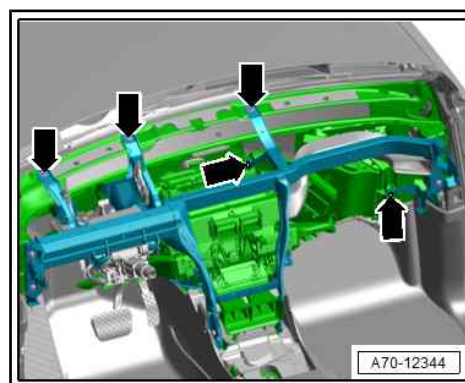
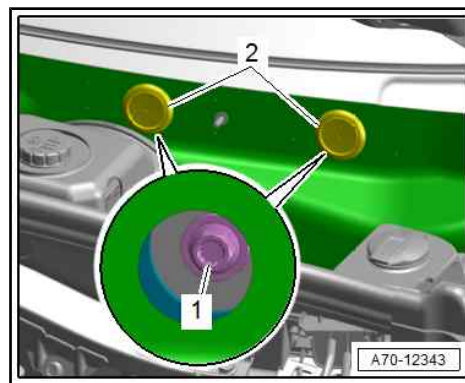
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





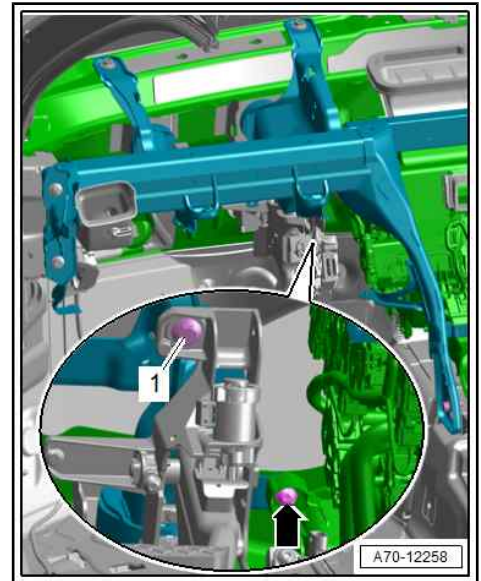
Removing

- Remove windscreen wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing windscreen wiper motor - V- .
- Detach plug -2- outwards.
- Remove bolts -1- for cross member from plenum chamber back panel using bit XZN 10 - T10501- .
- Remove windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 ; Windscreen; Removing and installing windscreen .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove control unit for head-up display - J898- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing control unit for head-up display .
- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 205](#) .
- Remove active steering control unit - J792- (if fitted) ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 44 ; Dynamic steering; Removing and installing active steering control unit - J792- .
- Remove footwell cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 20](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove function unit for fragrance diffuser system - GX43- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air ionisation system; Overview of fitting locations - air ionisation system .
- Remove fuse holder in dash panel (driver side) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .
- Remove or move clear air ducts for dash panel vents on cross member ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
- Remove air distribution housing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
- Unclip electrical wiring harness and move it clear.
- Unbolt steering column from dash panel cross member and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

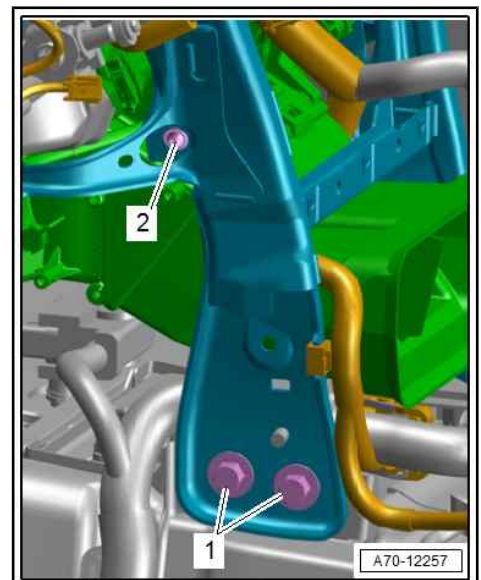




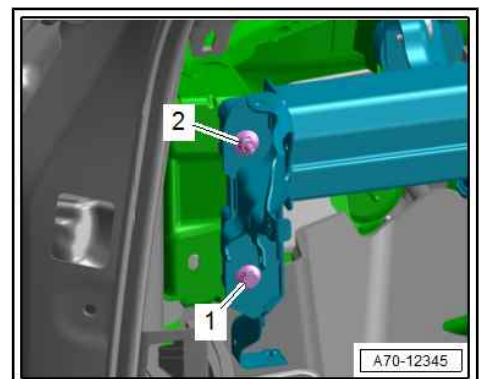
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Remove bolt -arrow- for heater and air conditioning unit.



- Mark height and lateral position at dash panel cross member for re-installation.
- Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection and unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove bolt -2- for heater and air conditioning unit.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.



- Remove bolt -1- and nut -2- for dash panel cross member.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Unclip and disengage wires at dash panel cross member and move them clear.
- A second mechanic is required to detach dash panel cross member.
- Disengage dash panel cross member from heater and air conditioning unit and take out of passenger compartment towards rear.

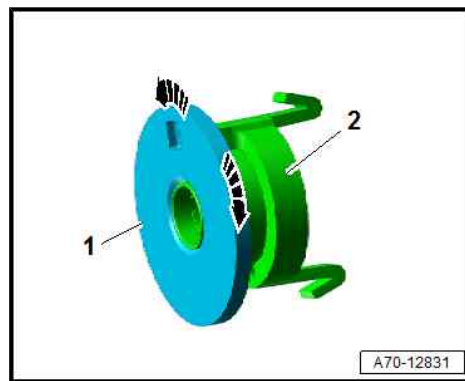


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installing

- Check all securing/compensation elements -2- on dash panel cross member. It must be possible to turn compensation element -1- easily -arrows-.
- Turn nut down as far as it will go until compensation element engages in transport lock.
- Carefully insert dash panel cross member in body.
- Align dash panel cross member with A-pillar in accordance with markings (made during removal).
- Tighten nuts and bolts for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

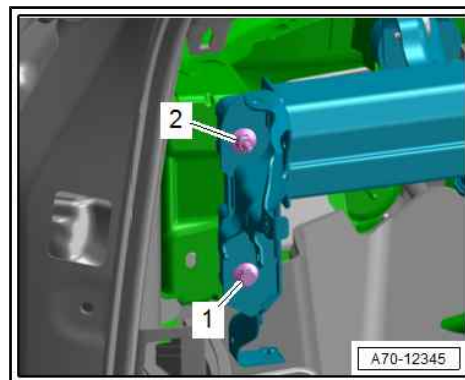
- Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Exploded view - steering column .
- Install mounting bracket for pedal cluster ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 46 ; Brake pedal; Exploded view - brake pedal .
- Depending on equipment version: Install control unit for head-up display - J898- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing control unit for head-up display .
- Install active steering control unit - J792- (if fitted previously) ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 44 ; Dynamic steering; Removing and installing active steering control unit - J792- .

Checking installation position of dash panel cross member

- Insert dash panel to check if it fits correctly.
- Bolt dash panel (left and right) to dash panel cross member.
- Close doors.
- Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
- Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.
- If setting is incorrect, note down the lateral and/or vertical deviation.
- Unscrew bolts on dash panel cross member.
- Adjust dash panel cross member in accordance with notes on deviations.
- Tighten bolt -1- and nut -2- for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).
- Install windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 ; Windscreen; Removing and installing windscreen .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member", page 213](#) ,
⇒ [Fig. "Dash panel cross member to body - tightening torque and sequence", page 214](#)





5.3 Removing and installing support for knee bolster

⇒ [“5.3.1 Removing and installing support \(driver side\)”, page 219](#)

⇒ [“5.3.2 Removing and installing support \(passenger side\)”, page 219](#)

5.3.1 Removing and installing support (driver side)

Removing

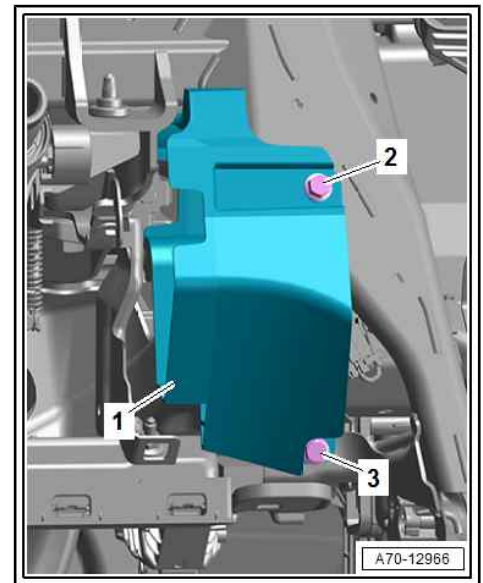
- Move steering wheel upwards and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 205](#) .
- Remove bolts -2, 3-.
- Detach support -1- from cross member.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [Fig. ““Supports for knee bolster - NAR vehicles””, page 215](#)



5.3.2 Removing and installing support (passenger side)

Removing

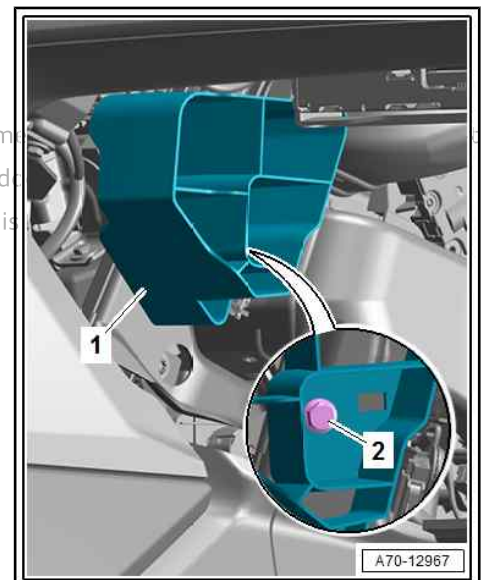
- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 25](#) .
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Disengage support -1- upwards and detach it from cross member.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [Fig. ““Supports for knee bolster - NAR vehicles””, page 215](#)





6 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ [“6.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 220](#)

⇒ [“6.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 223](#)

⇒ [“6.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 224](#)

⇒ [“6.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 225](#)

⇒ [“6.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 226](#)

⇒ [“6.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 227](#)

⇒ [“6.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 228](#)

⇒ [“6.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 229](#)

⇒ [“6.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 229](#)

⇒ [“6.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 230](#)

⇒ [“6.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 234](#)

⇒ [“6.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 237](#)

⇒ [“6.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 240](#)

⇒ [“6.14 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 244](#)

⇒ [“6.15 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 244](#)

⇒ [“6.16 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 245](#)

⇒ [“6.17 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 248](#)

6.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ [“6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Saloon”, page 220](#)

⇒ [“6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Avant”, page 222](#)

6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Saloon



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 227](#)

2 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 226](#)

3 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 223](#)

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 225](#)

5 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 225](#)

6 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 224](#)

7 - Foot rest

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 244](#)

8 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 224](#)

9 - A-pillar trim (top)

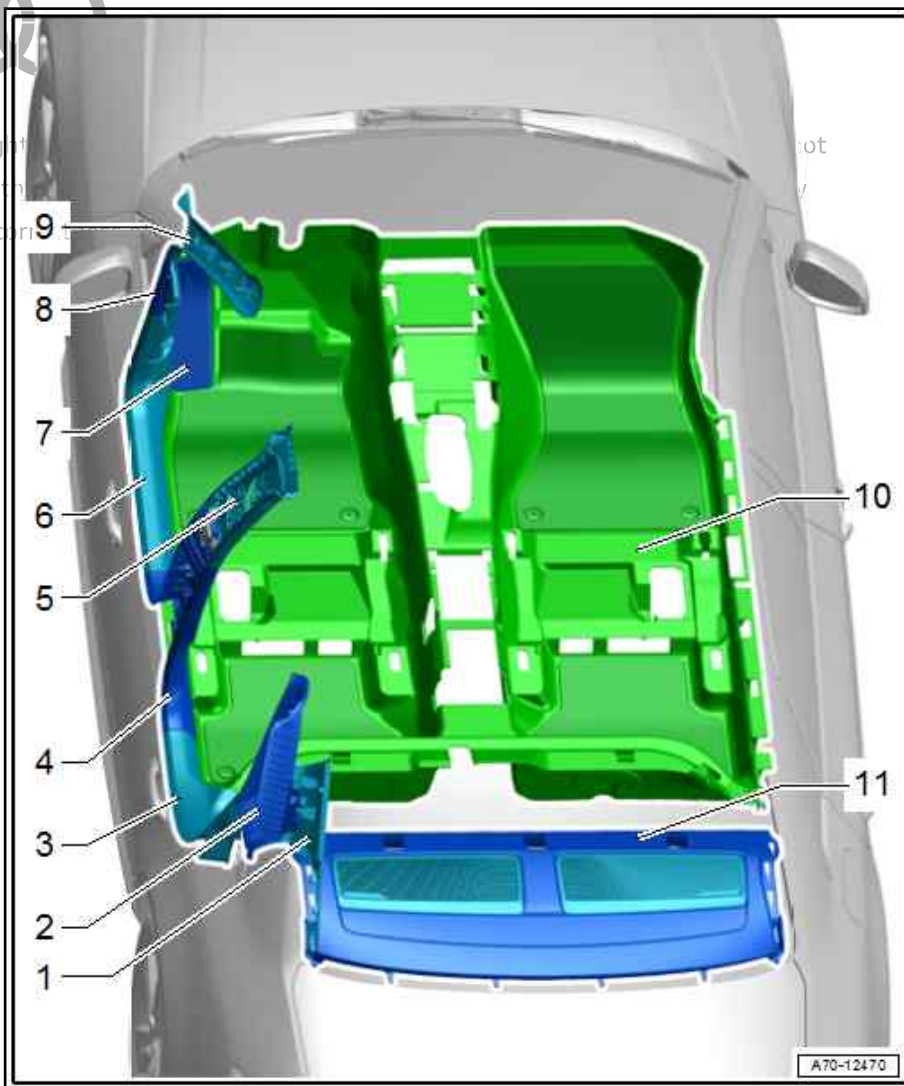
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 224](#)

10 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 228](#)

11 - Rear shelf

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ [page 229](#)





6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Avant

1 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 227](#)

2 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 223](#)

3 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 226](#)

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 225](#)

5 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 225](#)

6 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 224](#)

7 - Foot rest

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 244](#)

8 - Trim cover for A-pillar

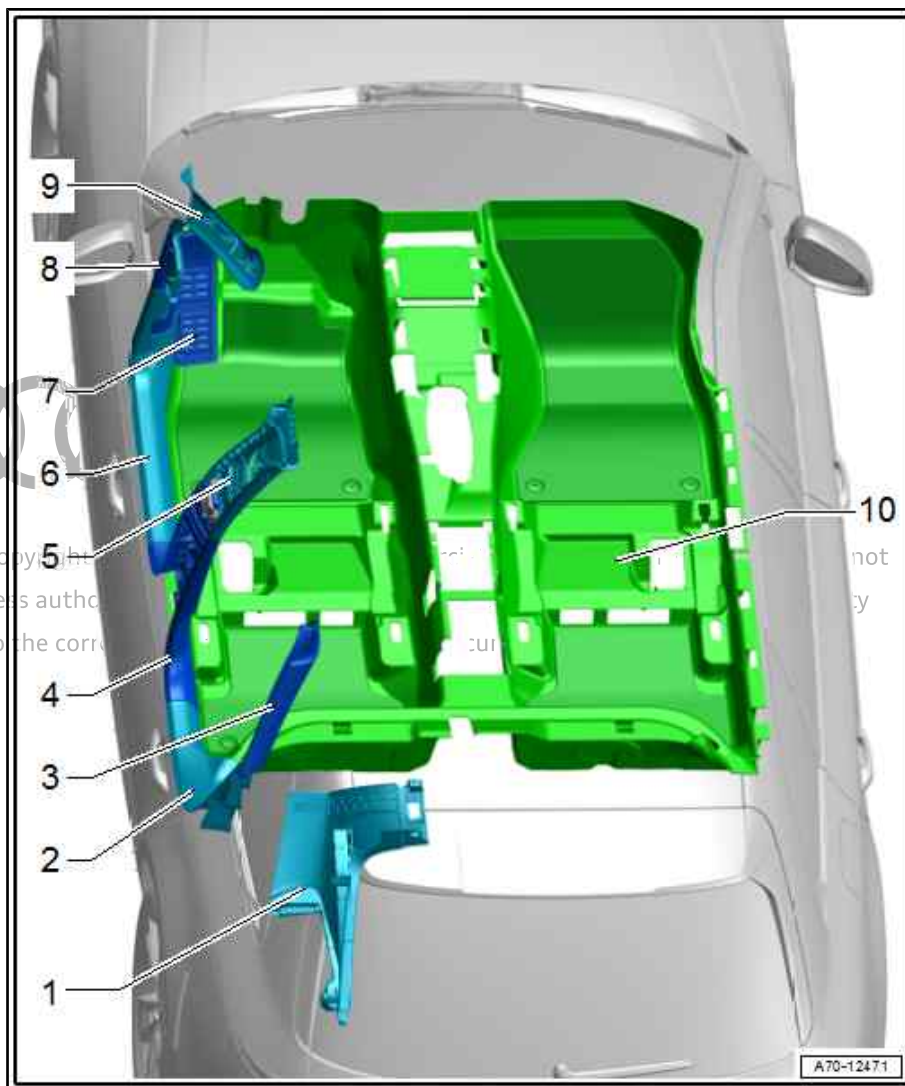
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 224](#)

9 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 224](#)

10 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 228](#)





6.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

1 - Clip

- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim

2 - Sill panel trim

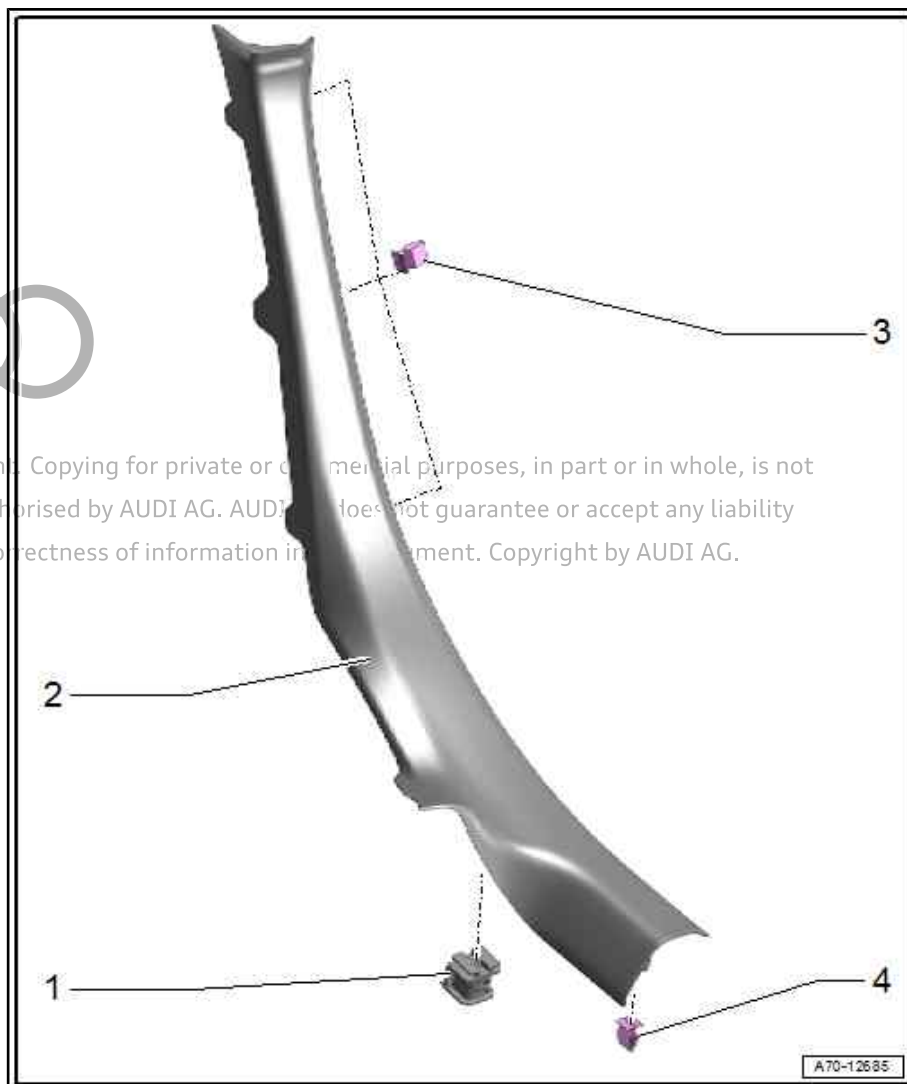
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 229](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of inner door seal

3 - Clip

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Clip

- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed





6.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim

1 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 233](#)
- ☐ Insert in floor covering at front
- ☐ Fold over lip of inner door seal

3 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 230](#)
- ☐ Clip into A-pillar trim panels
- ☐ Fold over lip of inner door seal

4 - Clip

- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Clip

- ☐ With catch
- ☐ Renew if A-pillar trim is removed
- ☐ Insert in trim

6 - Retaining pin

- ☐ 3.5 Nm

7 - A-pillar trim (top)

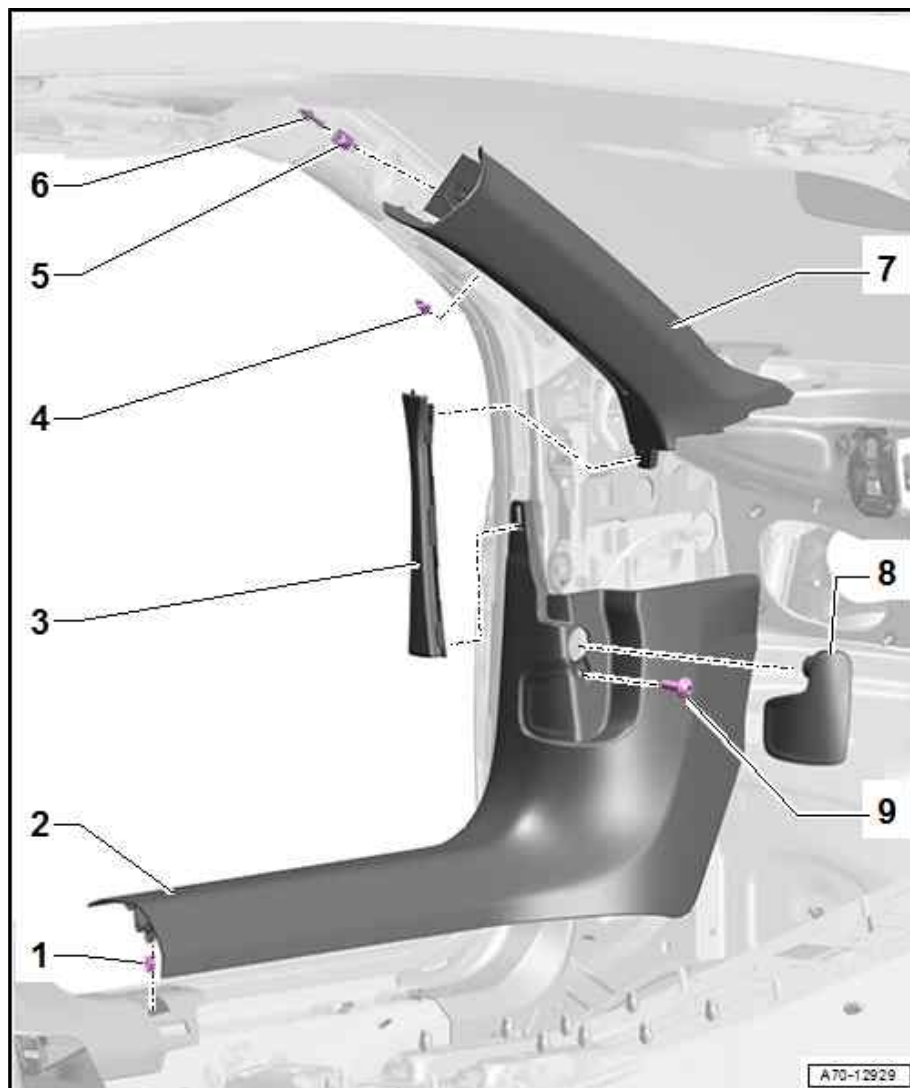
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 230](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of inner door seal

8 - Handle for operating lever

- ☐ For bonnet lock
- ☐ Driver side only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock

9 - Bolt

- ☐ Driver side only



6.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim

1 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 234](#)
- ❑ Insert at bottom in
mounting points, en-
gage on B-pillar and clip
onto B-pillar trim at top
- ❑ Fold over lip of door
seals

2 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Vent

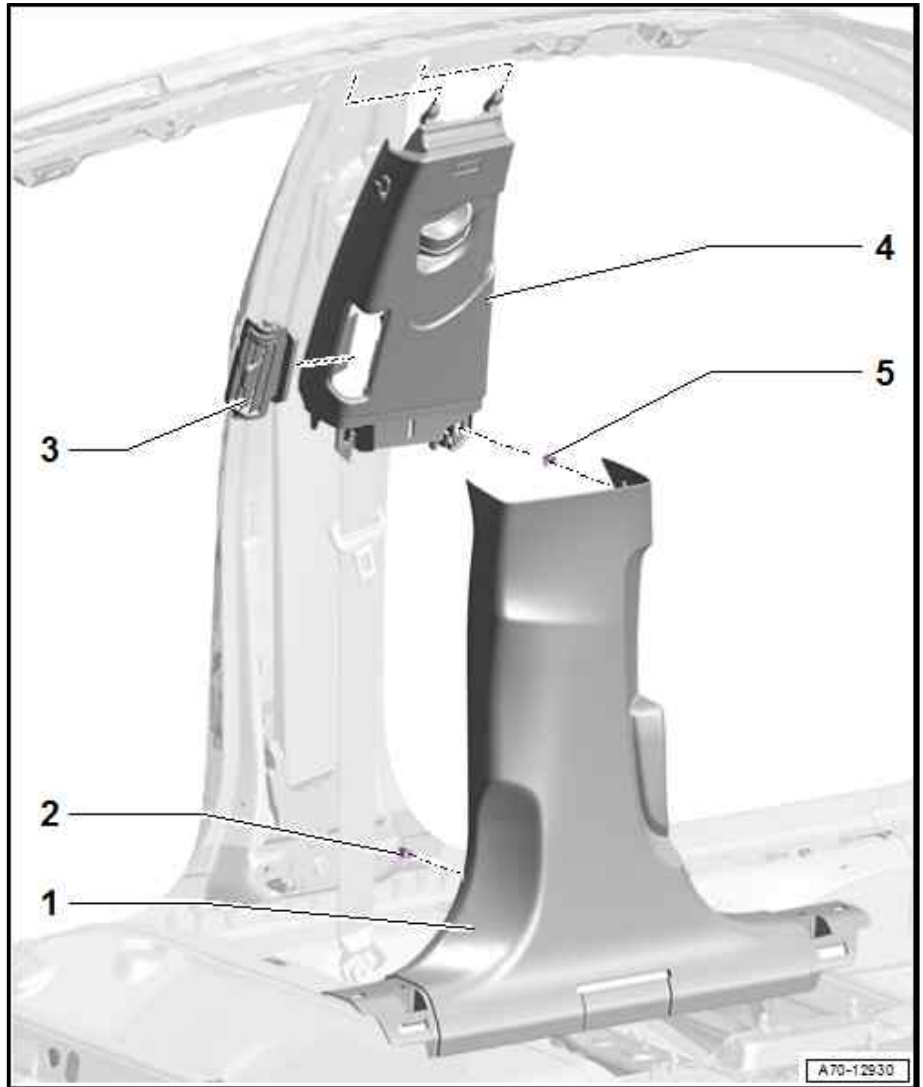
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ **“6.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)”, page 235**

4 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 235](#)
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting points at roof and clip onto B-pillar
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

5 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool T40280
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed





6.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim

1 - Trim for belt guide

- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ ["1.10.3 Removing and installing outer belt guide \(rear\) - Saloon", page 96](#)

2 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172A-

3 - Curtain airbag guide (Saloon)

- ❑ Insert into mounting points at roof

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm

5 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

6 - Clip

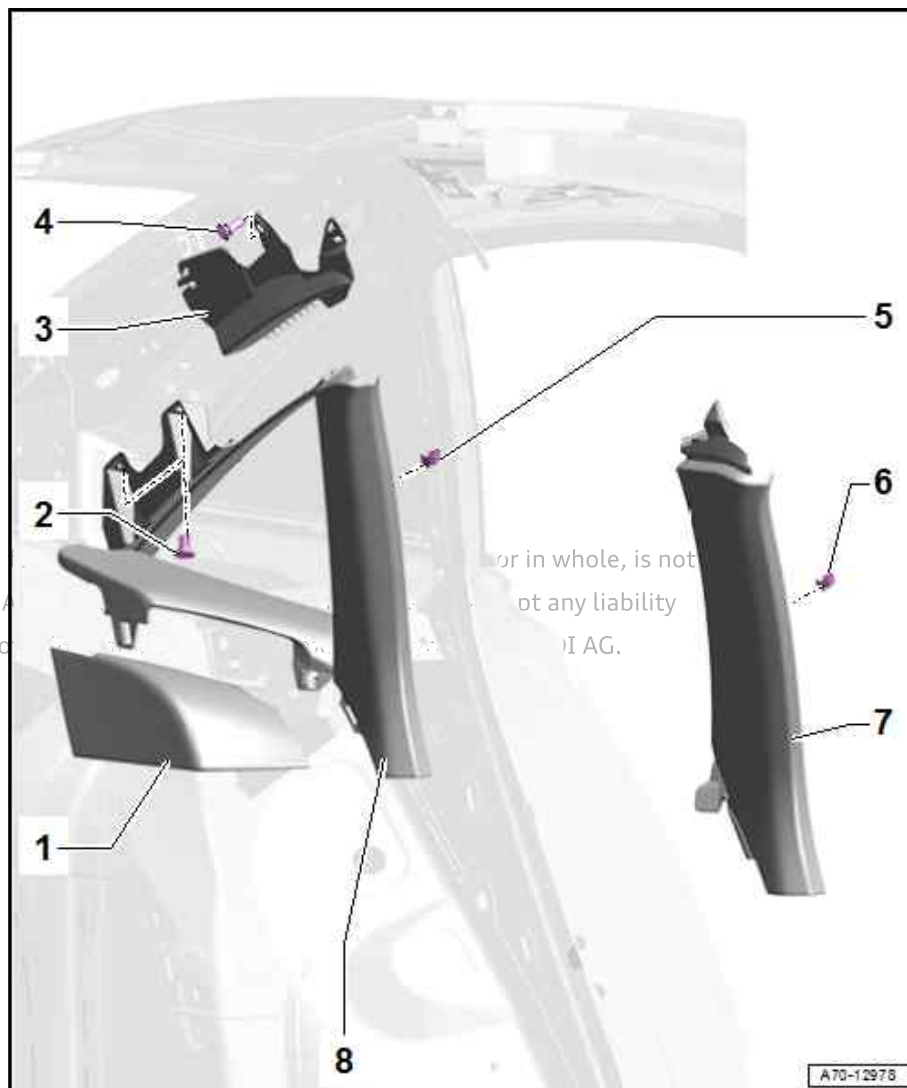
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - C-pillar trim (Avant)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 239](#)
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Press onto C-pillar cover until it engages completely

8 - C-pillar trim (Saloon)

- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 237](#)
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Press onto C-pillar cover until it engages completely





6.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim

1 - D-pillar trim (Saloon)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 240](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages
audibly
- ☐ Engage in rear shelf and
press onto D-pillar until
it engages audibly

2 - Bolt

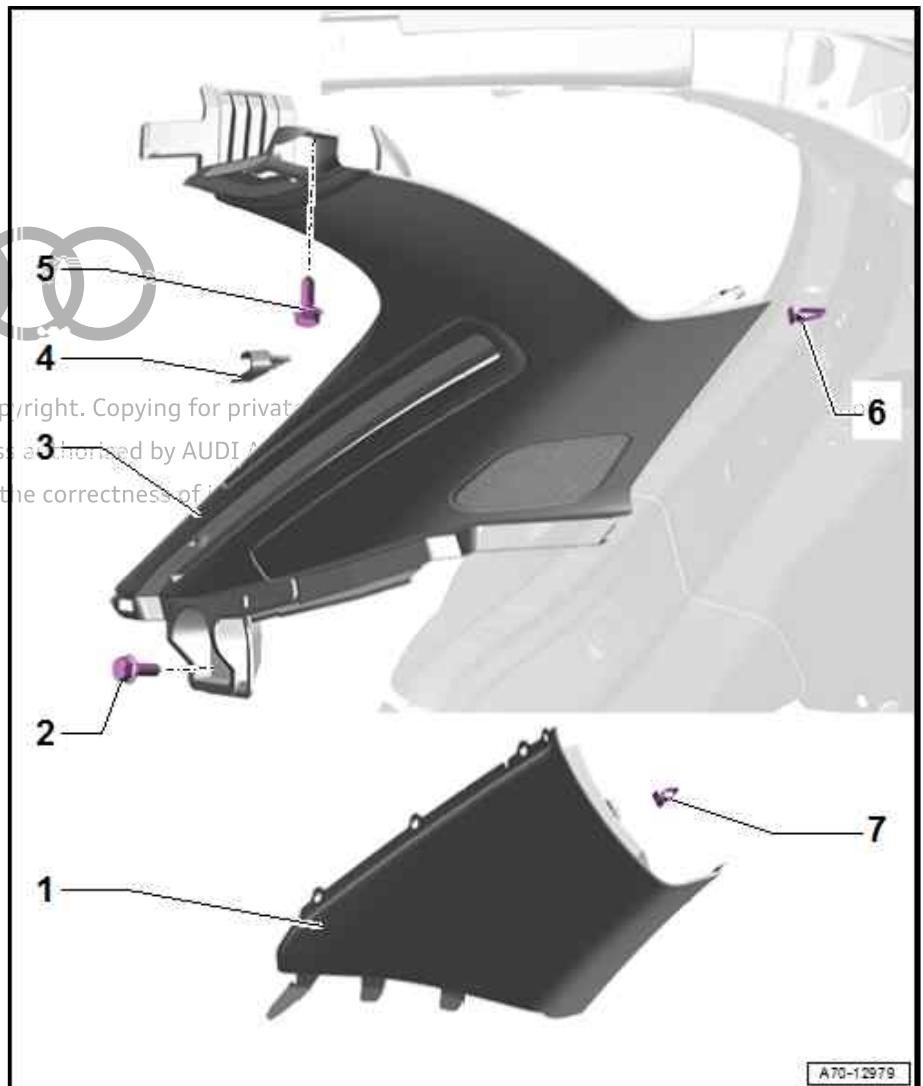
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

3 - D-pillar trim (Avant)

- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, re-
fer to ⇒ [Electronic parts
catalogue](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 241](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages
audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid
seal

4 - Actuator

- ☐ For luggage compart-
ment cover
- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, re-
fer to ⇒ [Electronic parts
catalogue](#)
- ☐ Clip into rail
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["6.13.2 Removing and
installing D-pillar trim -
Avant", page 241](#)



5 - Bolt

- ☐ 6 Nm

6 - Clip

- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



6.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering

1 - Retainer

- ☐ For floor mat
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert into floor covering from underneath

2 - Cap

- ☐ For floor mat
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Unclip using removal lever - 80-200-
- ☐ Press into retainer until it engages audibly

3 - Retainer

- ☐ For floor mat
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert into floor mat from underneath

4 - Cap

- ☐ For floor mat
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Unclip using removal lever - 80-200-
- ☐ Press into retainer until it engages audibly

5 - Foot rest

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 244](#)
- ☐ Engage in relay and fuse carrier

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

7 - Cap

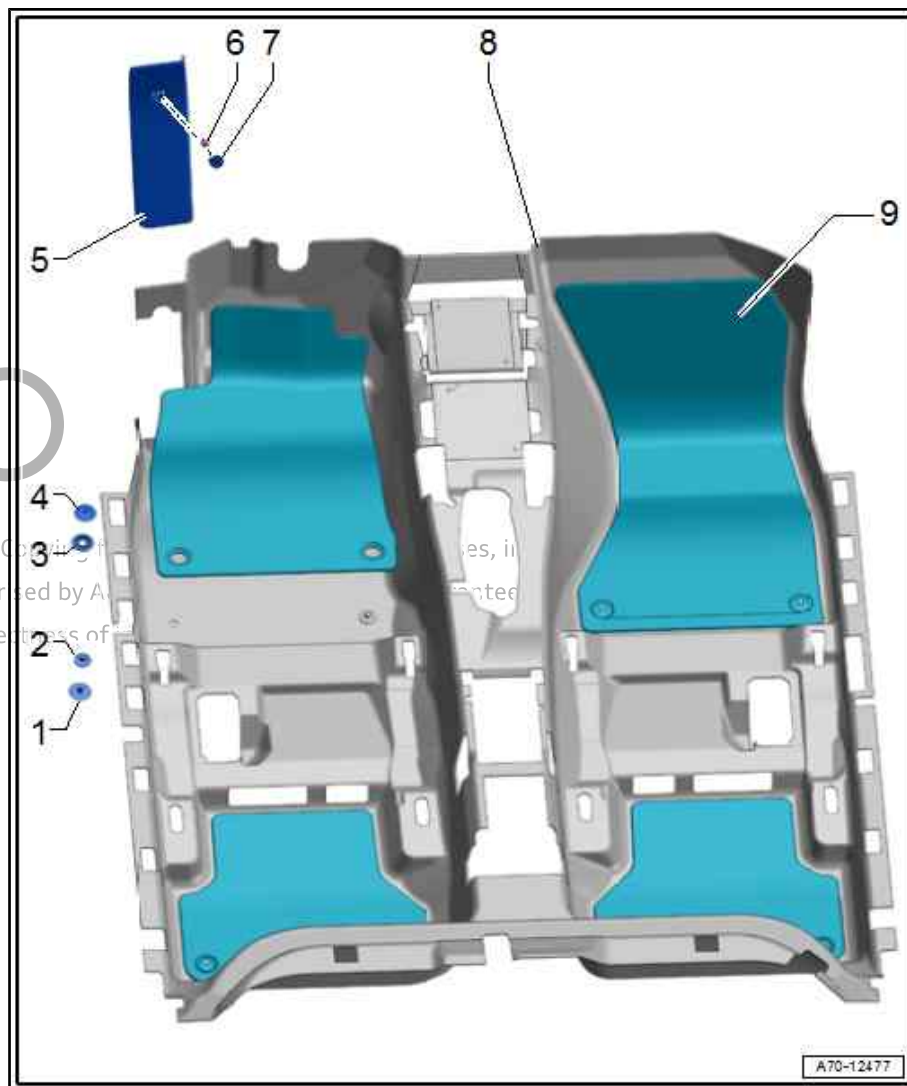
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Floor covering

- ☐ One-piece
- ☐ With perforation
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 244](#)

9 - Floor mat

- ☐ 4x





6.8 Exploded view - rear shelf

1 - Rear shelf

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 245](#)
- ☐ Insert rear shelf in rear window frame and press on until it engages audibly.

2 - Cover for child seat anchor

- ☐ 2x or 3x (depending on country-specific version)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 108](#)
- ☐ Insert in rear shelf and press on until it engages audibly

3 - Loudspeaker trim

- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 248](#)
- ☐ Insert in rear shelf and press on until it engages audibly

4 - Trim for rear window frame

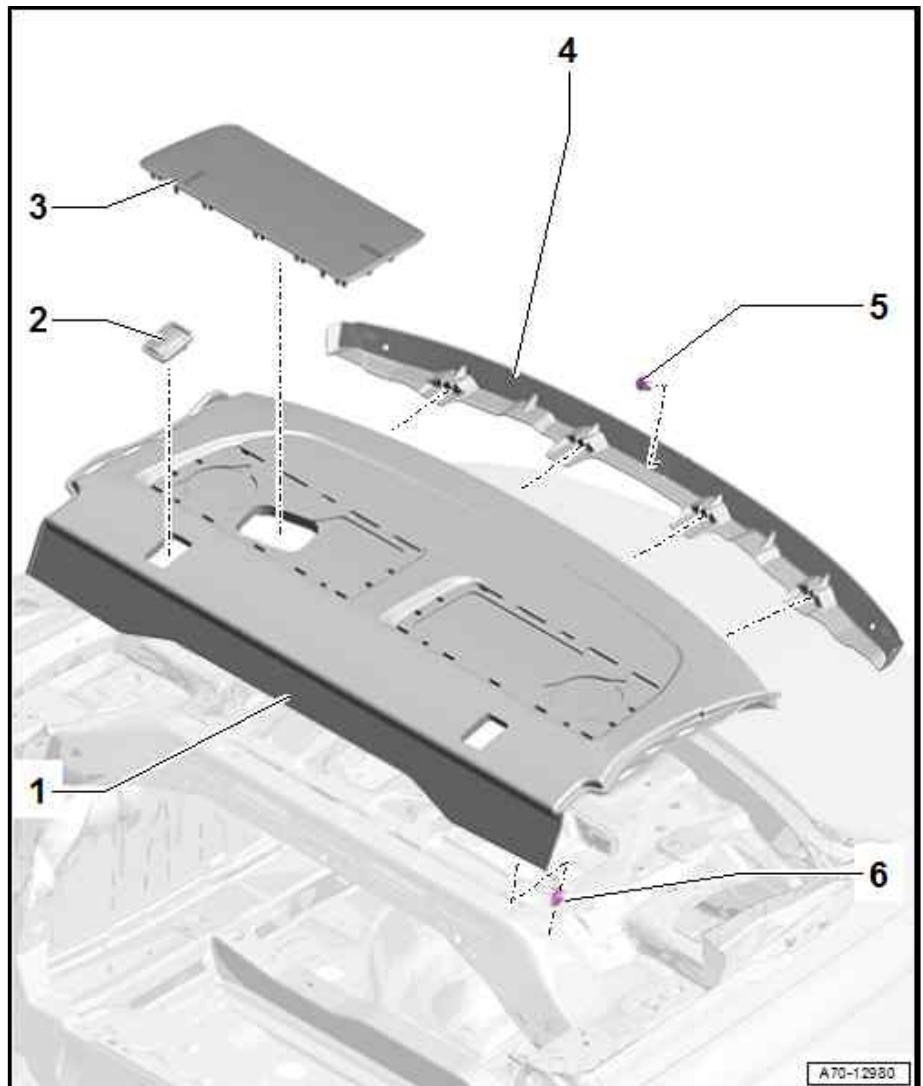
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["6.16 Removing and installing rear shelf", page 245](#)

5 - Fastener

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Remove with pliers - T40172A-

6 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in rear shelf
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



6.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim

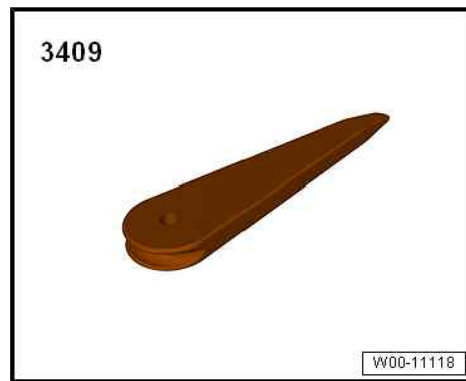
Special tools and workshop equipment required



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

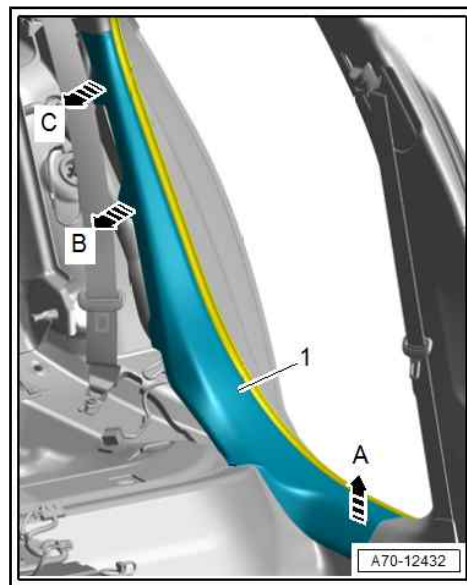


Removing

- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Remove seat bench ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats .
- Depending on equipment/country-specific version: Remove fixed backrest or individual rear seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .
- Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member -arrow A-.
- Pull sill panel trim off C-pillar -arrows B, C- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



6.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

⇒ ["6.10.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim \(top\)", page 230](#)

⇒ ["6.10.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim \(bottom\)", page 233](#)

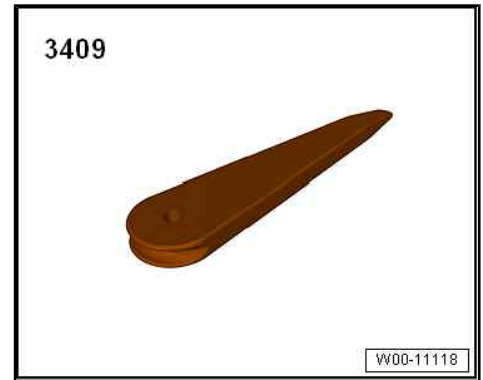
6.10.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

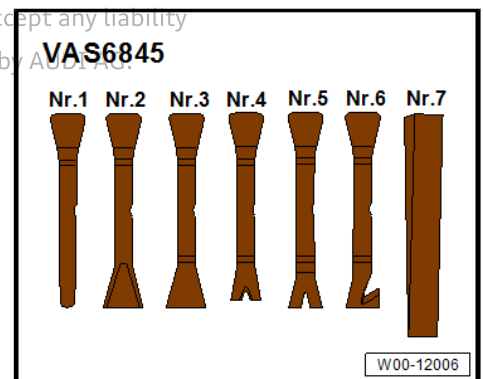


◆ Removal tool - T40280-



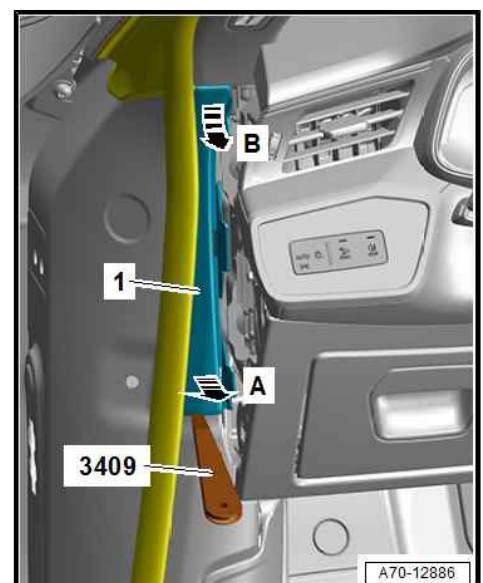
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A- and disengage from A-pillar trim (top) -arrow B-.

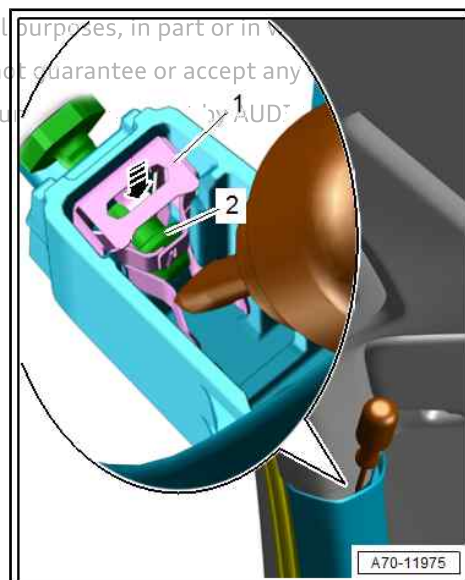
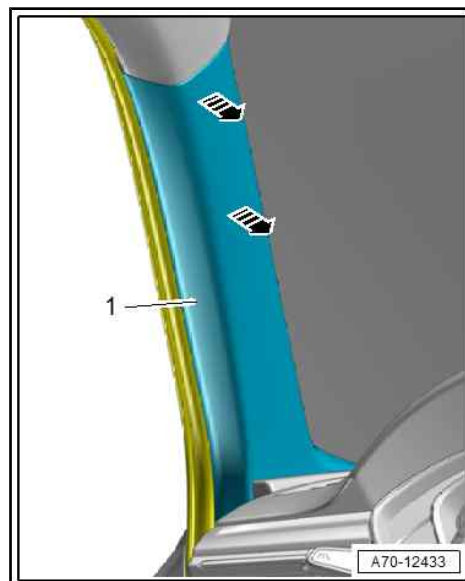




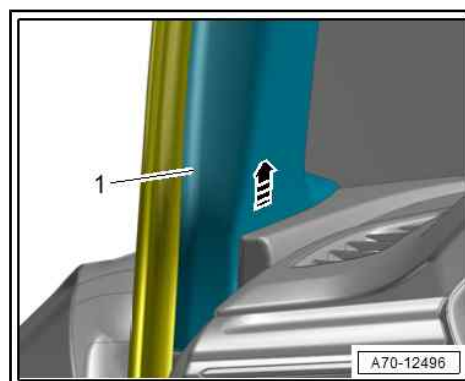
- Move A-pillar trim -1- clear in vicinity of inner door seal.
- Unclip A-pillar trim as far as first detent using removal lever - 3409- -arrows-.



- To disengage trim from retaining pin at A-pillar, bring clip (with catches) -1- into removal position (apply scraper from -VAS 6845- or a flat-bladed screwdriver at clip as shown).
- Press clip in trim downwards -arrow- using scraper or flat-bladed screwdriver; this causes head -2- of pin to slide out of catches on clip.



- Carefully lift trim -1- out of dash panel -arrow-.

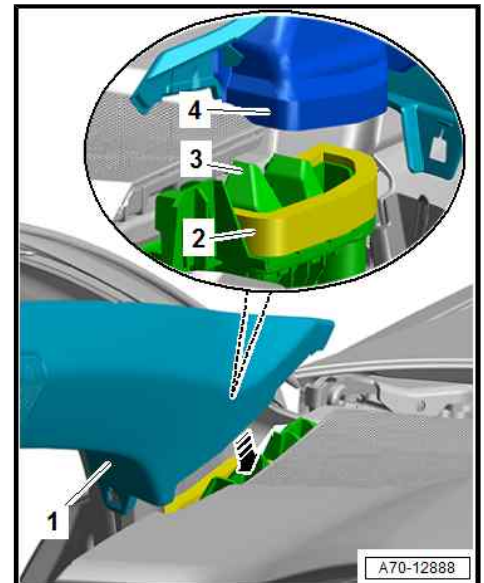




Installing

- Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).
- To install trim, insert new clip (with catches) in trim and move into installation position.
- Insert A-pillar trim -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.
- Air duct -3- for side window defrost function must be seated correctly at connection -4- of air duct in dash panel.
- If foam seal -2- is damaged or not bonded on properly, it can come loose when air duct is inserted, causing noises during air conditioner operation.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



6.10.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

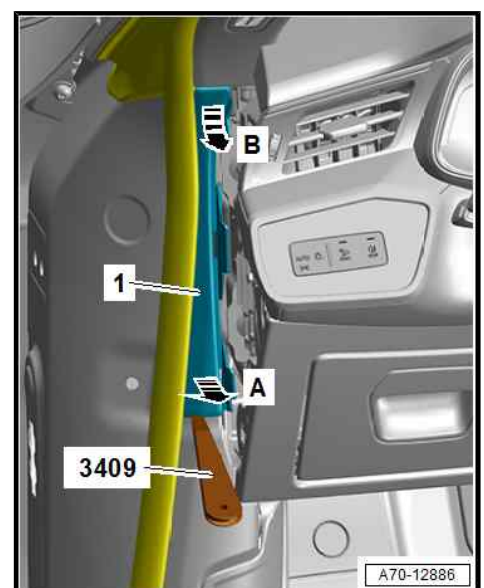
- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Move front seat as far back as it will go.
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A- and disengage from A-pillar trim (top) -arrow B-.



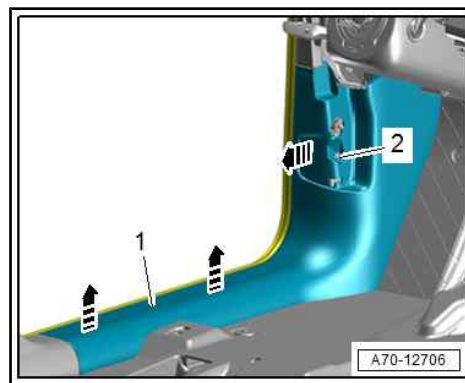


Driver side:

- Remove operating lever for Bowden cable for bonnet lock ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .
- Unscrew bolt -2- for A-pillar trim (bottom).

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

- Move A-pillar trim clear in area of door seal.
- Starting at rear, unclip A-pillar trim -1- from side member -bottom arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- and pull it off towards rear -right arrow-.
- Detach A-pillar trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“6.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 224](#)

6.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

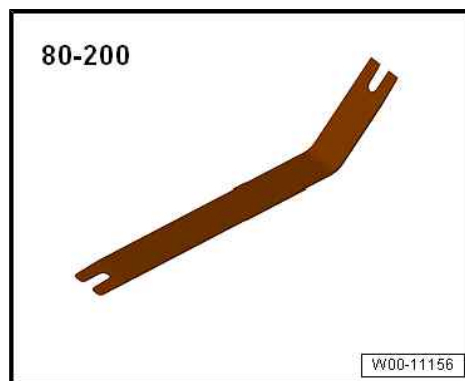
⇒ [“6.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim \(bottom\)”, page 234](#)

⇒ [“6.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim \(top\)”, page 235](#)

6.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



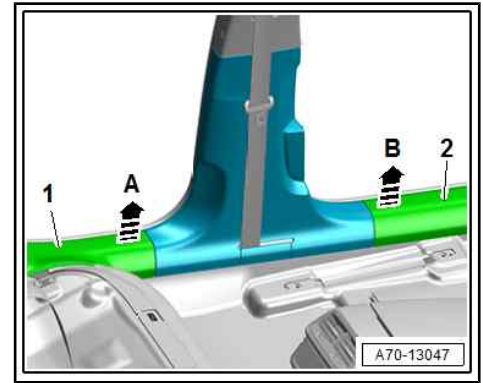
- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-





Removing

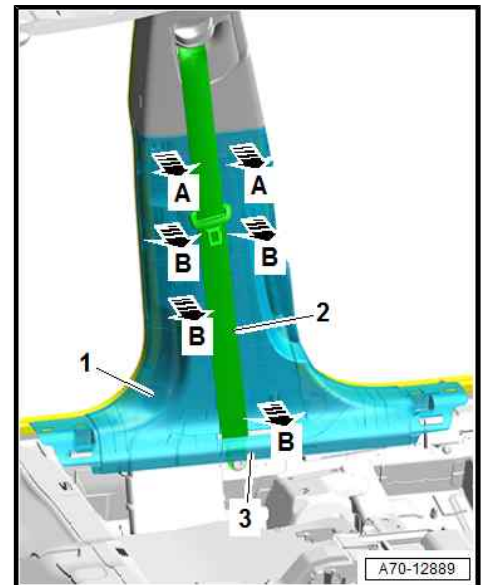
- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Unclip A-pillar trim (bottom) -2- from B-pillar trim (bottom) -arrow B-.
- Unclip sill panel trim -1- from B-pillar trim (bottom) -arrow A-.



- Move B-pillar trim -1- clear in vicinity of door seals and pull it off B-pillar trim (top) by hand -arrows A-.
- Unclip B-pillar trim from B-pillar -arrows B- using removal lever - 80-200- .
- Release belt guide -3- and guide out belt -2-.
- Remove B-pillar trim upwards.

Installing

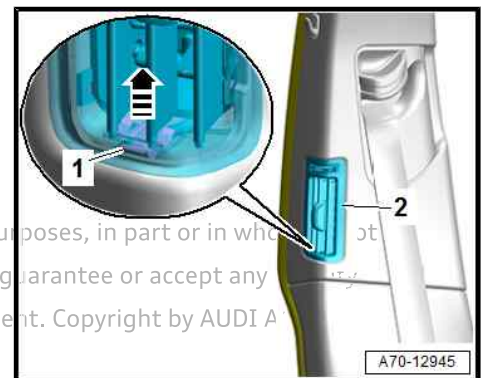
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



6.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)

Removing

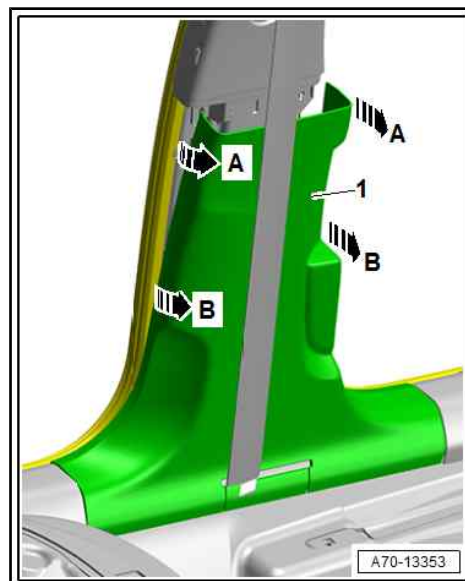
- If fitted, remove vent -2- from B-pillar trim and unplug electrical connector.
- To do so, release catch -1- -arrow- with a small flat-bladed screwdriver.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



- Release B-pillar trim (bottom) -1- from B-pillar by hand -arrows A, B-.
- Pull top section of trim as far as possible inwards off B-pillar.



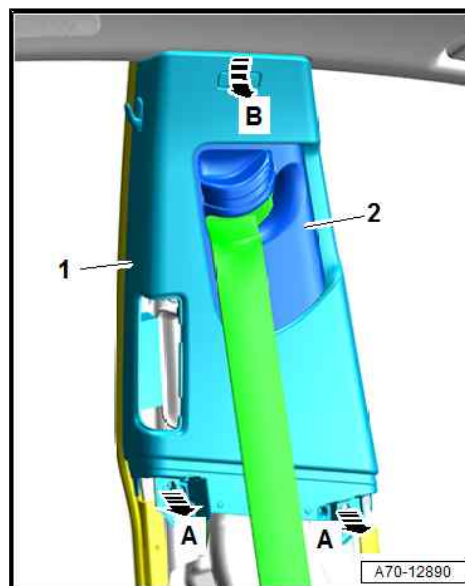
- Move belt height adjuster -2- to lowest possible position.
- Move B-pillar trim -1- clear in vicinity of door seals.
- Unclip B-pillar trim from B-pillar -arrows A-.
- Pull B-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body; to do so, swivel trim inwards -arrows A- and at the same time pull it off downwards -arrow B-.
- Detach B-pillar trim (top) with belt inserted.
- When renewing B-pillar trim (top), remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ [page 99](#) .

Installing

- Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.

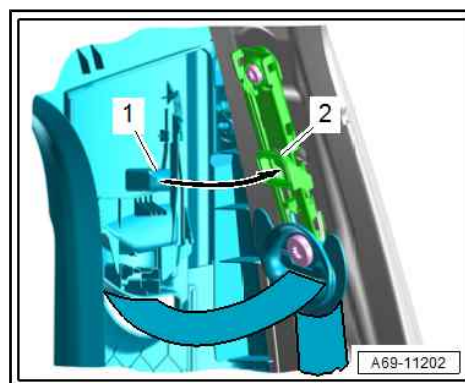
Note:

Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.



- First insert B-pillar trim upwards into mounting at roof.
- Retaining pin -1- on sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in mounting -2- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.
- Check operation.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



6.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

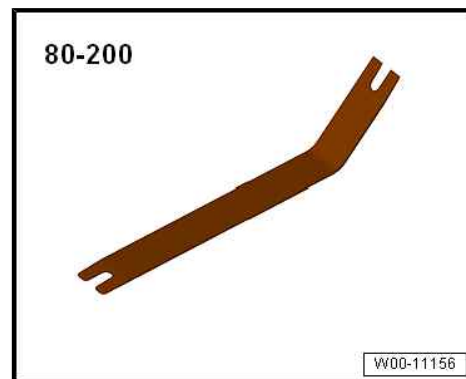
⇒ ["6.12.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Saloon", page 237](#)

⇒ ["6.12.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Avant", page 239](#)

6.12.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever - 80-200-

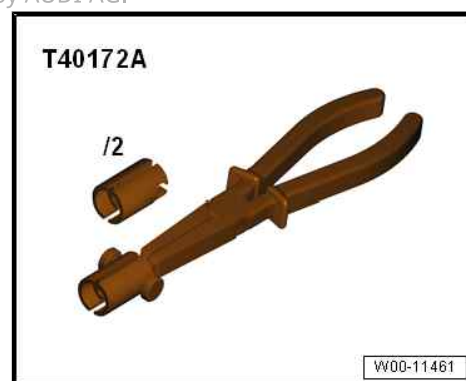


◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Pliers - T40172A-



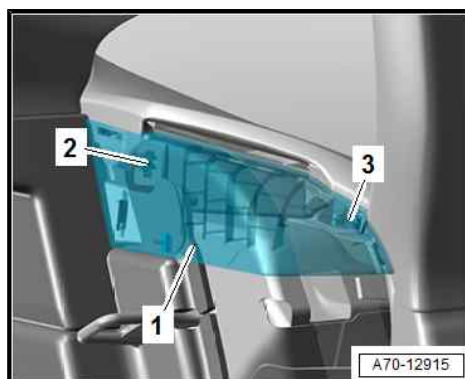


◆ Removal tool - T40280-

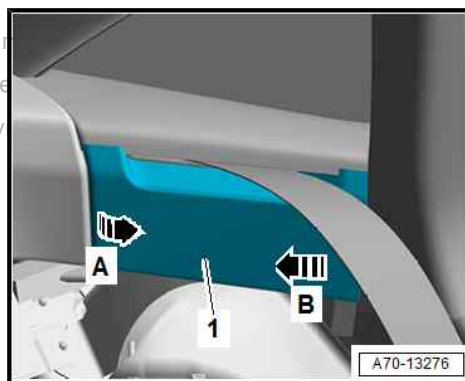


Removing

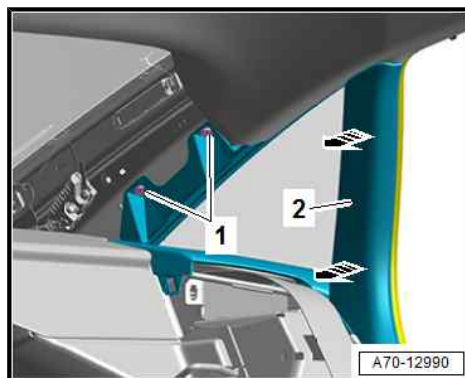
- Depending on equipment/country-specific version: Remove fixed backrest or individual rear seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Version 1: Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.



- Version 2: Unclip trim -1- for belt guide from fastener -arrow A- and disengage it from C-pillar trim -arrow B-.
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 240](#) .



- Remove fasteners -1- using pliers - T40172A- .
- Move C-pillar trim -2- clear in vicinity of door seal, disengage at front of C-pillar and unclip from C-pillar using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows-.
- Disengage C-pillar trim from C-pillar and pull it forwards slightly.
- Carefully lift moulded headliner slightly over C-pillar trim panels.
- Swivel C-pillar trim (top) inwards and remove.
- China version/equipment version: Detach C-pillar trim with belt inserted.
- China version/equipment version: If necessary, remove belt end fitting (rear) to renew C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 96](#) .



Installing

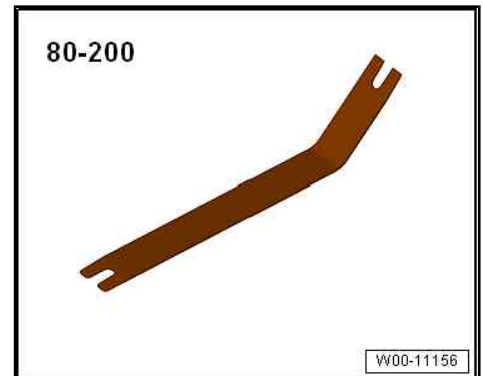
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



6.12.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



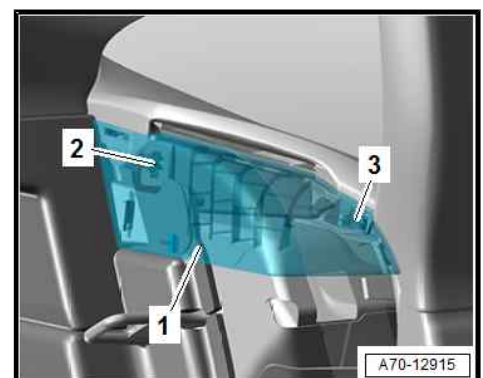
- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

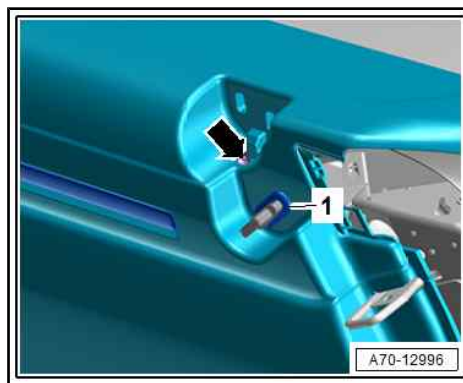
Removing

- Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove luggage compartment cover.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove load guard.
- Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .





- Remove bolt -arrow-.
- Remove rubber grommet -1- from bracket for load guard.



- Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- in area of C-pillar trim -arrow A-.
- Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for folding backrest and bracket for load guard.
- Carefully pull luggage compartment side trim as far as possible inwards in area of C-pillar trim.
- Move C-pillar trim -2- clear in vicinity of door seal and disengage at front of C-pillar.
- Unclip C-pillar trim from C-pillar using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows B, C-.
- Pull C-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow D-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["7.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant", page 256](#)

6.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

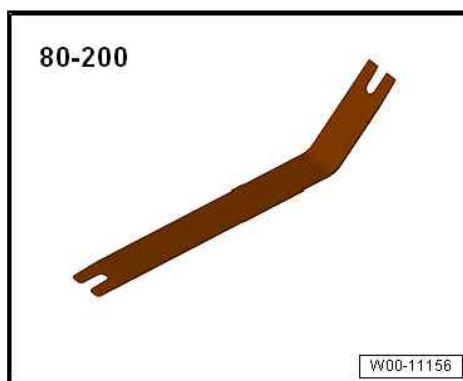
⇒ ["6.13.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Saloon", page 240](#)

⇒ ["6.13.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Avant", page 241](#)

6.13.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Saloon

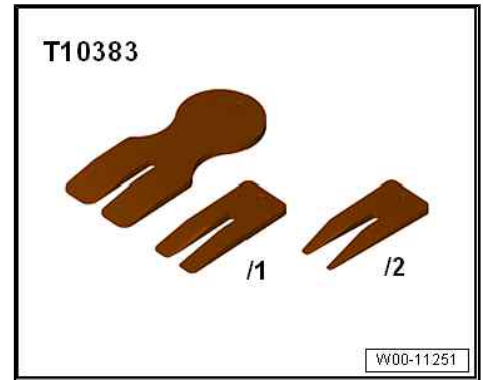
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-





◆ Wedges - T10383-

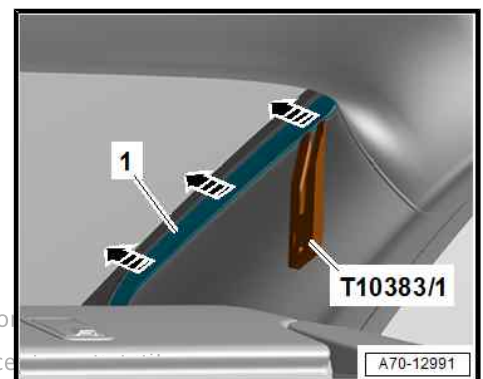


◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

- Depending on equipment version: Fold backrest forwards.
- Depending on equipment version: Unclip trim -1- for sun blind rail -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1- , disengage remaining retaining catches and detach trim.

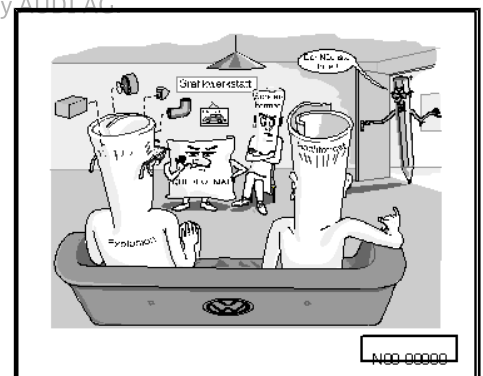


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

- Unclip D-pillar trim -1- from D-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrows A-.
- Detach D-pillar trim upwards -arrow B- from rear shelf and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

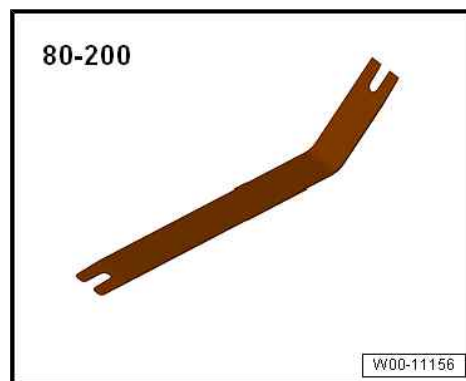


6.13.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal lever - 80-200-

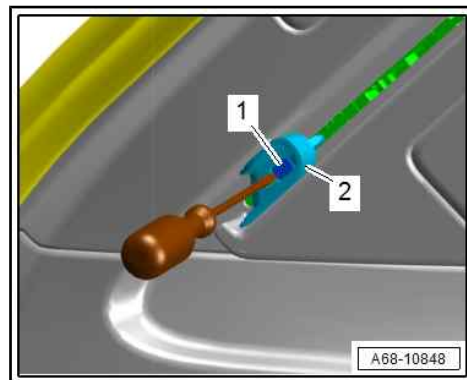


◆ Removal tool - T40280-

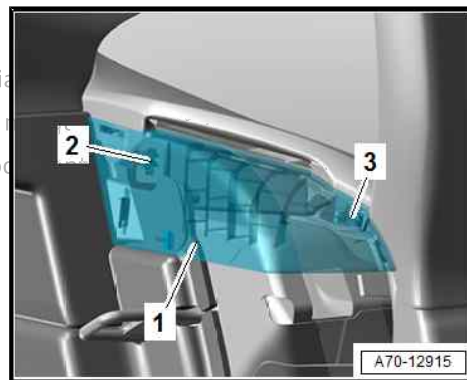


Removing

- Remove spreader pin -1- for actuator -2- using a small screwdriver and pull actuator off luggage compartment cover using pliers.
- Remove roof end trim ⇒ [page 282](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove luggage compartment cover.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove load guard.



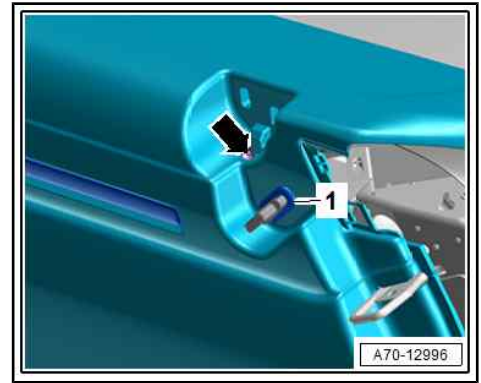
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.



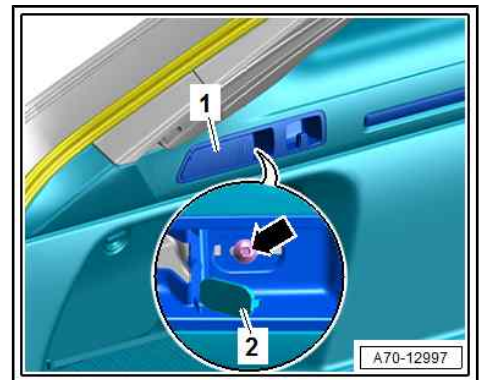
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove bolt -arrow-.
- Remove rubber grommet -1- from bracket for load guard.



- Pull lever -1- for backrest remote release mechanism.
- Prise off cap -2- with a screwdriver.
- Unscrew bolt underneath -arrow-.

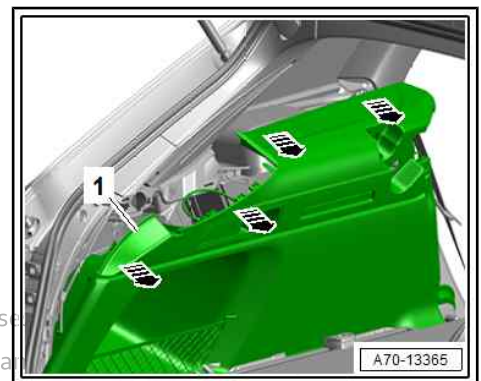


- Move luggage compartment side trim -1- clear in vicinity of rear lid seal.

! NOTICE

Risk of damage to surface of D-pillar trim due to mechanical stress.

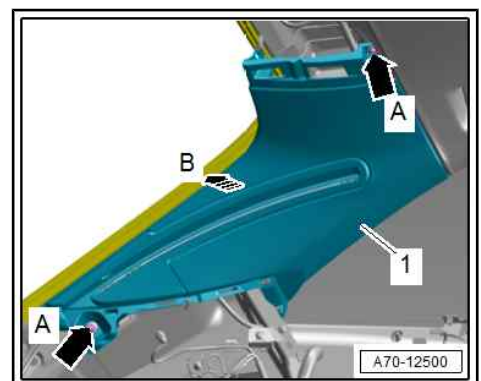
- Carefully detach top edge of luggage compartment side trim from D-pillar trim and guide it past.
- Starting at rear, unclip luggage compartment side trim from body and from trim panels -arrows-.
- Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for folding backrest and bracket for load guard.
- Pull top section of luggage compartment side trim as far inwards as possible.
- Remove bolts -arrows A-.
- Move D-pillar trim -1- clear in vicinity of rear lid seal, disengage at rear of D-pillar and unclip from D-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrow B-.
- Disengage D-pillar trim from rear lid hinge and detach it.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim", page 227 , ⇒ "7.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant", page 256





6.14 Removing and installing foot rest

Removing

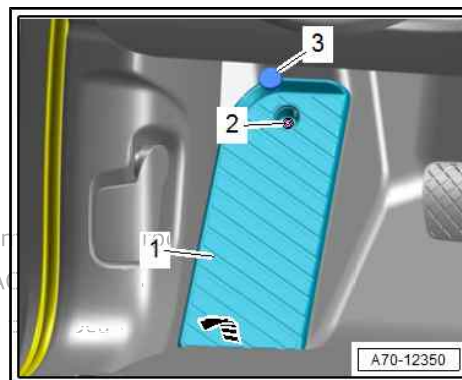
- Unclip cap -3- using a small flat-bladed screwdriver.
- Unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.
- Pull foot rest -1- out at bottom -arrow- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

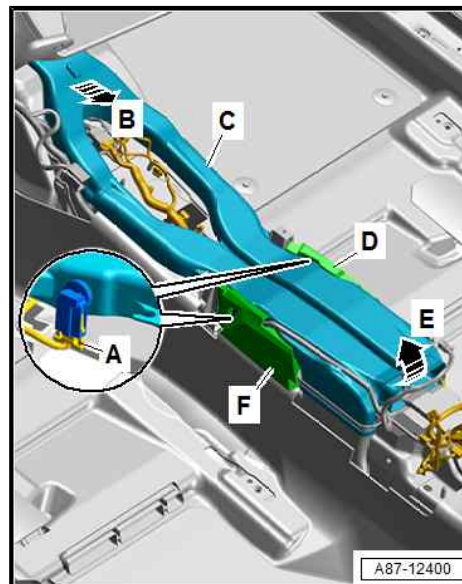
⇒ **"6.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering", page 228**



6.15 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

- Remove front seats ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ [page 233](#) .
- Remove foot rest ⇒ [page 244](#) .
- Remove footwell cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 20](#) .
- Remove B-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ [page 234](#) .
- Take out floor mats.
- If fitted, detach crash pads -D, F- and unplug electrical connectors -A-.
- Swivel air duct -C- upwards at rear -arrow E- and release it from fastener at air distribution housing -arrow B-.
- Detach air duct (rear).



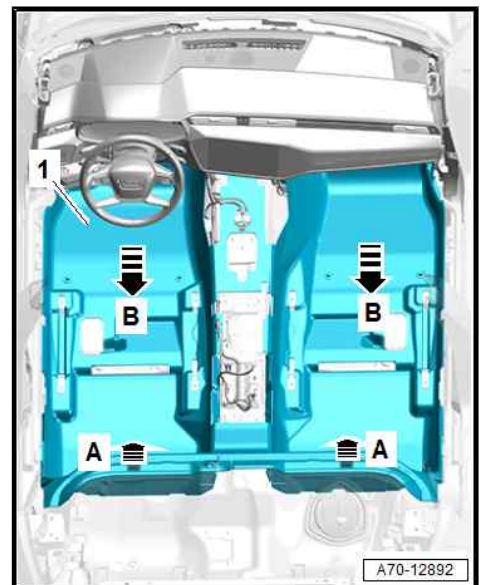
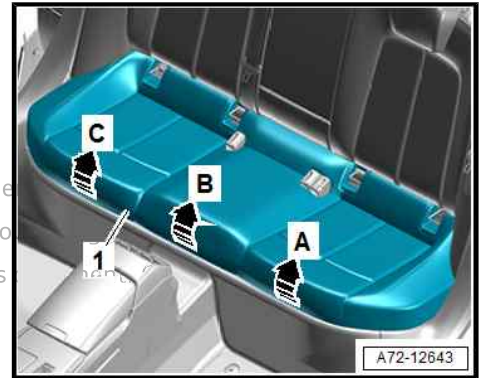


- Remove guides for child seat anchor (bottom) ⇒ [page 107](#) .
- Reach underneath moulded section of rear seat bench -1- on one side with both hands.
- Using both hands, pull rear seat bench firmly and abruptly upwards on one side -arrow A- to disengage moulded section from mounting (front).
- Repeat procedure in centre -arrow B- and on opposite side of rear seat bench -arrow C-.
- Lift rear seat bench at front and pull floor covering (rear) towards front.
- Pull out floor covering beneath sill panel trim panels.
- Lift floor covering -1- at rear -arrows A- and pull towards rear -arrows B-.
- Make sure floor covering does not tear at openings.
- Fold up floor covering and take it out through door opening.

Installing

- Fold up floor covering and place it in vehicle.
- Slide floor covering forwards and align until hole patterns coincide.

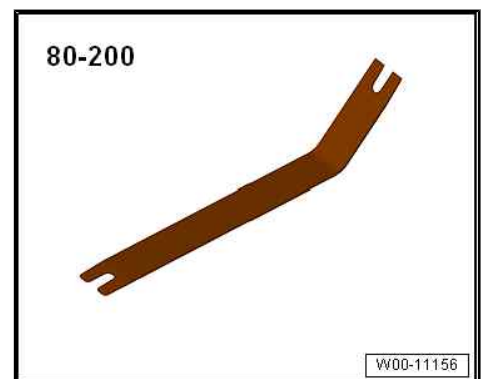
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



6.16 Removing and installing rear shelf

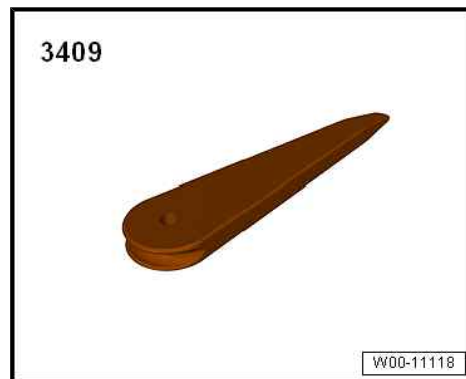
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-





◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

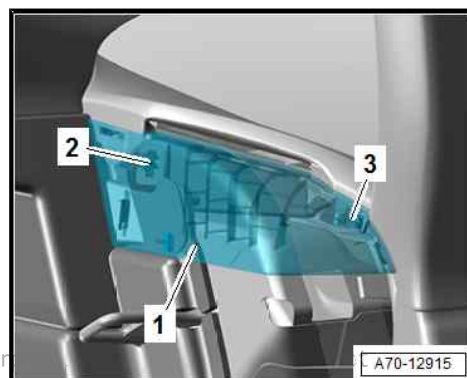


◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

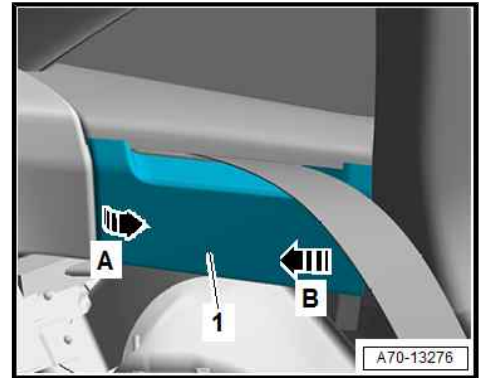
- Depending on equipment version: Remove belt end fitting (centre rear) ⇒ [page 102](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove belt guide (rear) in rear shelf ⇒ [page 95](#) .
- Depending on equipment/country-specific version: Remove fixed backrest or individual rear seat backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Version 1: Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

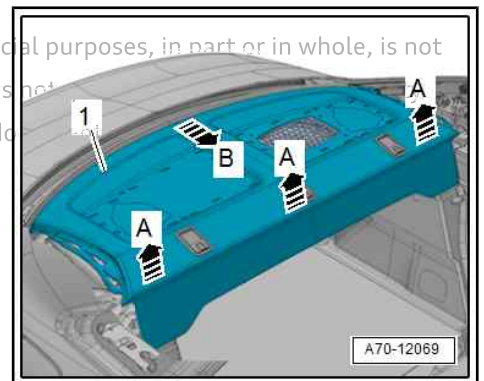


- Version 2: Unclip trim -1- for belt guide from fastener -arrow A- and disengage it from C-pillar trim -arrow B-.
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ➔ [page 240](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ➔ [page 237](#) .
- Remove loudspeaker trim panels in rear shelf ➔ [page 248](#) .



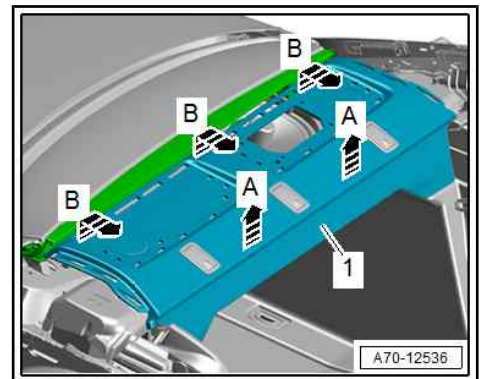
Equipment version without sun blind:

- Unclip rear shelf -1- at front using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.
- Pull rear shelf forwards out of mountings in rear window frame -arrow B- and take out.



Equipment version with sun blind:

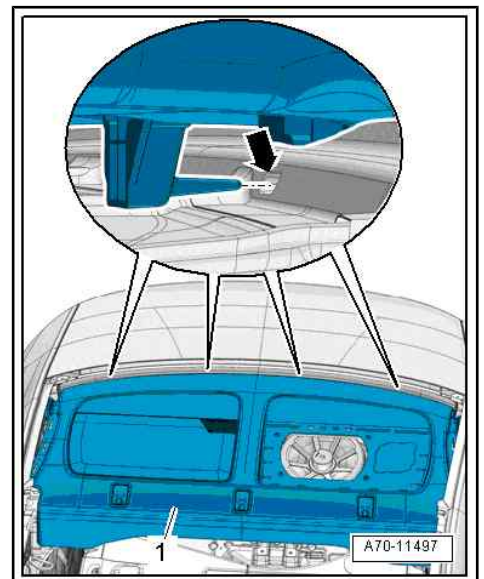
- Unclip rear shelf -1- using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.
- Disengage rear of rear shelf from sun blind -arrows B- and take out towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Insert rear shelf -1- in rear window frame and press on until it engages audibly.
- Pins on rear shelf must engage in mountings -arrow- in rear window frame.

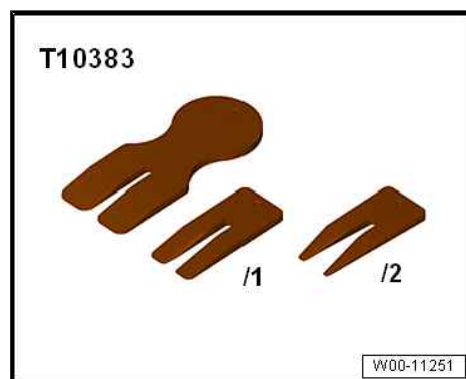




6.17 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



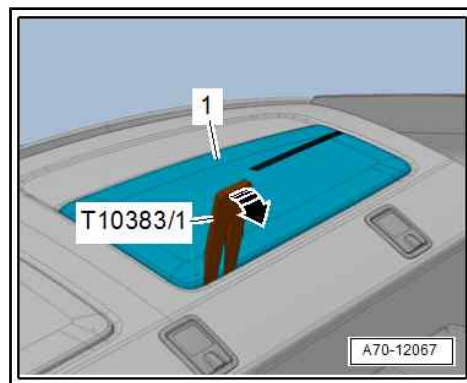
Removing

- Depending on equipment version: Fold backrest forwards.



Risk of damage to loudspeaker trim if handled incorrectly.

- Proceed with care when removing and installing loudspeaker trim.
- Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully unclip loudspeaker trim -1- from rear shelf along gap -arrow-.
- Release all other retaining catches for loudspeaker trim further along gap.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for loudspeaker and pull loudspeaker trim out towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



7 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ [“7.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels”, page 249](#)

⇒ [“7.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 252](#)

⇒ [“7.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 258](#)

⇒ [“7.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim \(bottom\)”, page 261](#)

⇒ [“7.5 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(bottom\)”, page 264](#)

⇒ [“7.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(top\)”, page 268](#)

⇒ [“7.7 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 269](#)

⇒ [“7.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor”, page 273](#)

⇒ [“7.9 Removing and installing back panel trim \(in luggage compartment\)”, page 273](#)

⇒ [“7.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 274](#)

⇒ [“7.11 Removing and installing fastening ring”, page 275](#)

⇒ [“7.12 Removing and installing frame for loading aid”, page 275](#)

⇒ [“7.13 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 276](#)

⇒ [“7.14 Removing and installing tail light cover”, page 276](#)

⇒ [“7.15 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor \(rear\)”, page 276](#)

⇒ [“7.16 Removing and installing retaining rail”, page 278](#)

⇒ [“7.17 Removing and installing mounting for vehicle tool kit”, page 278](#)

⇒ [“7.18 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well”, page 279](#)

7.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ [“7.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Saloon”, page 249](#)

⇒ [“7.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Avant”, page 251](#)

7.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Saloon



1 - Lining for spare wheel well

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 258](#)

2 - Lock carrier trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 252](#)

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 252](#)

4 - Rear lid hinge trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 261](#)

5 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

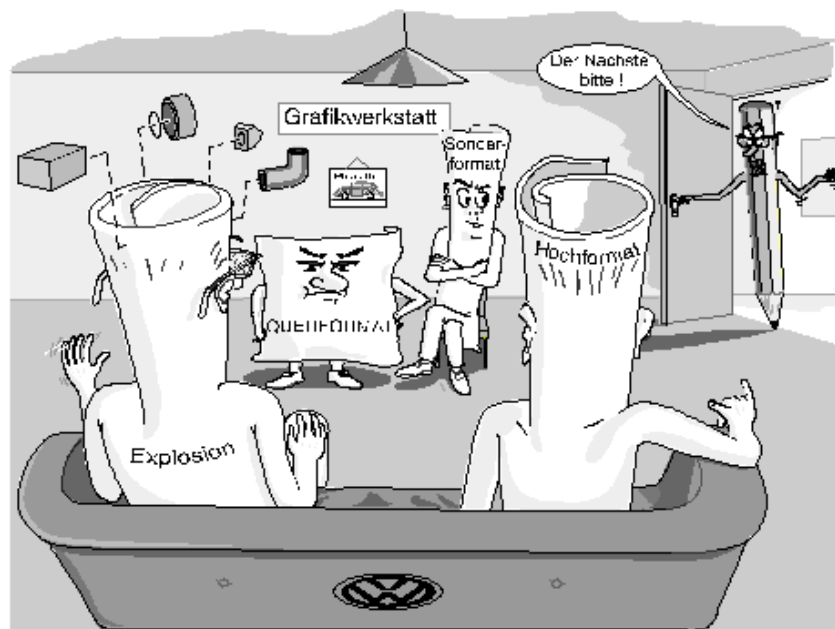
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 261](#)

6 - Luggage compartment floor

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 258](#)

7 - Frame for loading aid

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 258](#)



N00-00000

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



7.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, Avant

1 - Lining for spare wheel well

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 259](#)

2 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 256](#)

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 256](#)

4 - Rear lid hinge trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 263](#)

5 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 263](#)

6 - Rear lid trim (top)

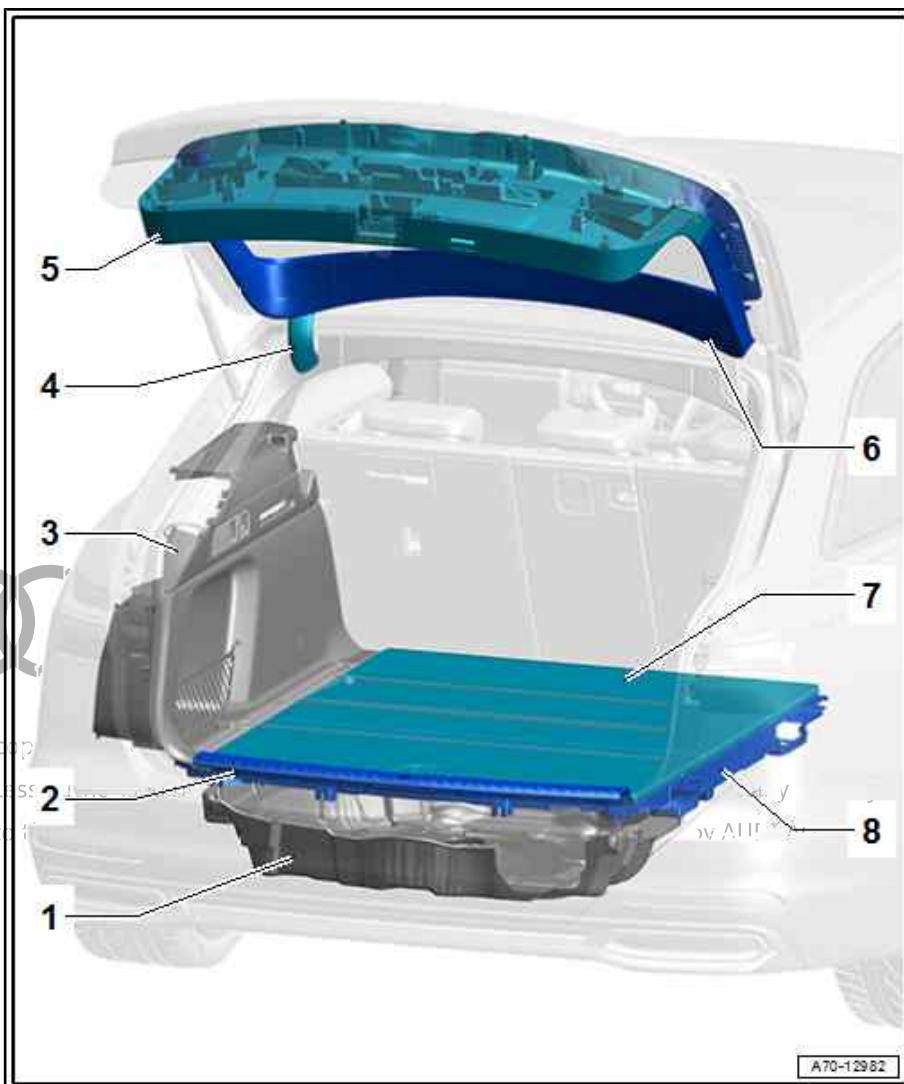
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 263](#)

7 - Luggage compartment floor

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 259](#)

8 - Support for luggage compartment floor

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 259](#)





7.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim

⇒ [“7.2.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon, rest-of-world/NAR version”, page 252](#)

⇒ [“7.2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon, China version”, page 254](#)

⇒ [“7.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant”, page 256](#)

7.2.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon, rest-of-world/NAR version

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 274](#)
- ☐ Must engage in pins
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

2 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Mounting

- ☐ For fastening ring
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [“7.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon”, page 269](#)

4 - Fastening ring

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 275](#)

5 - Bolt

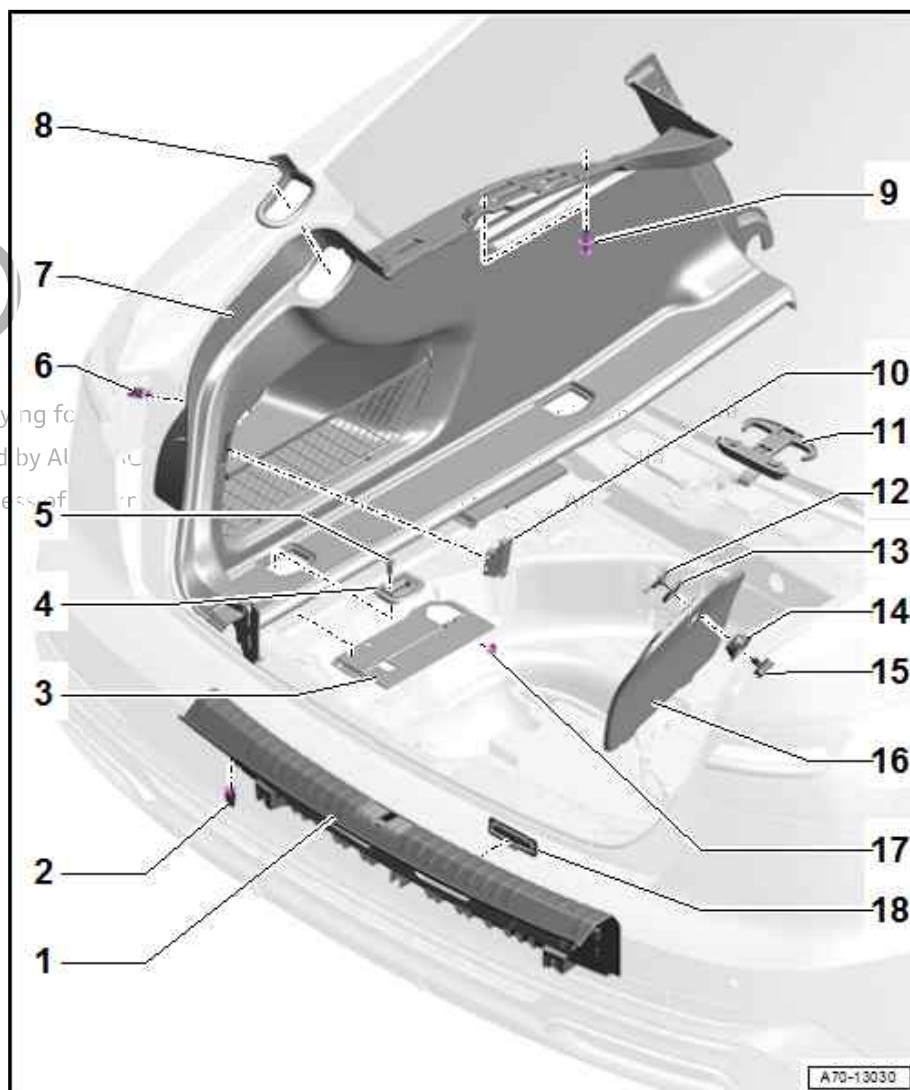
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 6 Nm

6 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 269](#)





- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

8 - Frame

- ☐ For rear lid hinge
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["7.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon", page 269](#)
- ☐ Engage in trim and press on until it engages audibly

9 - Fastener

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Remove with pliers - T40172A-

10 - Trim

- ☐ For towing bracket button
- ☐ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment

11 - Bag hook

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 276](#)

12 - Locking bar

- ☐ For cover
- ☐ Clip into rotary knob

13 - Locking disc

- ☐ For cover housing
- ☐ Clip onto housing

14 - Housing

- ☐ For locking cover in place
- ☐ Clip into locking disc

15 - Rotary knob

- ☐ For locking cover in place
- ☐ Clip into locking bar

16 - Cover

- ☐ Not available as separate part

17 - Nut

- ☐ 2 Nm

18 - Cover

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Clip into trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



7.2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Saloon, China version

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 274](#)
- ☐ Must engage in pins
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

2 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Mounting

- ☐ For fastening ring
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["7.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon", page 269](#)

4 - Fastening ring

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 275](#)

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 6 Nm

6 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Luggage compartment side trim

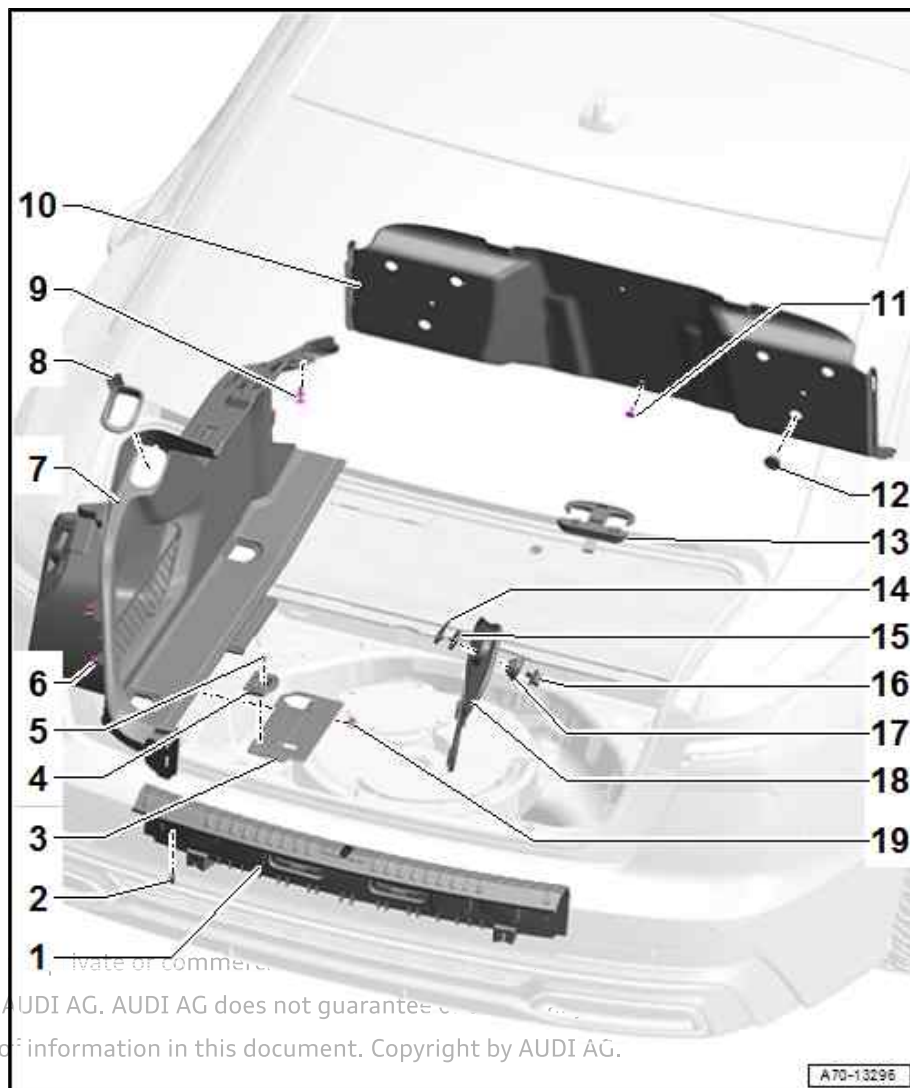
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 269](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

8 - Frame

- ☐ For rear lid hinge
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["7.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon", page 269](#)
- ☐ Engage in trim and press on until it engages audibly

9 - Fastener

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Remove with pliers - T40172A-





10 - Back panel trim (in luggage compartment)

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 273](#)

11 - Clip

- ☐ 6x

12 - Cap

- ☐ For electrically operated individual rear seat backrest
- ☐ 6x
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Clip into trim

13 - Bag hook

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 276](#)

14 - Locking bar

- ☐ For cover
- ☐ Clip into rotary knob

15 - Locking disc

- ☐ For cover housing
- ☐ Clip onto housing

16 - Rotary knob

- ☐ For locking cover in place
- ☐ Clip into locking bar

17 - Housing

- ☐ For locking cover in place
- ☐ Clip into locking disc

18 - Cover

- ☐ Not available as separate part

19 - Nut

- ☐ 2 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



7.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant

1 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Lock carrier trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 274](#)
- ☐ Must engage in pins
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 271](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

4 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Nut

- ☐ 3.5 Nm

6 - Bracket

- ☐ For backrest remote release mechanism

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 3.5 Nm

8 - Bolt

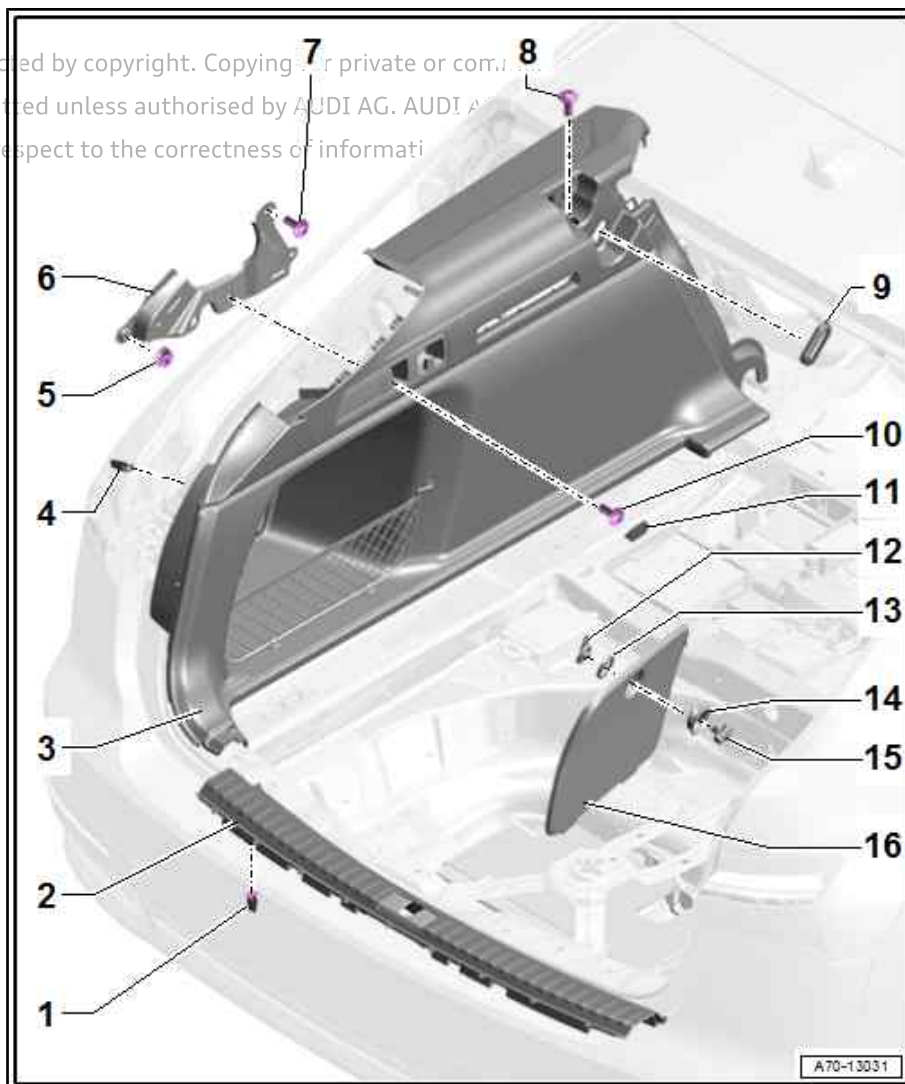
- ☐ 3.5 Nm

9 - Rubber grommet

- ☐ For bracket for load guard
- ☐ Slide onto bracket and insert in trim

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 2.5 Nm





11 - Cap

- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

12 - Locking bar

- ☐ For cover
- ☐ Clip into rotary knob

13 - Locking disc

- ☐ For cover housing
- ☐ Clip onto housing

14 - Housing

- ☐ For locking cover in place
- ☐ Clip into locking disc

15 - Rotary knob

- ☐ For locking cover in place
- ☐ Clip into locking bar

16 - Cover



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



7.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor

⇒ [“7.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon”, page 258](#)

⇒ [“7.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Avant”, page 259](#)

7.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Saloon

1 - Lining for spare wheel well

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 279](#)

2 - Vehicle jack

- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Nut for bracket: 2 Nm

3 - Support for luggage compartment floor

4 - Frame for loading aid

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 275](#)

5 - Cover

- ☐ For access to fuse carrier

6 - Retaining frame

- ☐ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Can only be pressed on to grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Luggage compartment floor

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 273](#)

8 - Grip

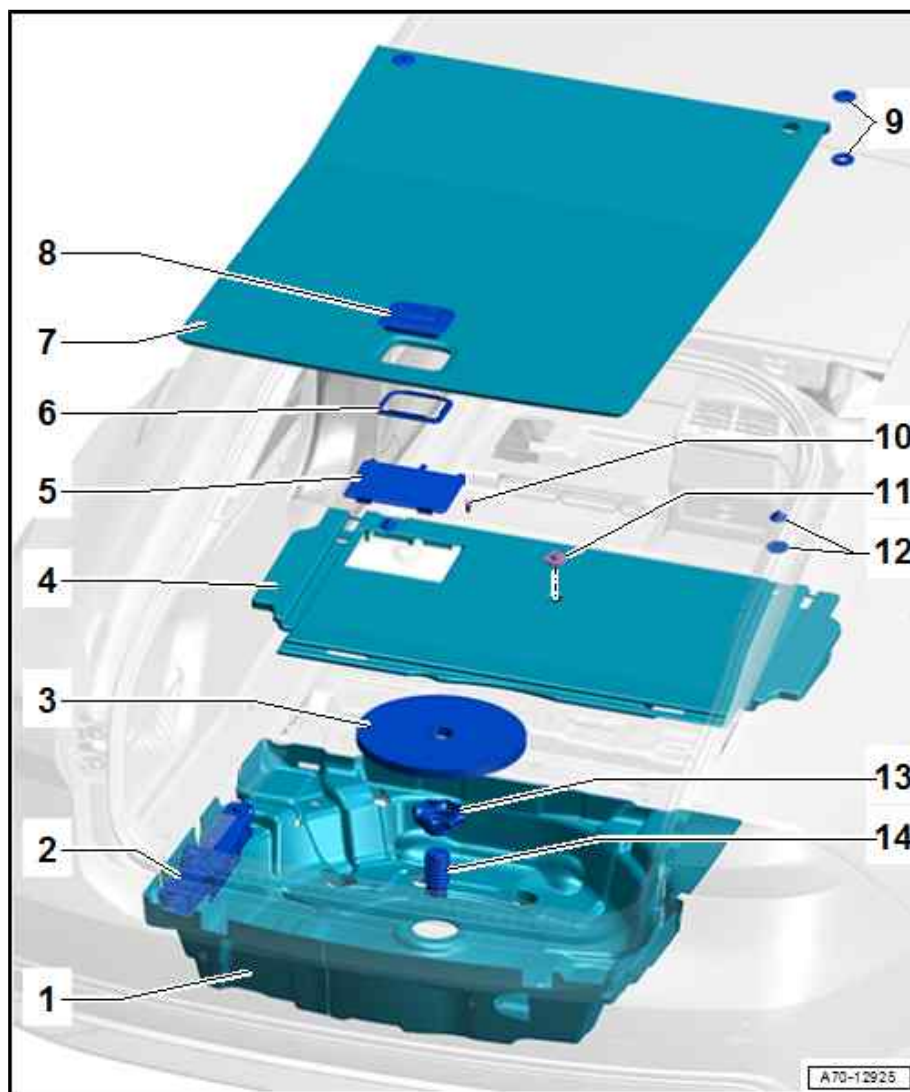
- ☐ For luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 276](#)

9 - Bracket

- ☐ For securing luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Country-specific version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

10 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in frame for loading aid
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed





11 - Nut

- ☐ 2 Nm

12 - Mounting

- ☐ For retainer for luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Country-specific version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

13 - Nut

- ☐ For securing subwoofer/spare wheel
- ☐ 8 Nm

14 - Bracket

- ☐ Engage in retainer plate

7.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Avant

1 - Lining for spare wheel well

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 279](#)

2 - Retainer

- ☐ For securing subwoofer/
spare wheel mounting
- ☐ Engage in retainer plate

3 - Nut

- ☐ For securing subwoofer/
spare wheel mounting
- ☐ 8 Nm

4 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2 Nm

5 - Mounting

- ☐ For jack
- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 278](#)

6 - Mounting (rear)

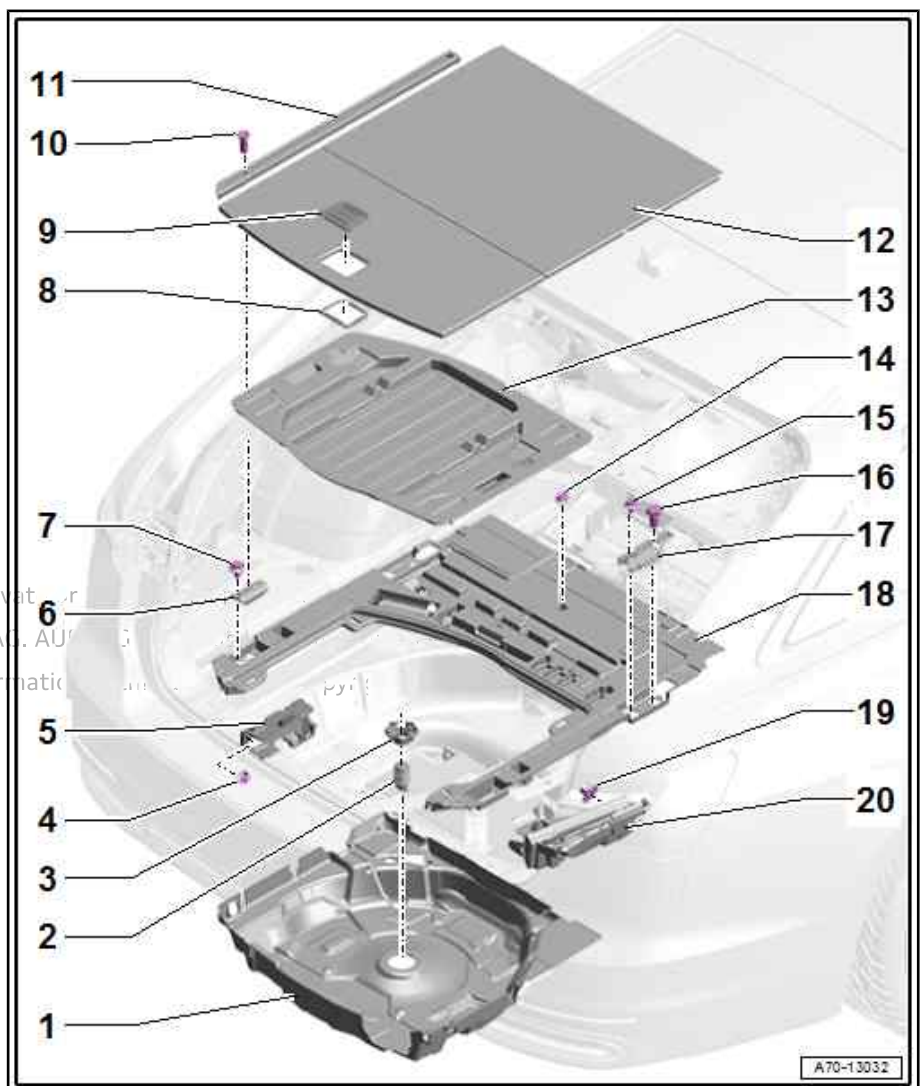
- ☐ For retaining rail
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 278](#)

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 10 Nm

8 - Retaining frame

- ☐ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly





9 - Grip

- ☐ For luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 276](#)

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 4 Nm

11 - Retaining rail

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 278](#)

12 - Luggage compartment floor

13 - Storage well liner

14 - Nut

- ☐ 2 Nm

15 - Bolt

- ☐ 10 Nm

16 - Bolt

- ☐ 55 Nm

17 - Mounting (front)

- ☐ For retaining rail
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 278](#)

18 - Support for luggage compartment floor

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 275](#)

19 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2 Nm

20 - Mounting

- ☐ For vehicle tool kit
- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 278](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



7.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)

⇒ ["7.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon", page 261](#)

⇒ ["7.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant", page 263](#)

7.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon

1 - Rear lid hinge trim

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 264](#)

2 - Fastener

- ☐ 4x

3 - Clip

- ☐ 10x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Anti-theft bracket

- ☐ Clip into rear lid
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["7.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(bottom\) - Saloon", page 264](#)

5 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 264](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Expanding nut

- ☐ Clip into rear lid

7 - Bracket for stop strip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Clip into rear lid

8 - Stop strip

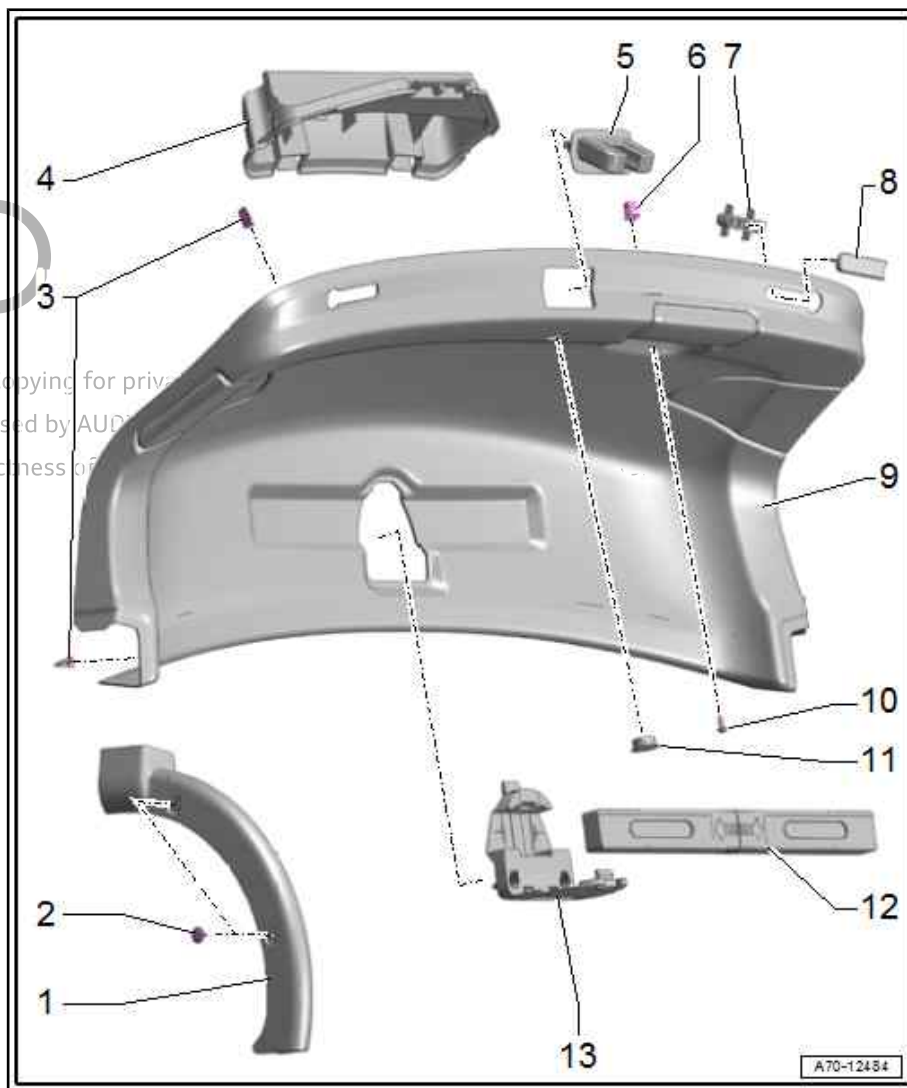
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 264](#)
- ☐ Clip into bracket

9 - Rear lid trim

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ NAR version: manual release mechanism ⇒ [page 262](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 264](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 2 Nm
- ☐ Depending on version





- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

11 - Cover for manual release mechanism

- ❑ Unclip using a screwdriver
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

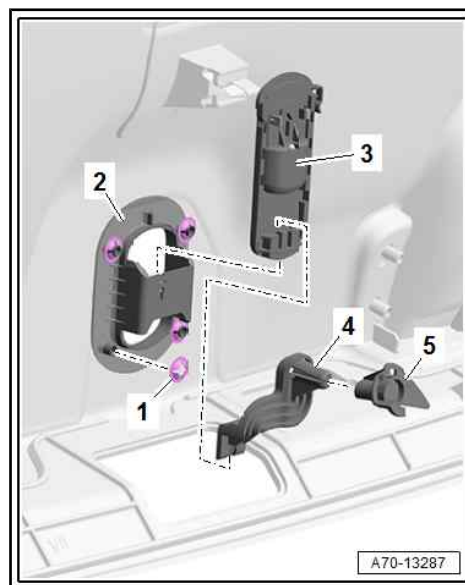
12 - Warning triangle

13 - Bracket for warning triangle

- ❑ Engage in rear lid and press on until it engages audibly

Manual release mechanism - NAR version

- 1 - Clamping washers (4x)
- 2 - Trim for manual release mechanism
- 3 - Manual release actuator
- 4 - Manual release grip
- 5 - Adapter for rear lid lock



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



7.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant

1 - Trim (top)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 268](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2 Nm
- ☐ Depending on version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Clip

- ☐ 8x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Clip

- ☐ 12x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Expanding nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Clip into rear lid

6 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 267](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Trim (bottom)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 267](#)
- ☐ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Tail light cover

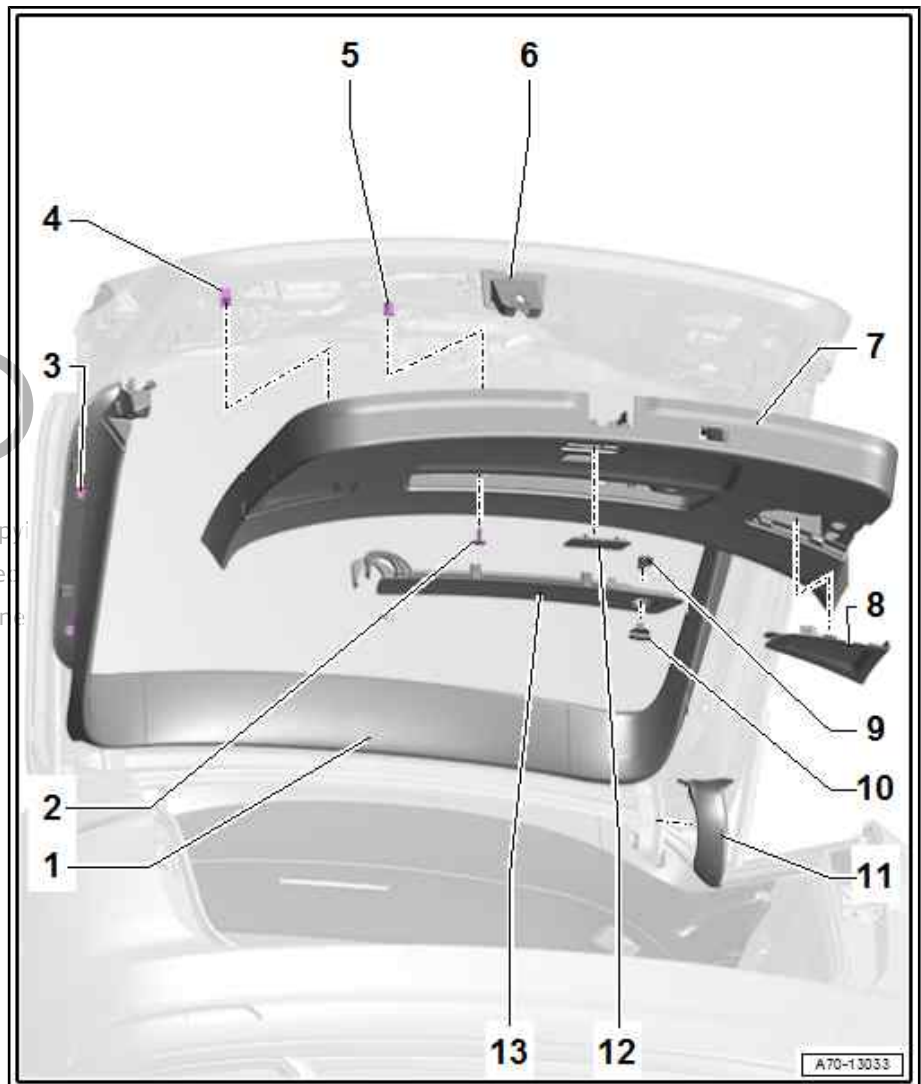
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Clip into rear lid trim

9 - Locking bar

- ☐ For cover for warning triangle
- ☐ Clip into rotary knob

10 - Rotary knob

- ☐ For locking cover for warning triangle in place





11 - Rear lid hinge trim

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Clip onto rear lid hinge

12 - Cover for manual release mechanism

- ☐ Use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip
- ☐ Clip into rear lid trim

13 - Cover for warning triangle

- ☐ Engage in rear lid trim

7.5 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

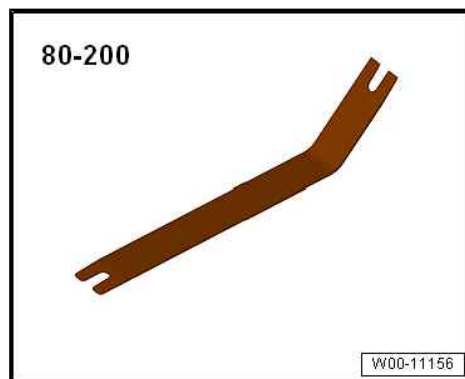
⇒ ["7.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(bottom\) - Saloon", page 264](#)

⇒ ["7.5.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(bottom\) - Avant", page 267](#)

7.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



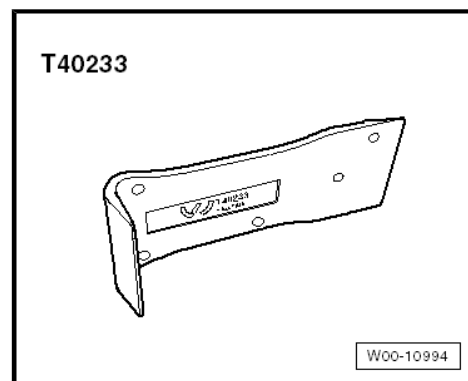
- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Removal wedge - T40233-

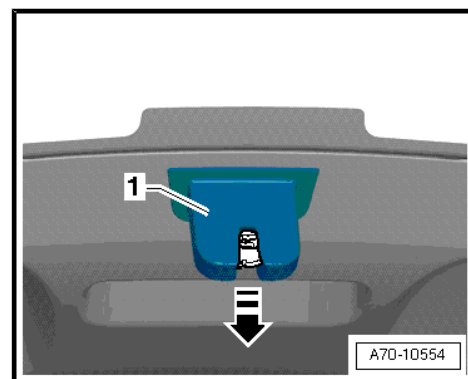


◆ Removal tool - T40280-

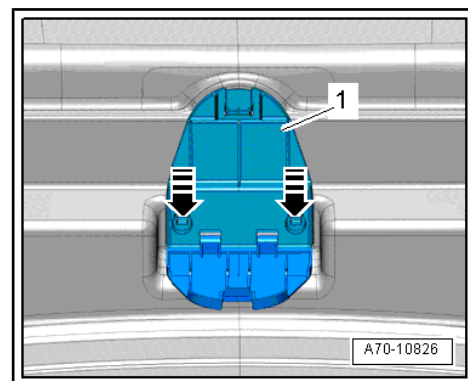


Removing

- Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow- using removal wedge - T40233- .

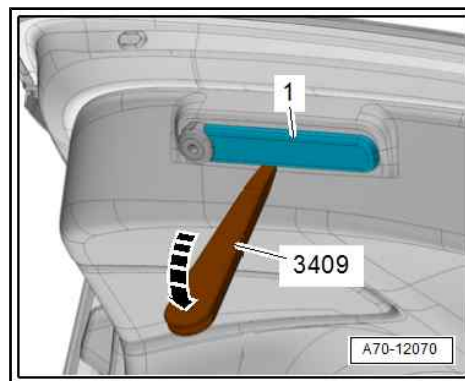


- Open cover, press fastener and remove warning triangle from bracket.
- Release retaining tabs -arrows- with a flat-bladed screwdriver and detach bracket for warning triangle -1-.





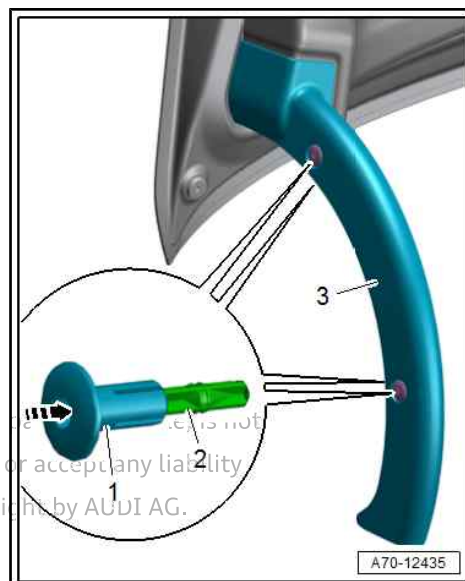
- Unclip stop strip -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.



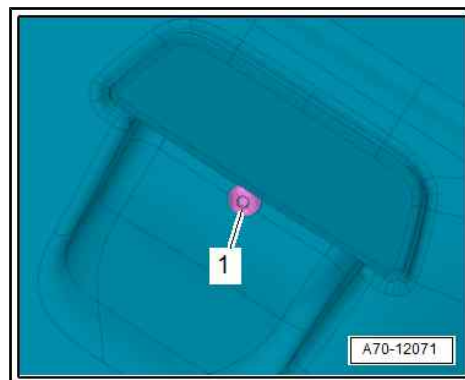
- To remove fastener -1-, carefully press locking pin -2- approx. 5 mm into fastener -arrow- until it disengages audibly (do not press through completely, otherwise locking pin will be lost).
- Remove released fastener together with locking pin.
- Pull rear lid hinge trim -3- downwards out of rear lid trim and detach.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- If fitted, remove bolt -1-.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove rear lid closure button ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .





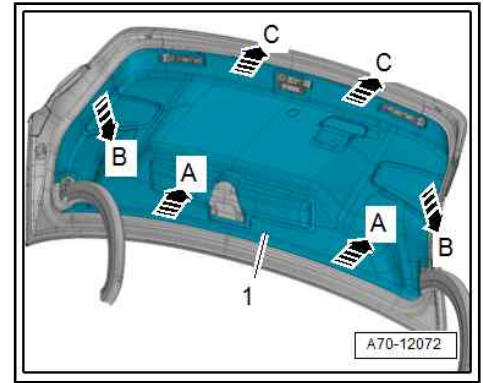
- Starting at top, unclip rear lid trim -1- from rear lid using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.
- Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at sides -arrows B-.
- Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at bottom -arrows C- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- NAR version: Check that manual release mechanism is functioning correctly after installing trim.
- To do so, lock the rear lid lock using a flat-bladed screwdriver and operate manual release.
- The rear lid lock must unlock.

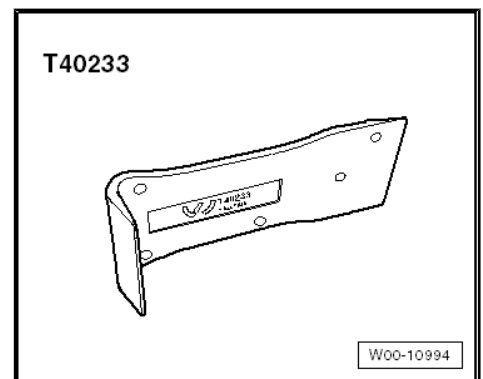
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["7.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Saloon", page 261](#)



7.5.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - T40233-



- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



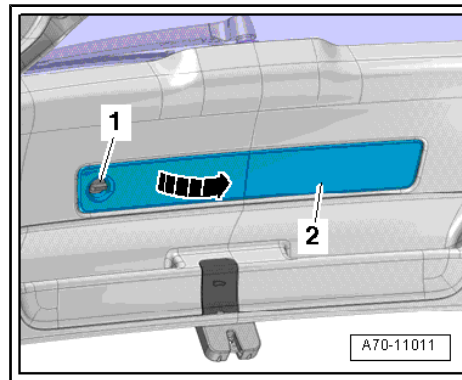
Removing

- Depending on equipment version: Remove rear lid closure button ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .
- Remove rear lid light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



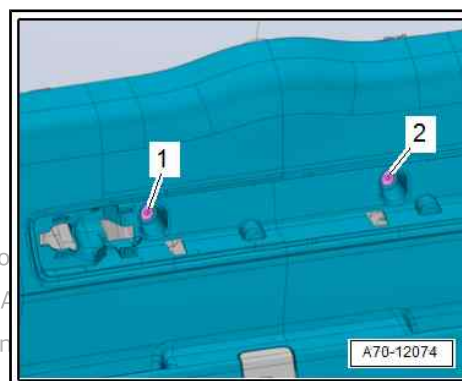
- Turn quick-release fastener -1- 90° anti-clockwise and swivel cover -2- for warning triangle to side in direction of -arrow-.
- Take out warning triangle.
- Disengage cover at trim (bottom) and detach.



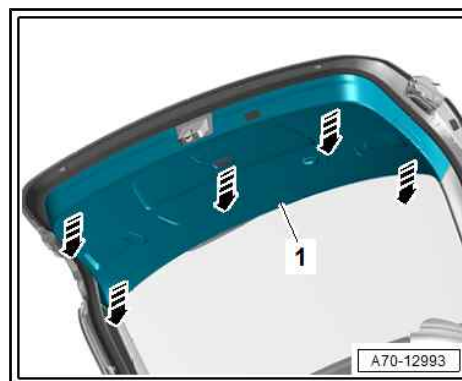
- If fitted, unscrew bolts -1 and 2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG assumes no liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Starting at edge, unclip trim -1- from rear lid using removal lever - T40233- -arrows-.
- Release remaining clips for trim and detach trim.

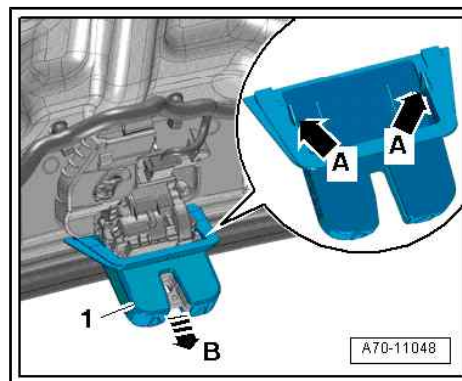


- If necessary, use a flat-bladed screwdriver to release retaining tabs -arrows A- and detach trim for rear lid lock -1- -arrow B-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["7.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, Avant", page 263](#)

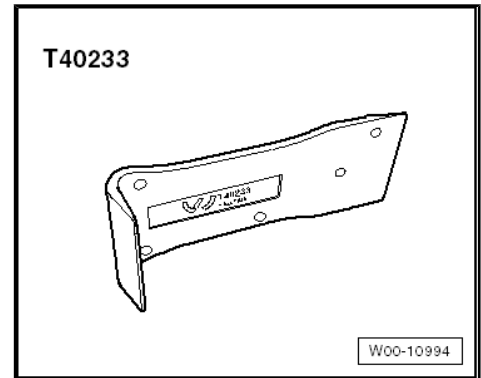


7.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - T40233-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-

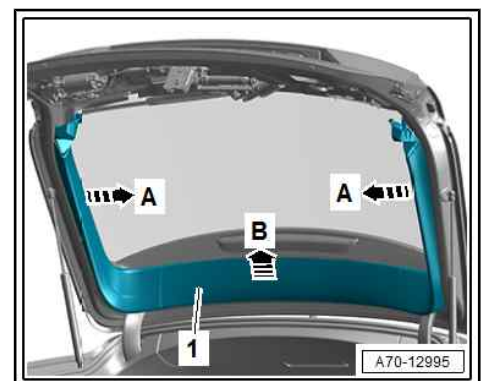


Removing

- Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 267](#) .
- Unclip trim -1- from rear lid from the side using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows A-.
- Release remaining clips for trim -arrow B- and detach trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



7.7 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

⇒ ["7.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon", page 269](#)

⇒ ["7.7.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Avant", page 271](#)

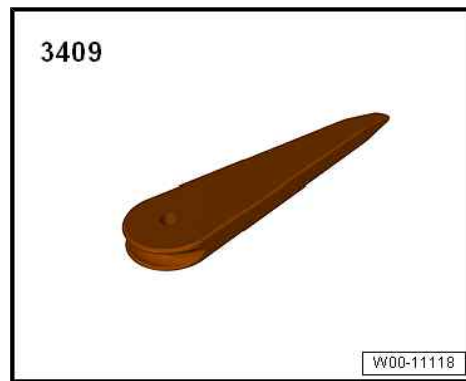
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Saloon

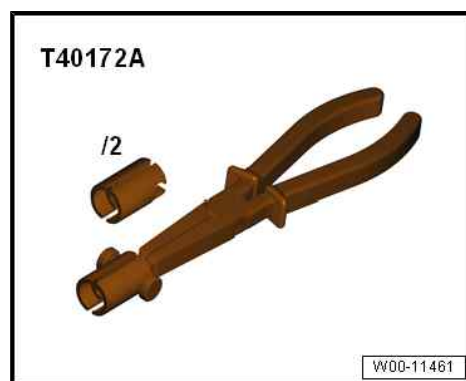
Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



◆ Pliers - T40172A-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-

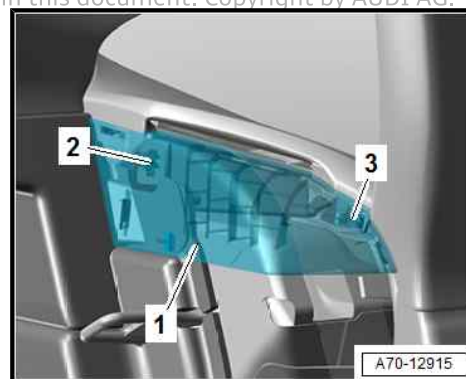


Removing - rest-of-world/NAR vehicles

- Remove seat bench ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove fixed backrest ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Rear seats; Removing and installing rear seat backrest .
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .

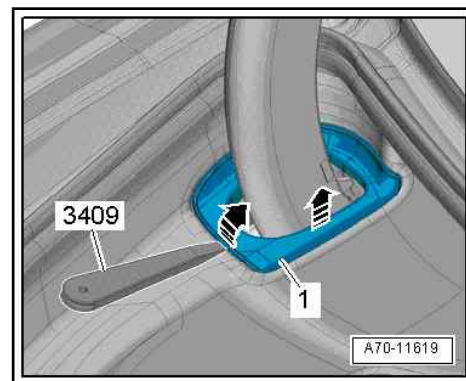
Continued:

- Remove luggage compartment floor ⇒ [page 273](#) .
- Remove fastening ring ⇒ [page 275](#) .
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 274](#) .

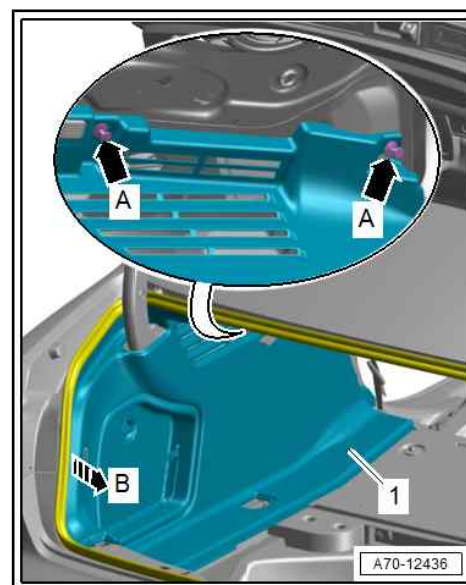




- Unclip frame for rear lid hinge -1- -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Pull frame out of luggage compartment side trim, release fastener and disengage frame at rear lid hinge.



- Remove fasteners -arrows A- using pliers - T40172A- .
- Move luggage compartment side trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal.
- Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- from body -arrow B-.
- Pull luggage compartment side trim slightly inwards.
- Disengage luggage compartment side trim at rear lid hinge.
- Unplug electrical connectors.
- Depending on equipment/country-specific version: Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for folding backrest and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

7.7.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright!





◆ Removal tool - T40280-

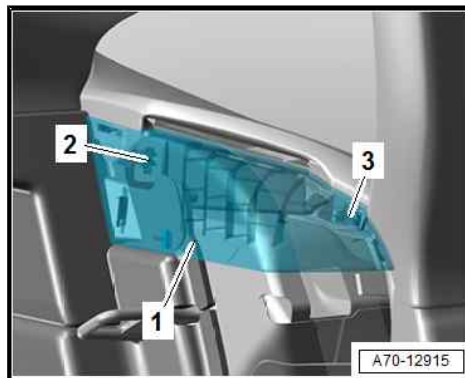


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2019 Audi AG.

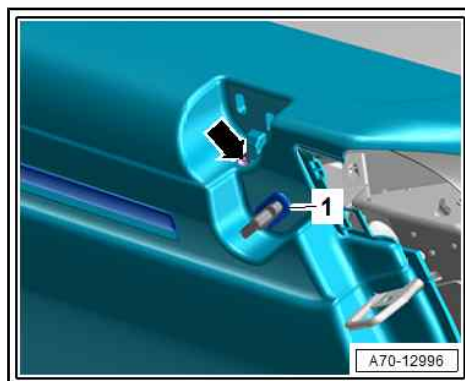


Removing

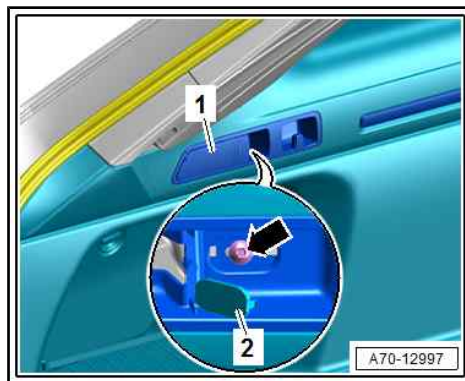
- Lift luggage compartment floor and fold it forwards.
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove luggage compartment cover.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove load guard.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , press trim -1- for belt guide out of fasteners -2, 3- and detach it.
- Remove side padding ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 74 ; Covers and padding on rear seats; Exploded view - cover and padding .



- Remove bolt -arrow-.
- Remove rubber grommet -1- from bracket for load guard.



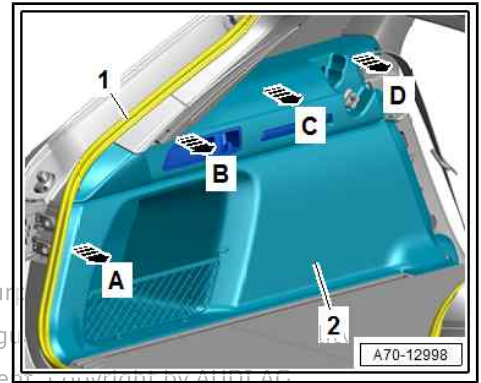
- Pull lever -1- for backrest remote release mechanism.
- Prise off cap -2- with a screwdriver.
- Unscrew bolt underneath -arrow-.



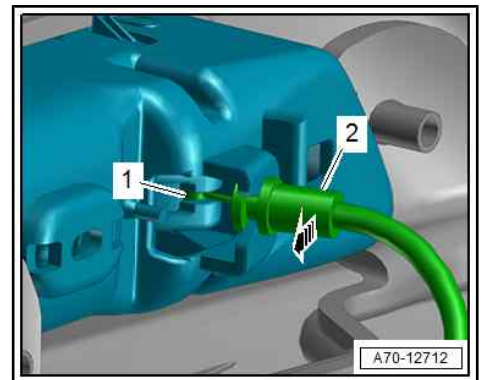


- Move luggage compartment side trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal -1-.
- Starting at rear, unclip luggage compartment side trim -2- from body and from trim -arrows A, B, C, D-.
- Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for folding backrest.
- Pull luggage compartment side trim (top) slightly inwards.
- Unplug electrical connectors.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Disengage Bowden cable support bracket -2- -arrow- and disengage Bowden cable for backrest remote release mechanism.
- Swivel Bowden cable and disengage end of cable -1- at lever for backrest remote release mechanism.
- Tilt luggage compartment side trim (top) inwards and remove it.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"7.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, Avant", page 256**

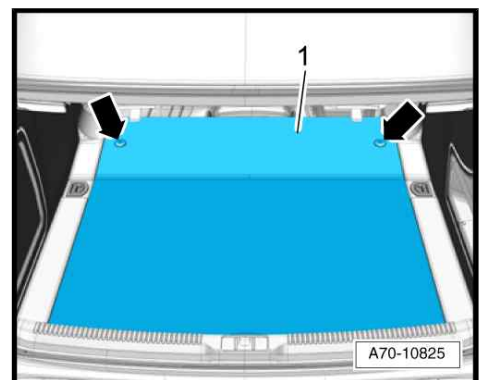
7.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor

Removing

- If necessary, disengage luggage compartment floor -1- at front -arrows- and detach.
- Pull luggage compartment floor out towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

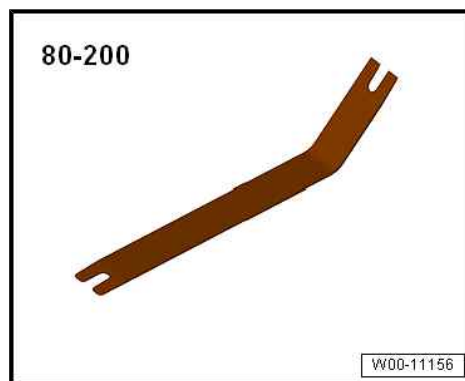


7.9 Removing and installing back panel trim (in luggage compartment)

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal lever - 80-200-

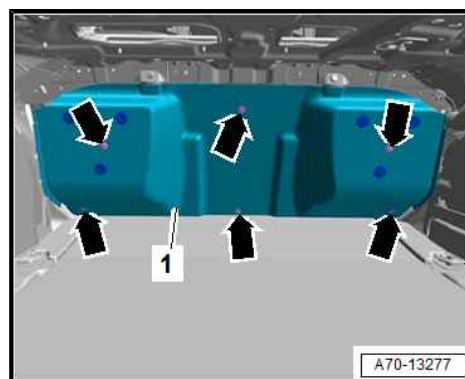


Removing

- Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ [page 269](#) .
- Remove clips -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
- Take back panel trim -1- off back panel and out of luggage compartment towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



7.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

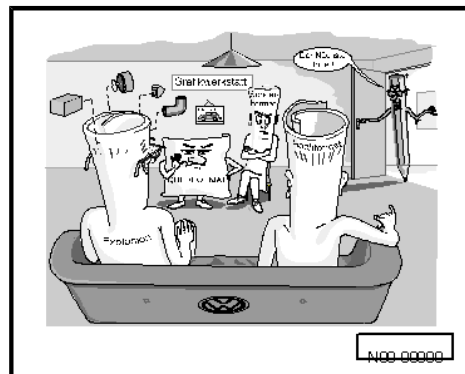


Removing

- Lift luggage compartment floor and fold it forwards.
- Move lock carrier trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal -1-.
- Take hold of trim -2- and pull it vertically upwards -arrows- carefully but firmly.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.





7.11 Removing and installing fastening ring

Removing

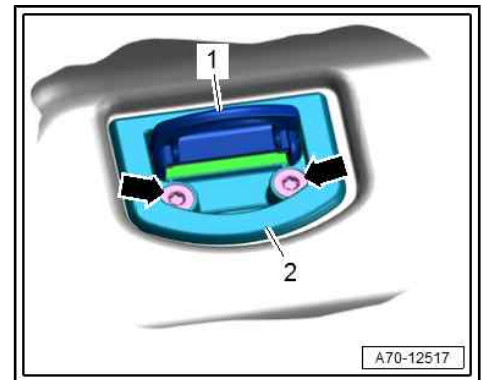
- Open clip -1- as far as it will go.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach fastening ring -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“7.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 252](#)



7.12 Removing and installing frame for loading aid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

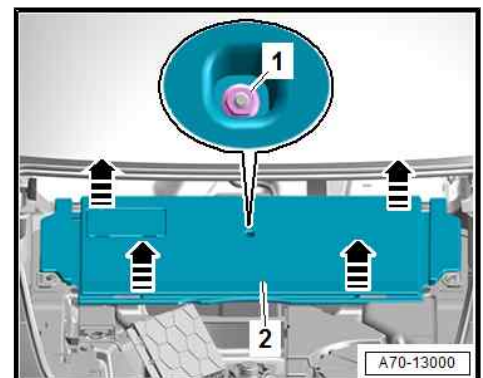
- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing - Saloon

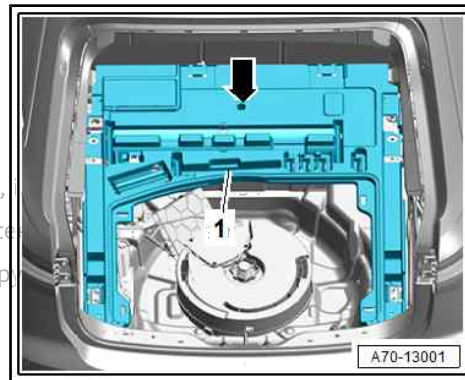
- Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ [page 269](#).
- Unscrew nut -1-.
- Unclip frame for loading aid -2- upwards -arrows- and remove.





Removing - Avant

- Remove luggage compartment floor.
- Remove retaining rail and mountings ⇒ [page 278](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ [page 271](#) .
- Unscrew nut -arrow-.
- Disengage frame -1- for loading aid and remove it towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“7.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 258](#)

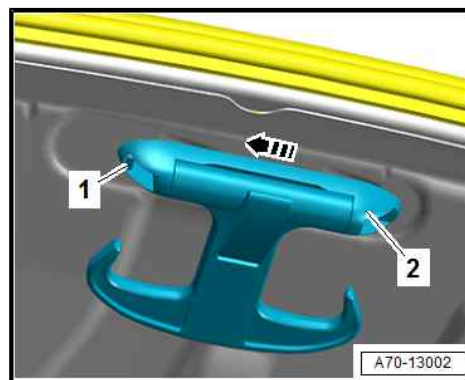
7.13 Removing and installing bag hook

Removing

- Release fastener -1- with a flat-bladed screwdriver and disengage bag hook -2- from mountings towards left side -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



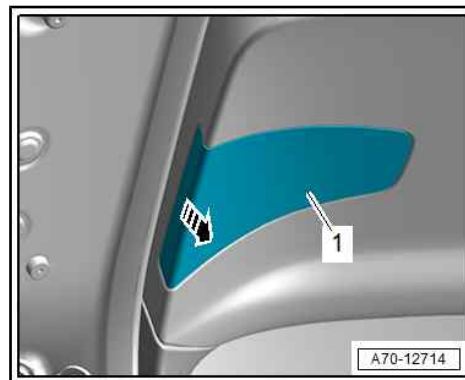
7.14 Removing and installing tail light cover

Removing

- Unclip tail light cover -1- from rear lid trim (bottom) in direction of -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

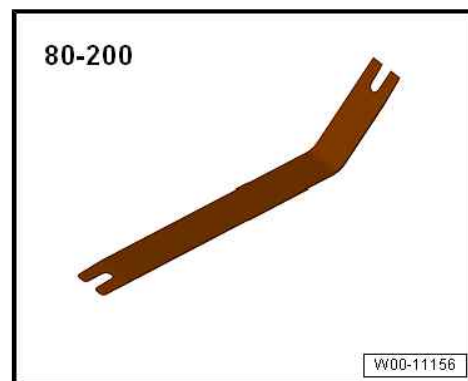


7.15 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

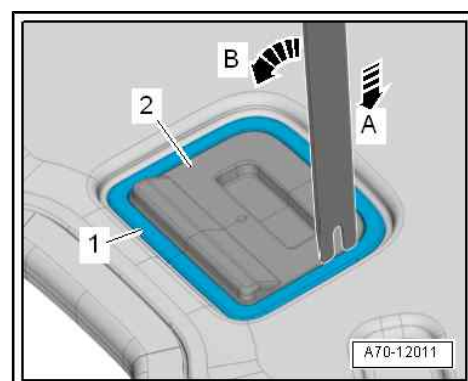


◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

- Remove luggage compartment floor ➔ [page 273](#) .
- Release retaining frame -1- on underside of luggage compartment floor.
- To do so, apply removal lever - 80-200- -arrow A- and release retaining frame -arrow B-.
- Disengage retaining frame and detach grip -2- for luggage compartment floor.

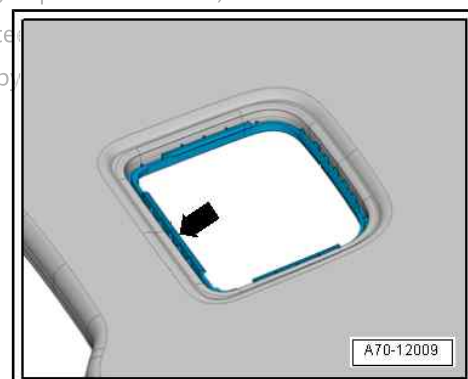


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copying is prohibited.

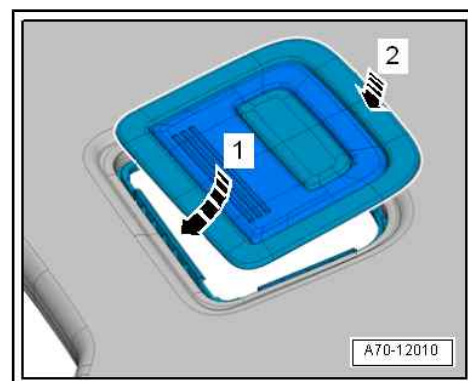
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Insert retaining frame -arrow- into opening in luggage compartment floor from underneath and hold it in position.



- Slide grip for luggage compartment floor into retaining frame towards rear of vehicle -arrow 1- and engage downwards -arrow 2-.

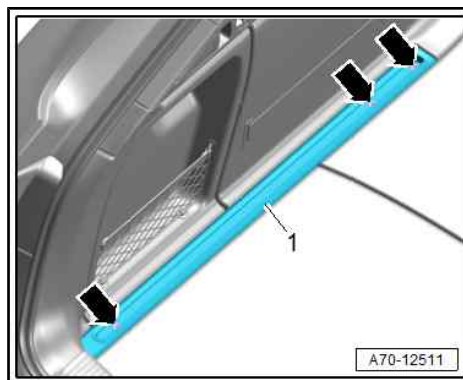




7.16 Removing and installing retaining rail

Removing

- Depending on equipment version: Remove luggage retaining strap / telescoping luggage retainer.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove retaining rail -1-.



Removing mounting for retaining rail

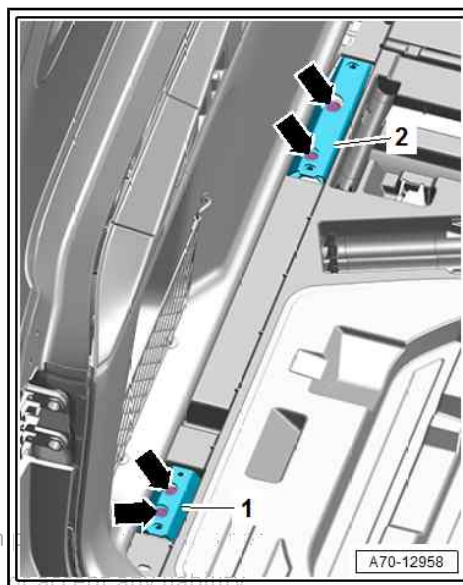
- Remove luggage compartment floor.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Disengage and detach mountings -1, 2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“7.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, Avant”, page 259](#)



7.17 Removing and installing mounting for vehicle tool kit

Removing

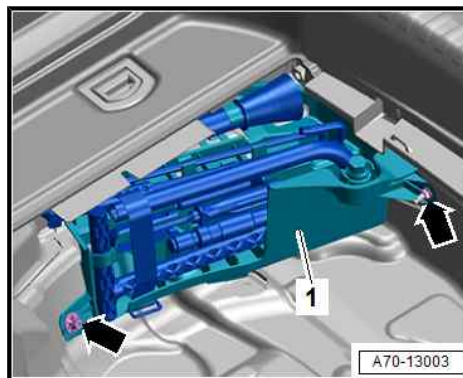
- Lift luggage compartment floor and fold it forwards.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove mounting for breakdown set.
- Remove nuts -arrows-.
- Disengage and detach mounting -1- for vehicle tool kit.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“7.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 258](#)





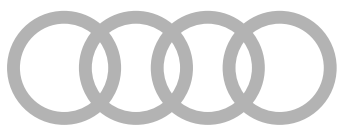
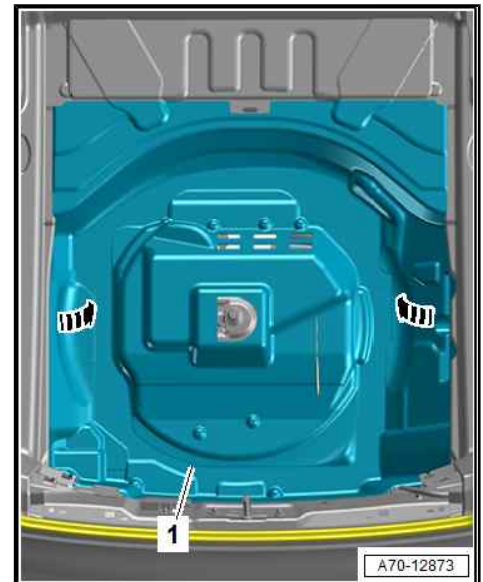
7.18 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well

Removing

- Remove luggage compartment floor ⇒ [page 273](#) .
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ [page 269](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove spare wheel.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove mounting for breakdown set.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove mounting for vehicle tool kit ⇒ [page 278](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove subwoofer ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove TV tuner ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; TV system; Removing and installing TV tuner .
- Disengage lining -1- for spare wheel well at sides -arrows-.
- Lift lining for spare wheel well at rear, disengage it at front and remove it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Roof trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ **"8.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 280**

⇒ **"8.2 Removing and installing roof end trim", page 282**

⇒ **"8.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner", page 283**

⇒ **"8.4 Lowering moulded headliner", page 285**

⇒ **"8.5 Attaching roof reinforcement to body", page 293**

8.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner

⇒ **"8.1.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon", page 280**

⇒ **"8.1.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Avant", page 281**

8.1.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Saloon

1 - Moulded headliner

- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 283](#)
- ☐ Lowering ⇒ [page 285](#)

2 - Clip

- ☐ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ☐ 15x
- ☐ Insert in moulded headliner
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Roof reinforcement (front)

- ☐ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 293](#)

4 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

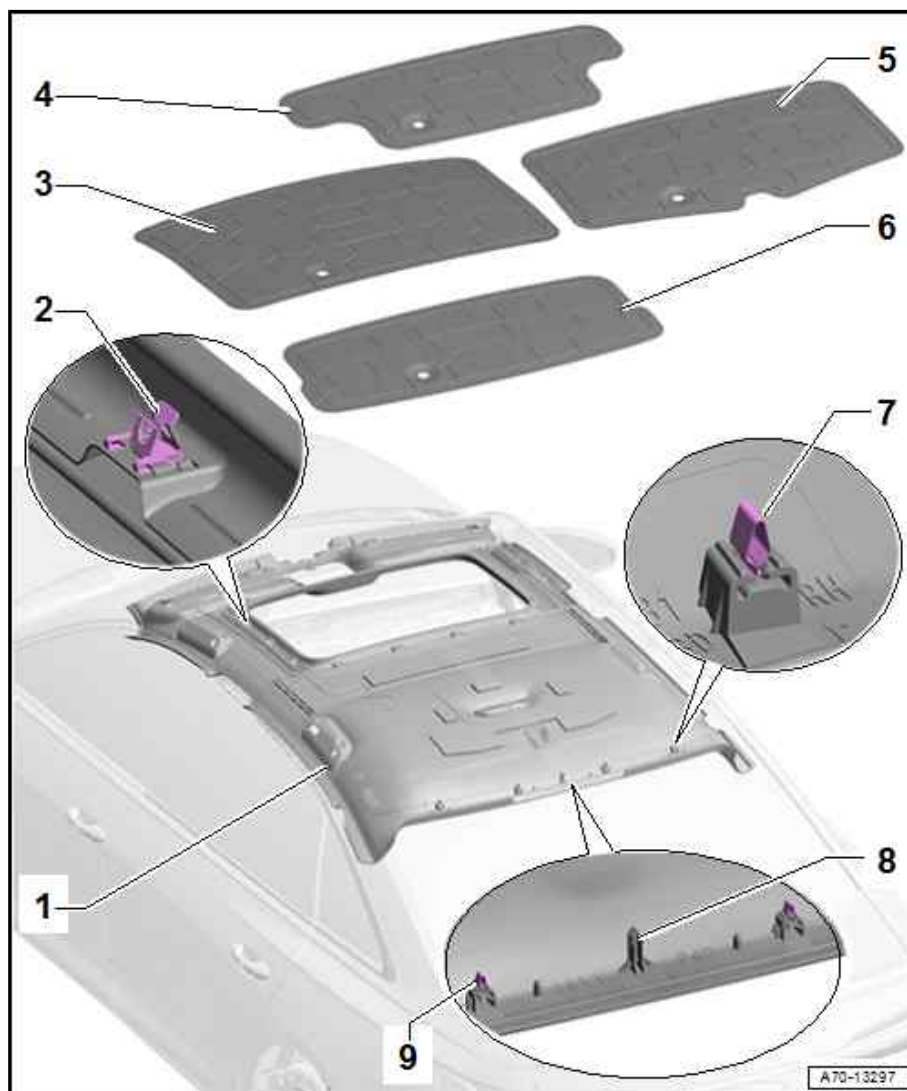
- ☐ NAR vehicles
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 293](#)

5 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

- ☐ Version for China
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 293](#)

6 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

- ☐ Rest-of-world version
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue





- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 293](#)

7 - Outer clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ☐ Insert in moulded headliner

8 - Centring mounting with catches

9 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in moulded headliner
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of Audi AG. Audi AG does not accept any liability

8.1.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, Avant

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Clip

- ☐ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ☐ 28x
- ☐ Insert in moulded headliner
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Roof reinforcement (front)

- ☐ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 295](#)

3 - Roof reinforcement (centre)

- ☐ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 295](#)

4 - Roof reinforcement (rear)

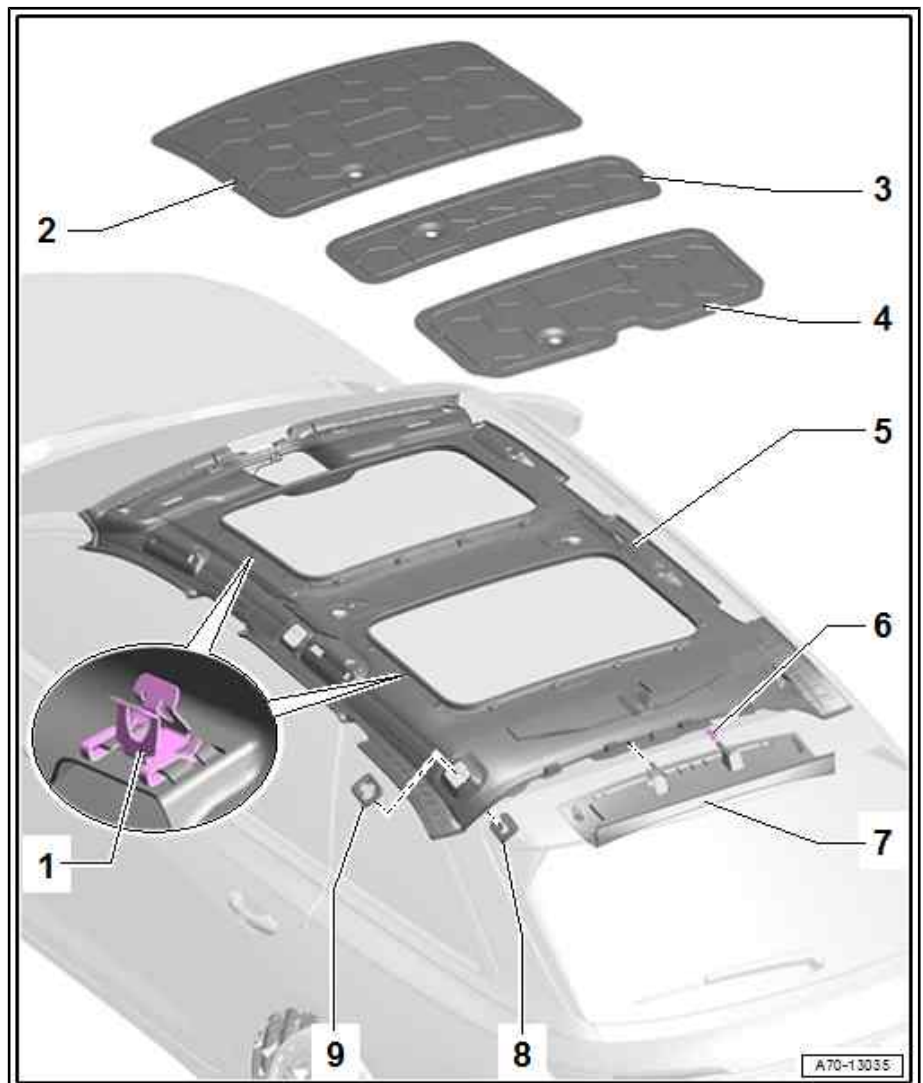
- ☐ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ☐ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 295](#)

5 - Moulded headliner

- ☐ Different versions ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 284](#)
- ☐ Lowering ⇒ [page 288](#)
- ☐ Lowering for removal of roof aerial ⇒ [page 285](#)

6 - Clip

- ☐ 2x





- ☐ Insert in roof end trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in roof end trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Roof end trim

- ☐ Insert in D-pillar trim and press on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 282](#)

8 - Trim

- ☐ For retainer for load guard
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Clipped into moulded headliner together with bracket

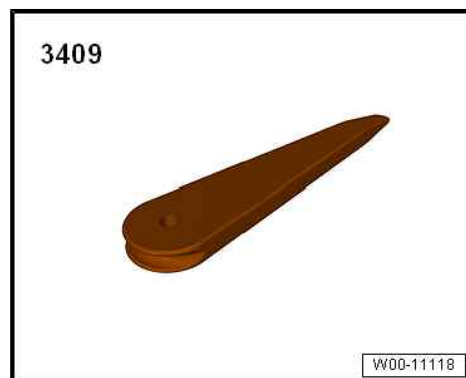
9 - Bracket

- ☐ For trim for retainer
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Clipped into moulded headliner together with trim

8.2 Removing and installing roof end trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2019 AUDI AG.

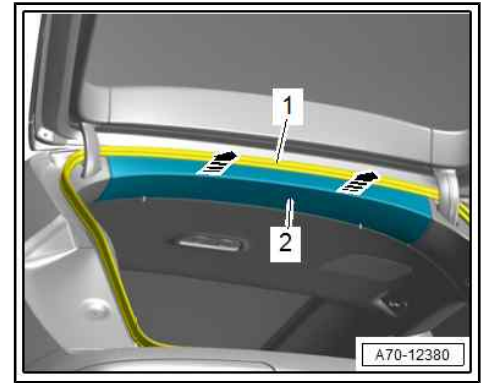


Removing

- Move roof end trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal -1-.
- Unclip roof end trim -2- using removal wedge - 3409-
-arrows-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



8.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner

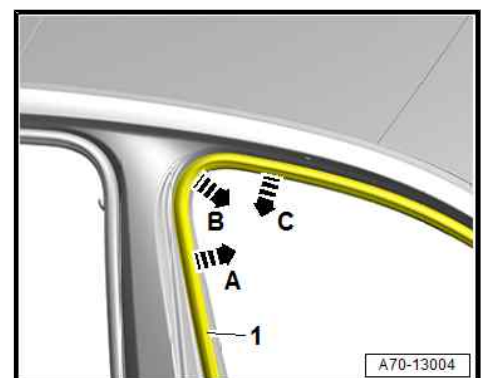
⇒ [“8.3.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Saloon”,
page 283](#)

⇒ [“8.3.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Avant”,
page 284](#)

8.3.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Saloon

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- Remove passenger side door ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 57 ; Door; Removing and installing door .
- Remove right A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 233](#) .
- Remove front passenger seat ⇒ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- Remove air duct at rear of centre tunnel ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
- Lower moulded headliner ⇒ [page 285](#) .
- Pull off front passenger door seal -1- in top corner in sequence -arrows A, B, C- and press it outwards to side.
- A second mechanic is required for removing the moulded headliner.
- Open rear door (driver side) and guide moulded headliner towards front passenger door by twisting and lowering it accordingly.



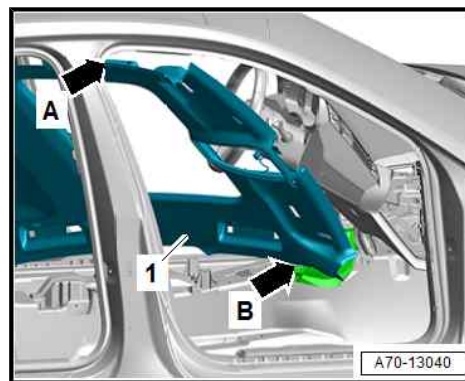
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



NOTICE

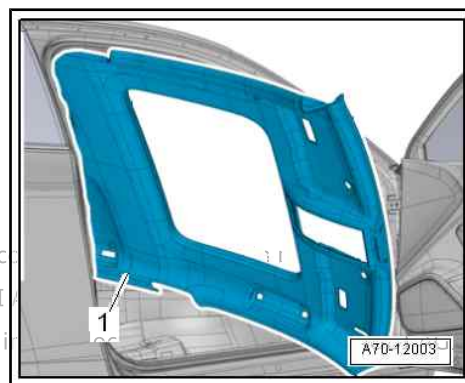
Severe risk of damage to moulded headliner if handled incorrectly while being removed

- Ensure that all the components that need to be removed according to the description have been removed.
- Proceed very carefully and with the help of additional mechanics when guiding moulded headliner out towards front passenger door opening.
- To do so, lower moulded headliner -1- at front on driver side and guide it through underneath steering wheel and dash panel.
- Carefully guide top of moulded headliner out through front passenger door -arrow A-.
- At the same time, carefully guide bottom of moulded headliner past centre tunnel and air duct -arrow B-.
- To do so, it might be necessary to very carefully bend moulded headliner slightly at corners and guide it past narrow parts.
- Take moulded headliner -1- out through front passenger door, as shown.



Installing

- A second mechanic is required for installing the moulded headliner.
- Proceed in reverse order to install moulded headliner in vehicle.
- Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
- Install centre brackets for sun visors ➔ [page 35](#) .
- Fold over lip of inner door seals.



Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

- First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

8.3.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Avant

Removing

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 3](#) .
- Remove front passenger seat ➔ General body repairs, seats; Rep. gr. 72 ; Front seats; Removing and installing front seat .
- Remove D-pillar trim (left-side) ➔ [page 241](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim (right-side) ➔ [page 271](#) .
- Lower moulded headliner ➔ [page 288](#) .
- A second mechanic is required for removing the moulded headliner.

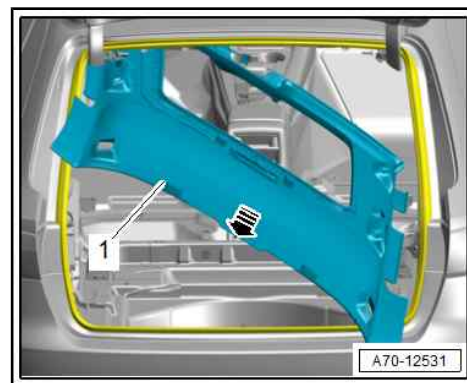


- Pull moulded headliner forwards slightly, lower it on right side and carefully guide it out through rear lid opening.
- Carefully pull moulded headliner -1- towards rear and lower on right side.

! NOTICE

Severe risk of damage to moulded headliner if handled incorrectly while being removed

- Ensure that all the components that need to be removed according to the description have been removed.
- Proceed very carefully and with the help of additional mechanics when guiding moulded headliner out towards rear lid opening.
- Carefully guide moulded headliner out through rear lid opening -arrow-, turning and lowering it as appropriate.
- To do so, it might be necessary to very carefully bend moulded headliner slightly at corners and guide it past narrow parts.



Installing

- A second mechanic is required for installing the moulded headliner.
- Proceed in reverse order to install moulded headliner in vehicle.
- Align moulded headliner centrally and slide it in beneath D-pillar trim at rear right.
- Press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.
- Install centre brackets for sun visors ➔ [page 35](#) .
- Fold over lip of inner door seals.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

- First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

8.4 Lowering moulded headliner

➔ ["8.4.1 Lowering moulded headliner - Saloon", page 285](#)

➔ ["8.4.2 Lowering moulded headliner - Avant", page 288](#)

➔ ["8.4.3 Lowering moulded headliner for removal of roof aerial - Avant", page 291](#)

8.4.1 Lowering moulded headliner - Saloon

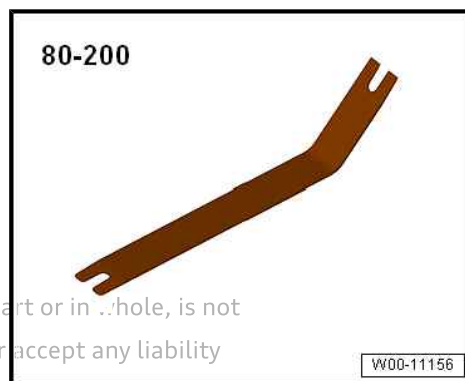
Special tools and workshop equipment required



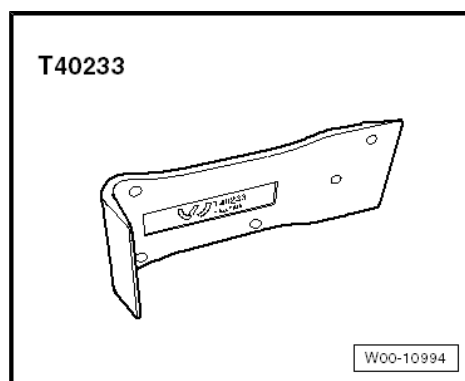
◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



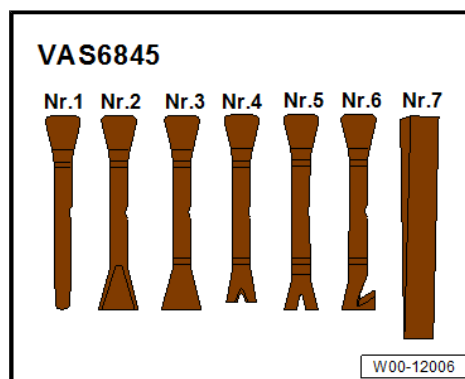
◆ Removal wedge - T40233-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-



◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



◆ Clip release lever no. 5 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

Procedure

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- Move head restraints (rear) as far down as they will go.

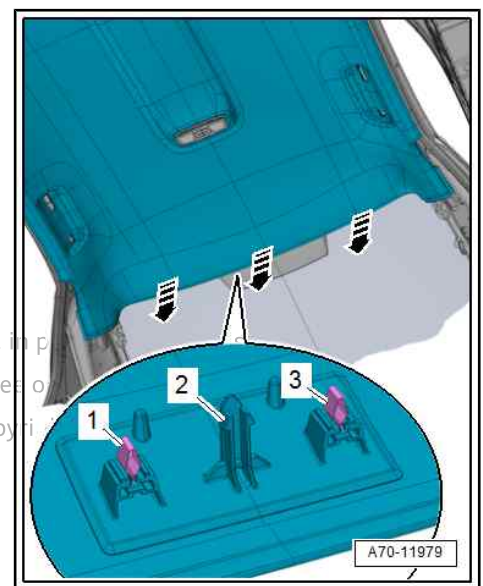


- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 34](#) .
- Remove centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ [page 35](#) .
- Remove vanity mirror light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror - W20- / -W14- .
- Remove grab handles ⇒ [page 40](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 230](#) .
- Unfasten B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 235](#) and move to side together with belt.
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- If necessary, tilt folding backrest back.
- Move moulded headliner clear in area of inner door seals.

! NOTICE

Risk of damage if incorrectly handled.

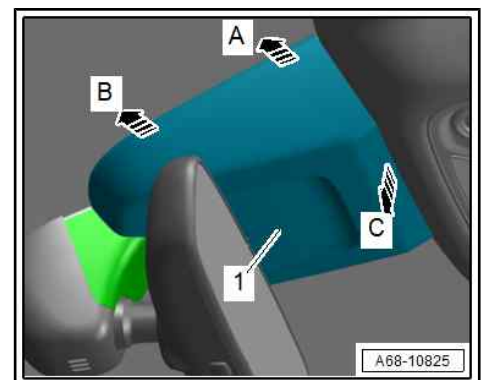
- Do not kink moulded headliner.
- Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.
- Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from clips -1 and 3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
- Unclip moulded headliner at centre from body at centring pin -2- .
- Carefully lower moulded headliner at rear.



- Depending on equipment version: Unclip cover -1- at sides using clip release lever from -VAS 6845- -arrows A, B, C-.
- Disengage cover at front and pull out towards rear.

Equipment version without sliding sunroof:

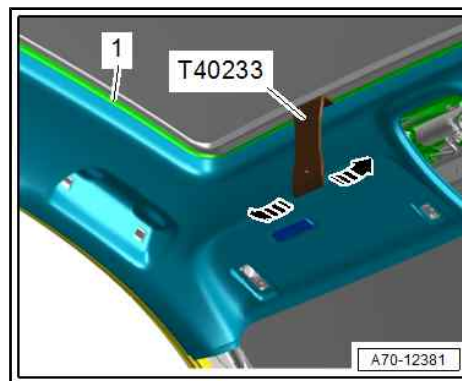
- Remove front roof module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .
- Lower moulded headliner and set it down on seats.





Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

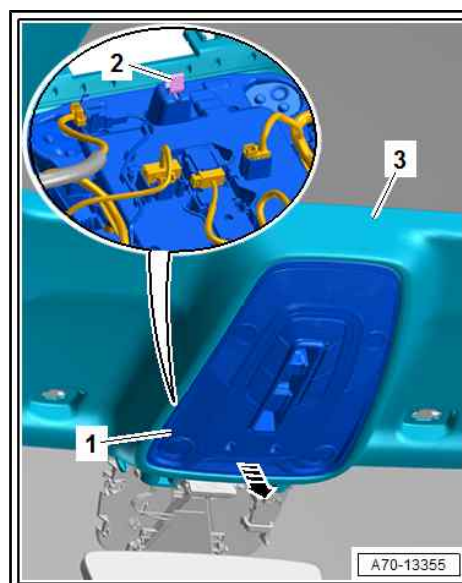
- Open sunroof sun blind.
- Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
- Insert removal wedge between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.
- Unfasten moulded headliner from sunroof frame all round using removal wedge -arrows-.



- Unclip moulded headliner -3- together with roof module -1- at retaining clip -2- at front using scraper from -VAS 6845- and lower carefully.
- Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring harness clear.
- Carefully lower moulded headliner.

Assembling

- Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
- Install centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ [page 35](#) .
- Fold over lip of inner door seals.



Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

- First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

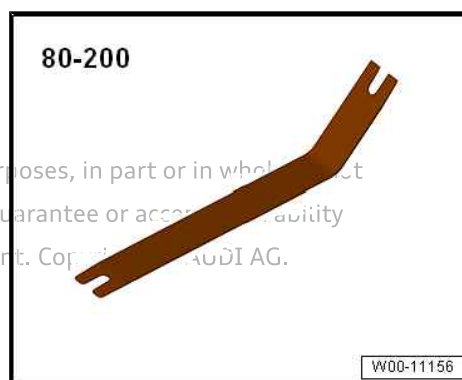
8.4.2 Lowering moulded headliner - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-

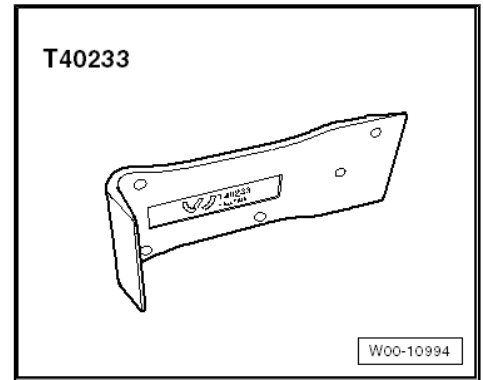


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

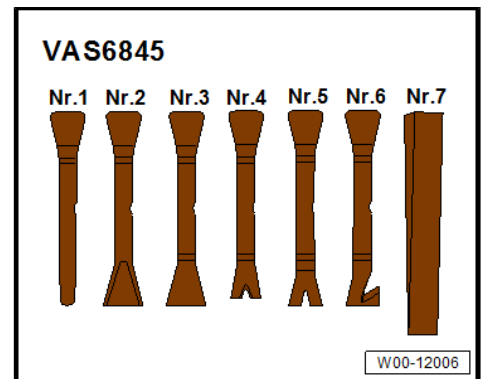




◆ Removal wedge - T40233-



◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set - VAS 6845-



◆ Clip release lever no. 5 from scraper set - VAS 6845-

Procedure

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- Move head restraints (rear) as far down as they will go.
- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 34](#) .
- Remove centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ [page 35](#) .
- Remove vanity mirror light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror - W20- / -W14- .
- Remove grab handles ⇒ [page 40](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 230](#) .
- Unfasten B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 235](#) and move to side together with belt.
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 239](#) .





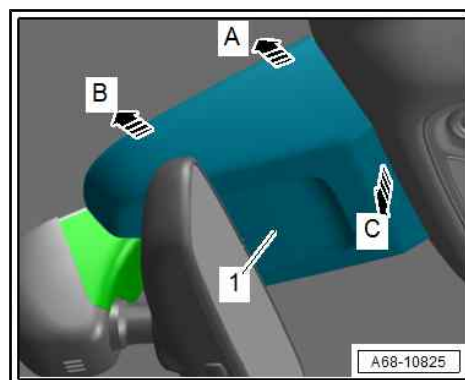
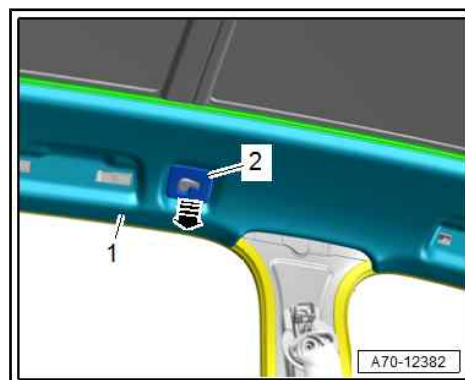
- Remove roof end trim ⇒ [page 282](#) .



NOTICE

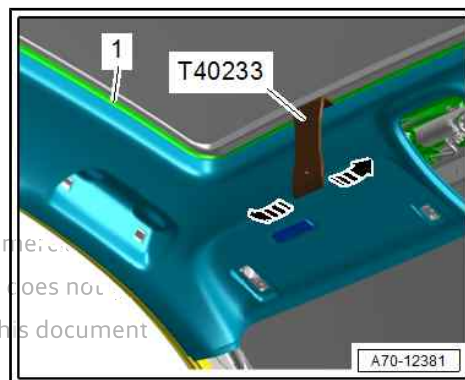
Risk of damage if incorrectly handled.

- Do not kink moulded headliner.
 - Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.
 - Carefully unclip moulded headliner (rear) from body at centring pin -2- in centre -arrow- using removal lever - 80-200- .
 - Move moulded headliner clear in area of inner door seals.
 - Unclip moulded headliner -1- with trim -2- and bracket from retainer for load guard -arrow-.
 - Repeat procedure on opposite side.
 - Depending on equipment version: Unclip cover -1- at sides using clip release lever from -VAS 6845- -arrows A, B, C-.
 - Disengage cover at front and pull out towards rear.
- Equipment version without sliding sunroof:**
- Remove front roof module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .
 - Carefully pull moulded headliner forwards out of D-pillar trim panels and lower it.



Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

- Open sliding sunroof.
- Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
- Insert removal wedge - T40233- between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.
- Release moulded headliner from frame for sunroof all round using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows- .

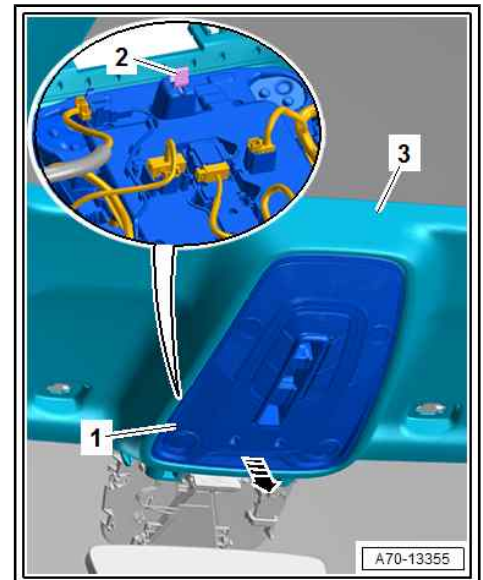




- Unclip moulded headliner -3- together with roof module -1- at retaining clip -2- at front using scraper from -VAS 6845- and lower carefully.
- Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring harness clear.
- Carefully pull moulded headliner forwards out of D-pillar trim panels and lower it.

Assembling

- A second mechanic is required for installing the moulded headliner.
- Align moulded headliner centrally and slide it in beneath D-pillar trim at rear left and right.
- Press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.
- Install centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ [page 35](#) .
- Fold over lip of inner door seals.
- Clip moulded headliner onto retainers for load guard.



Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

- First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

8.4.3 Lowering moulded headliner for removal of roof aerial - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

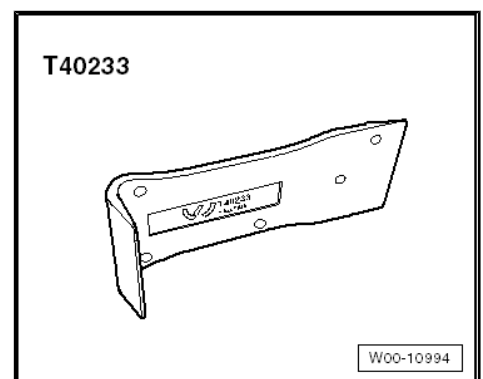
- ◆ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Removal wedge - T40233-



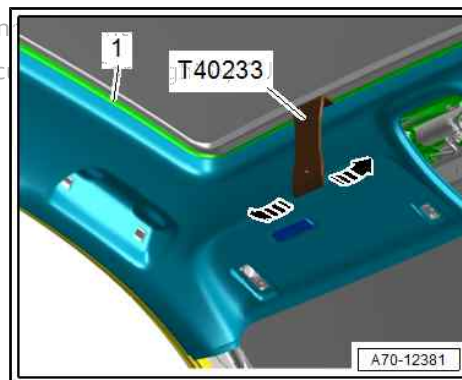


Procedure

- Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- Unfasten B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 235](#) and move to side together with belt.
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 239](#) .
- Remove roof end trim ⇒ [page 282](#) .
- Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 241](#) .
- Remove grab handles ⇒ [page 40](#) .

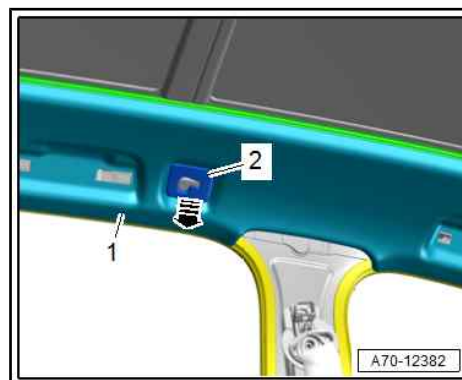
Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

- Open sun blind.
- Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
- Insert removal wedge - T40233- between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.
- Release moulded headliner from frame for sunroof all round using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows-.



All vehicles (continued):

- Move moulded headliner clear in area of inner door seals.
- Unclip moulded headliner -1- with trim -2- and bracket from retainer for load guard -arrow-.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.





! NOTICE

Risk of damage if incorrectly handled.

- Do not kink moulded headliner.
- Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.
- Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from body at centring pin -2- in centre -arrow- using removal lever - 80-200- .
- Carefully lower moulded headliner at rear.
- Remove roof aerial - R216- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Aerial systems; Removing and installing roof aerial .

Assembling

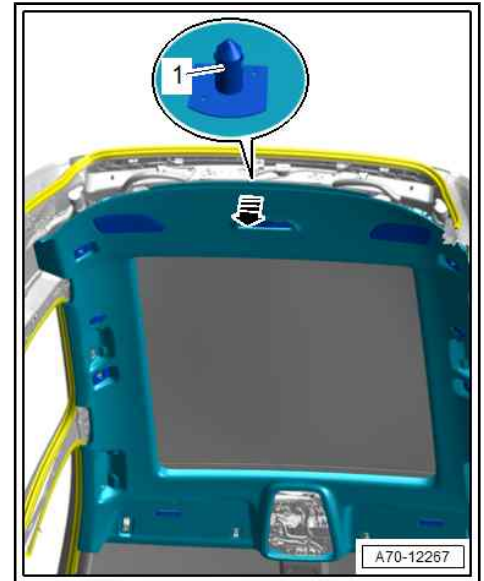
- Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
- Fold over lip of inner door seals.
- Clip moulded headliner onto retainers for load guard.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

- First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["8.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 280](#)



8.5 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

⇒ ["8.5.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Saloon", page 293](#)

⇒ ["8.5.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant", page 295](#)

8.5.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Saloon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

- Moulded headliner removed ⇒ [page 283](#)



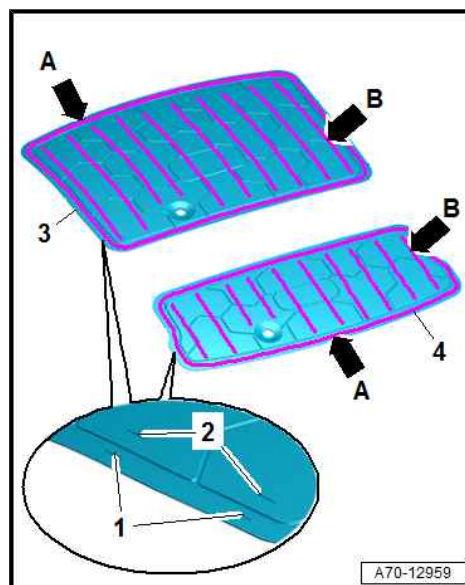
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Apply adhesive beads onto roof reinforcement, as shown; to do so, connect markings -2- on roof reinforcement to apply support beads -arrows B-.
- Thickness of support beads: approx. 5 mm
- Apply adhesive beads onto roof reinforcement, as shown; to do so, connect markings -1- on roof reinforcement to apply bead around outside -arrows A-.
- Thickness of bead around outside: approx. 7 mm

3 - Roof reinforcement (front) - equipment version without sliding sunroof

4 - Roof reinforcement (rear) - illustration shows rest-of-world version



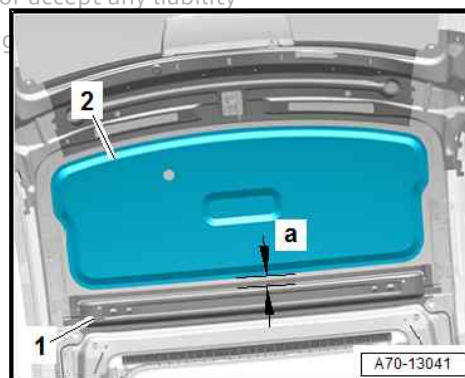
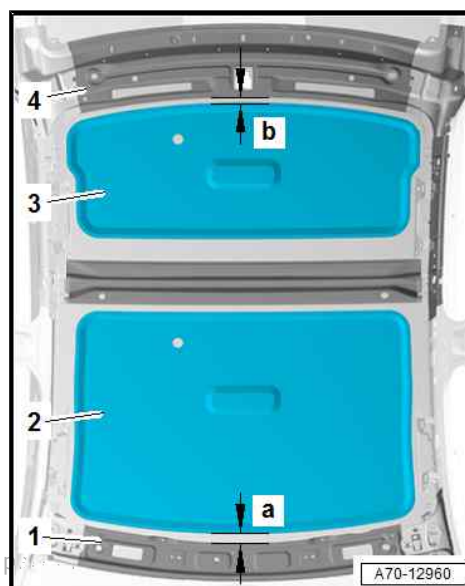
- Equipment version without sliding sunroof: Position roof reinforcements -2, 3- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distances -a, b- from cross struts -1, 4-.
- Distance -a- = 15 ± 5 mm
- Dimension -b- = 36 ± 5 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

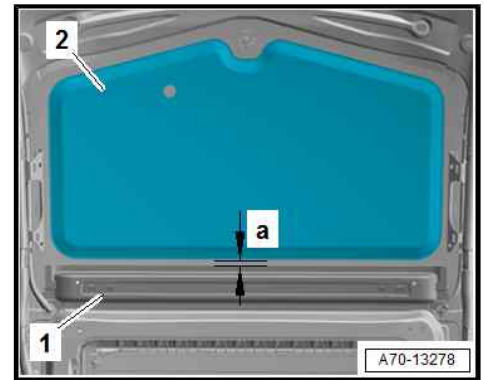
- Equipment version and rest-of-world/NAR version with sliding sunroof: Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -1-.

- Distance -a- = 15 ± 5 mm
- Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.
- Wipe off any surplus adhesive.





- Equipment version/China version with sliding sunroof: Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -1-.
- Distance -a- = 15 ± 5 mm
- Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.
- Wipe off any surplus adhesive.



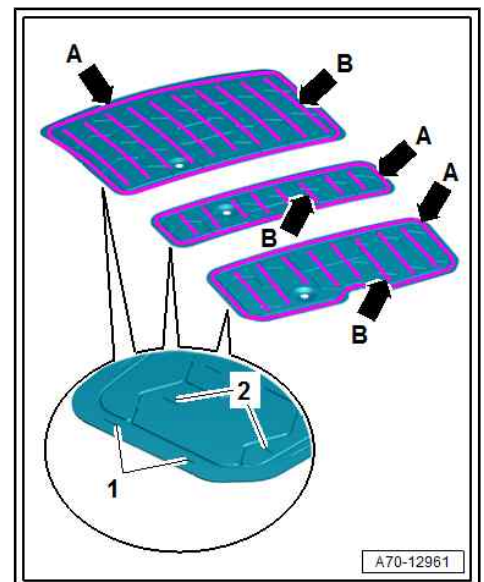
8.5.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

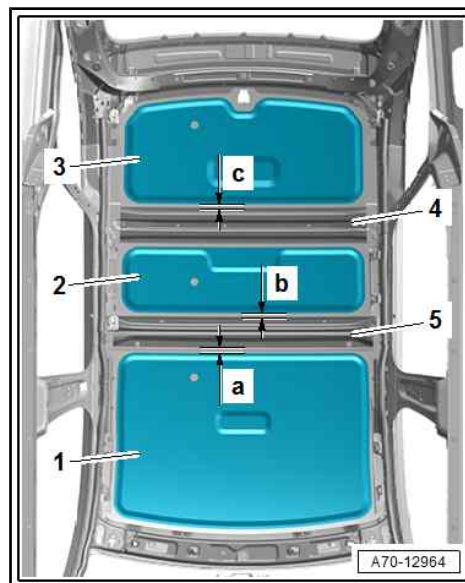
- Moulded headliner removed ⇒ [page 284](#)
- Apply adhesive beads onto roof reinforcement, as shown; to do so, connect markings -2- on roof reinforcement to apply support beads -arrows B-.
- Thickness of support beads: approx. 5 mm
- Apply adhesive beads onto roof reinforcements, as shown; to do so, connect markings -1- on roof reinforcement to apply bead around outside -arrows A-.
- Thickness of bead around outside: approx. 7 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Position roof reinforcements -1, 2, 3- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distances -a, b, c- from cross struts -4, 5-.
- Distance -a- = 10 ± 5 mm
- Dimension -b- = 15 ± 5 mm
- Dimension -c- = 15 ± 5 mm
- Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.
- Wipe off any surplus adhesive.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.